

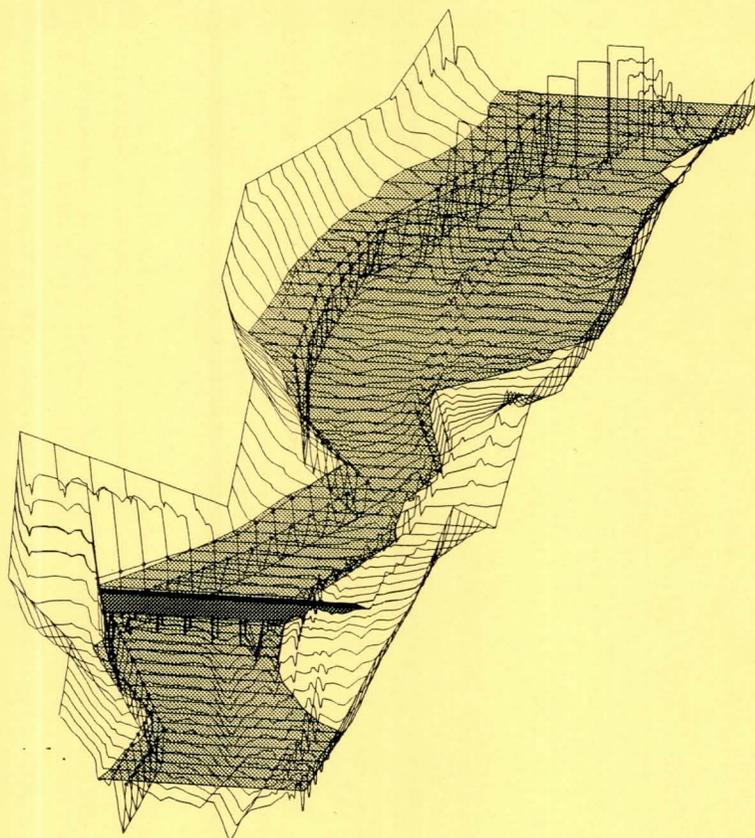


US Army Corps  
of Engineers  
Hydrologic Engineering Center

Property of  
Flood Control District of MC Library  
Please Return to  
2801 W. Durango  
Phoenix, AZ 85009

# HEC-RAS

## River Analysis System



### Hydraulic Reference Manual

Version 2.2  
September 1998

Approved for Public Release. Distribution Unlimited

CPD-69

# **HEC-RAS**

# **River Analysis System**

## **Hydraulic Reference Manual**

**Version 2.2**  
**September 1998**

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers  
Hydrologic Engineering Center  
609 Second Street  
Davis, CA 95616

(530) 756-1104  
(530) 756-8250 FAX

# Table of Contents

Foreword .....	v
<b>Chapter 1 Introduction</b> .....	1-1
General Philosophy of the Modeling System .....	1-2
Overview of Hydraulic Capabilities .....	1-2
HEC-RAS Documentation .....	1-4
Overview of This Manual .....	1-4
<b>Chapter 2 Theoretical Basis for One-Dimensional Flow Calculations</b>	2-1
General .....	2-2
Steady Flow Water Surface Profiles .....	2-2
Equations for Basic Profile Calculations .....	2-2
Cross Section Subdivision for Conveyance Calculations .....	2-4
Composite Manning's n for the Main Channel .....	2-6
Evaluation of The Mean Kinetic Energy Head .....	2-8
Friction Loss Evaluation .....	2-9
Contraction and Expansion Loss Evaluation .....	2-10
Computation Procedure .....	2-11
Critical Depth Determination .....	2-13
Applications of the Momentum Equation .....	2-16
Air Entrainment in High Velocity Streams .....	2-20
Program Limitations .....	2-21
<b>Chapter 3 Basic Data Requirements</b> .....	3-1
General .....	3-2
Geometric Data .....	3-2
Study Limit Determination .....	3-2
The River System Schematic .....	3-3
Cross Section Geometry .....	3-5
Optional Cross Section Properties .....	3-7
Ineffective Flow Areas .....	3-7
Levees .....	3-8
Blocked Obstructions .....	3-9
Reach Lengths .....	3-11
Energy Loss Coefficients .....	3-12
Manning's n .....	3-12
Equivalent Roughness 'k' .....	3-18
Contraction and Expansion Coefficients .....	3-19
Stream Junction Data .....	3-21
Steady Flow Data .....	3-22
Flow Regime .....	3-22
Boundary Conditions .....	3-22
Discharge Information .....	3-24

<b>Chapter 4 Overview of Optional Capabilities</b> .....	4-1
Multiple Profile Analysis .....	4-2
Multiple Plan Analysis .....	4-2
Optional Friction Loss Equations .....	4-2
Cross Section Interpolation .....	4-4
Mixed Flow Regime Calculations .....	4-6
Modeling Stream Junctions .....	4-9
Energy Based Junction Method .....	4-9
Momentum Based Junction Method .....	4-15
Flow Distribution Calculations .....	4-19
<b>Chapter 5 Modeling Bridges</b> .....	5-1
General Modeling Guidelines .....	5-2
Cross Section Locations .....	5-2
Defining Ineffective Flow Areas .....	5-5
Contraction and Expansion Losses .....	5-8
Hydraulic Computations Through the Bridge .....	5-9
Low Flow Computations .....	5-9
Class A Low Flow .....	5-9
Energy Equation .....	5-10
Momentum Balance .....	5-11
Yarnell Equation .....	5-13
FHWA WSPRO Method .....	5-15
Class B Low Flow .....	5-17
Class C Low Flow .....	5-18
High Flow Computations .....	5-18
Energy Equation .....	5-18
Pressure and Weir Flow Method .....	5-19
Combination Flow .....	5-25
Selecting a Bridge Modeling Approach .....	5-26
Low Flow Methods .....	5-26
High Flow Methods .....	5-27
Unique Bridge Problems and Suggested Approaches .....	5-28
Perched Bridges .....	5-28
Low Water Bridges .....	5-29
Bridges on a Skew .....	5-29
Parallel Bridges .....	5-31
Multiple Bridge Openings .....	5-32
Modeling Floating Pier Debris .....	5-33
<b>Chapter 6 Modeling Culverts</b> .....	6-1
General Modeling Guidelines .....	6-2
Types of Culverts .....	6-2
Cross Section Locations .....	6-3
Expansion and Contraction Coefficients .....	6-7
Limitations of the Culvert Routines .....	6-7
Culvert Hydraulics .....	6-7

Introduction to Culvert Terminology .....	6-7
Flow Analysis for Culverts .....	6-9
Computing Inlet Control Headwater .....	6-11
Computing Outlet Control Headwater .....	6-12
FHWA Full Flow Equations .....	6-14
Direct Step Water Surface Profile Computations .....	6-15
Normal Depth of Flow in the Culvert .....	6-16
Critical Depth of Flow in the Culvert .....	6-16
Horizontal and Adverse Culvert Slopes .....	6-17
Weir Flow .....	6-17
Supercritical and Mixed Flow Regime Inside of Culvert .....	6-18
<b>Culvert Data and Coefficients .....</b>	<b>6-18</b>
Culvert Shape and Size .....	6-18
Culvert Length .....	6-19
Number of Identical Barrels .....	6-19
Manning's Roughness Coefficient .....	6-19
Entrance Loss Coefficient .....	6-21
Exit Loss Coefficient .....	6-23
FHWA Chart and Scale Number .....	6-24
Culvert Invert Elevations .....	6-29
Weir Flow Coefficient .....	6-30
<b>Chapter 7 Modeling Multiple Bridge and/or Culvert Openings .....</b>	<b>7-1</b>
General Modeling Guidelines .....	7-2
Multiple Opening Approach .....	7-2
Locating the Stagnation Points .....	7-4
Computational Procedure for Multiple Openings .....	7-5
Limitations of the Multiple Opening Approach .....	7-6
Divided Flow Approach .....	7-7
<b>Chapter 8 Modeling Gated Spillways, Weirs and Drop Structures ...</b>	<b>8-1</b>
General Modeling Guidelines .....	8-2
Cross Section Locations .....	8-3
Expansion and Contraction Coefficients .....	8-7
Hydraulic Computations Through Gated Spillways .....	8-7
Radial Gates .....	8-8
Sluice Gates .....	8-9
Low Flow Through The Gates .....	8-10
Uncontrolled Overflow Weirs .....	8-12
Drop Structures .....	8-12
<b>Chapter 9 Floodway Encroachment Calculations .....</b>	<b>9-1</b>
Introduction .....	9-2
Encroachment Methods .....	9-2
Encroachment Method 1 .....	9-2
Encroachment Method 2 .....	9-3
Encroachment Method 3 .....	9-4

Encroachment Method 4 .....	9-5
Encroachment Method 5 .....	9-6
Bridge, Culvert, and Multiple Opening Encroachments .....	9-7
General Modeling Guidelines .....	9-8
<b>Chapter 10 Estimating Scour at Bridges .....</b>	<b>10-1</b>
General Modeling Guidelines .....	10-2
Computing Contraction Scour .....	10-2
Contraction Scour Conditions .....	10-3
Determination of Live-Bed or Clear-Water Contraction Scour .....	10-3
Live-Bed Contraction Scour .....	10-4
Clear-Water Contraction Scour .....	10-5
Computing Local Pier Scour .....	10-6
Computing Pier Scour With The CSU Equation .....	10-6
Computing Pier Scour With The Froehlich Equation .....	10-9
Computing Local Scour at Abutments .....	10-10
The HIRE Equation .....	10-10
Froehlich's Equation .....	10-11
Clear-Water Scour at Abutments .....	10-12
Total Scour Depths Inside The Bridge .....	10-12
<b>Chapter 11 Modeling Ice-covered Rivers .....</b>	<b>11-1</b>
Modeling Ice Covers with Known Geometry .....	11-2
Modeling Wide-River Ice Jams .....	11-4
Solution Procedure .....	11-7
<b>Appendix A References .....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B Flow Transitions in Bridge Backwater Analysis .....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C Computational Differences Between HEC-RAS and HEC-2 .....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>Appendix D Computation of The WSPRO Discharge Coefficient and Effective Flow Length .....</b>	<b>D-1</b>

## Foreword

The HEC-RAS software was developed at the Hydrologic Engineering Center (HEC). The software was designed by Mr. Gary W. Brunner, leader of the HEC-RAS development team. The user interface and graphics were programmed by Mr. Mark R. Jensen. The steady flow water surface profiles module was programmed by Mr. Steven S. Piper. The routines that import HEC-2 data were developed by Ms. Joan Klipsch. The cross section interpolation routines were developed by Mr. Alfredo Montalvo. The routines for modeling ice cover and wide river ice jams were developed by Mr. Steven F. Daly of the Cold Regions Research and Engineering Laboratory (CRREL).

Many of the HEC staff made contributions in the development of this software, including: Vern R. Bonner, Richard Hayes, John Peters, and Michael Gee. Mr. Darryl Davis was the director of HEC during the development of this software.

This manual was written by Mr. Gary W. Brunner.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

# CHAPTER 1

## Introduction

Welcome to the Hydrologic Engineering Center's River Analysis System (HEC-RAS). This software allows you to perform one-dimensional steady flow hydraulics, and future versions will provide unsteady flow, and sediment transport calculations.

The current version of HEC-RAS only supports one-dimensional, steady flow, water surface profile calculations. This manual documents the hydraulic capabilities of the Steady flow portion of HEC-RAS. Documentation for unsteady flow and sediment transport calculations will be made available as these features are added to the HEC-RAS.

This chapter discusses the general philosophy of HEC-RAS and gives you a brief overview of the hydraulic capabilities of the modeling system. Documentation for HEC-RAS is discussed, as well as an overview of this manual.

### Contents

- General Philosophy of the Modeling System
- Overview of Hydraulic Capabilities
- HEC-RAS Documentation
- Overview of This Manual

## General Philosophy of the Modeling System

HEC-RAS is an integrated system of software, designed for interactive use in a multi-tasking, multi-user network environment. The system is comprised of a graphical user interface (GUI), separate hydraulic analysis components, data storage and management capabilities, graphics and reporting facilities.

The system will ultimately contain three one-dimensional hydraulic analysis components for: (1) steady flow water surface profile computations; (2) unsteady flow simulation; and (3) movable boundary sediment transport computations. A key element is that all three components will use a common geometric data representation and common geometric and hydraulic computation routines. In addition to the three hydraulic analysis components, the system contains several hydraulic design features that can be invoked once the basic water surface profiles are computed.

The current version of HEC-RAS only supports Steady Flow Water Surface Profile calculations. New features and additional capabilities will be added in future releases.

## Overview of Hydraulic Capabilities

HEC-RAS is designed to perform one-dimensional hydraulic calculations for a full network of natural and constructed channels. The following is a description of the major hydraulic capabilities of HEC-RAS.

Steady Flow Water Surface Profiles. This component of the modeling system is intended for calculating water surface profiles for steady gradually varied flow. The system can handle a full network of channels, a dendritic system, or a single river reach. The steady flow component is capable of modeling subcritical, supercritical, and mixed flow regime water surface profiles.

The basic computational procedure is based on the solution of the one-dimensional energy equation. Energy losses are evaluated by friction (Manning's equation) and contraction/expansion (coefficient multiplied by the change in velocity head). The momentum equation is utilized in situations where the water surface profile is rapidly varied. These situations include mixed flow regime calculations (i.e., hydraulic jumps), hydraulics of bridges, and evaluating profiles at river confluences (stream junctions).

The effects of various obstructions such as bridges, culverts, weirs, and structures in the flood plain may be considered in the computations. The steady flow system is designed for application in flood plain management and

flood insurance studies to evaluate floodway encroachments. Also, capabilities are available for assessing the change in water surface profiles due to channel improvements, and levees.

Special features of the steady flow component include: multiple plan analyses; multiple profile computations; and multiple bridge and/or culvert opening analysis.

*Unsteady Flow Simulation.* This component of the HEC-RAS modeling system will be capable of simulating one-dimensional unsteady flow through a full network of open channels. The unsteady flow equation solver will be adapted from Dr. Robert L. Barkau's UNET model (Barkau, 1992 and HEC, 1993). This unsteady flow component was developed primarily for subcritical flow regime calculations.

The hydraulic calculations for cross-sections, bridges, culverts, and other hydraulic structures that were developed for the steady flow component will be incorporated into the unsteady flow module. Additionally, the unsteady flow component will have the ability to model storage areas, navigation dams, gated spillways, tunnels, pumping stations, and levee failures.

*Sediment Transport/Movable Boundary Computations.* This component of the modeling system is intended for the simulation of one-dimensional sediment transport/movable boundary calculations resulting from scour and deposition over moderate time periods (typically years, although applications to single flood events are possible).

The sediment transport potential is computed by grain size fraction, thereby allowing the simulation of hydraulic sorting and armoring. Major features include the ability to model a full network of streams, channel dredging, various levee and encroachment alternatives, and the use of several different equations for the computation of sediment transport.

The model will be designed to simulate long-term trends of scour and deposition in a stream channel that might result from modifying the frequency and duration of the water discharge and stage, or modifying the channel geometry. This system can be used to evaluate deposition in reservoirs, design channel contractions required to maintain navigation depths, predict the influence of dredging on the rate of deposition, estimate maximum possible scour during large flood events, and evaluate sedimentation in fixed channels.

## HEC-RAS Documentation

The HEC-RAS package includes several documents, each are designed to help the modeler learn to use a particular aspect of the modeling system. The documentation has been divided into the following three categories:

<b>Documentation</b>	<b>Description</b>
<i>User's Manual</i>	This manual is a guide to using the HEC-RAS. The manual provides an introduction and overview of the modeling system, installation instructions, how to get started, simple examples, detailed descriptions of each of the major modeling components, and how to view graphical and tabular output.
<i>Hydraulic Reference Manual</i>	This manual describes the theory and data requirements for the hydraulic calculations performed by HEC-RAS. Equations are presented along with the assumptions used in their derivation. Discussions are provided on how to estimate model parameters, as well as guidelines on various modeling approaches.
<i>Applications Guide</i>	This document contains a series of examples that demonstrate various aspects of the HEC-RAS. Each example consists of a problem statement, data requirements, general outline of solution steps, displays of key input and output screens, and discussions of important modeling aspects.

## Overview of This Manual

This manual presents the theory and data requirements for hydraulic calculations in the HEC-RAS system. The manual is organized as follows:

- Chapter 2 provides an overview of the hydraulic calculations in HEC-RAS.
- Chapter 3 describes the basic data requirements to perform the various hydraulic analyses available.
- Chapter 4 is an overview of some of the optional hydraulic capabilities of the HEC-RAS software.

- Chapters 5, 6, 7, and 8 provide detailed discussions on modeling bridges; culverts; multiple openings; and inline weirs and gated spillways.
- Chapter 9 describes how to perform floodway encroachment calculations.
- Chapter 10 describes how to use HEC-RAS to compute scour at bridges.
- Chapter 11 describes how to model ice-covered rivers.
- Appendix A provides a list of all the references for the manual.
- Appendix B is a summary of the research work on "Flow Transitions in Bridge Backwater Analysis."
- Appendix C is a write up on the computational differences between HEC-RAS and HEC-2.
- Appendix D is a write up on the "Computation of the WSPRO Discharge Coefficient and Effective Flow Length."

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## CHAPTER 2

# Theoretical Basis for One-Dimensional Flow Calculations

This chapter describes the methodologies used in performing the one-dimensional flow calculations within HEC-RAS. The basic equations are presented along with discussions of the various terms. Solution schemes for the various equations are described. Discussions are provided as to how the equations should be applied, as well as applicable limitations.

### **Contents**

- General
- Steady Flow Water Surface Profiles

## General

This chapter describes the theoretical basis for one-dimensional water surface profile calculations. This chapter is currently limited to discussions about steady flow water surface profile calculations. When unsteady flow and sediment transport calculations are added to the HEC-RAS system, discussions concerning these topics will be included in this manual.

## Steady Flow Water Surface Profiles

HEC-RAS is currently capable of performing one-dimensional water surface profile calculations for steady gradually varied flow in natural or constructed channels. Subcritical, supercritical, and mixed flow regime water surface profiles can be calculated. Topics discussed in this section include: equations for basic profile calculations; cross section subdivision for conveyance calculations; composite Manning's n for the main channel; velocity weighting coefficient alpha; friction loss evaluation; contraction and expansion losses; computational procedure; critical depth determination; applications of the momentum equation; and limitations of the steady flow model.

### Equations for Basic Profile Calculations

Water surface profiles are computed from one cross section to the next by solving the Energy equation with an iterative procedure called the standard step method. The Energy equation is written as follows:

$$Y_2 + Z_2 + \frac{\alpha_2 V_2^2}{2g} = Y_1 + Z_1 + \frac{\alpha_1 V_1^2}{2g} + h_e \quad (2-1)$$

Where: $Y_1, Y_2$	= depth of water at cross sections
$Z_1, Z_2$	= elevation of the main channel inverts
$V_1, V_2$	= average velocities (total discharge/ total flow area)
$\alpha_1, \alpha_2$	= velocity weighting coefficients
$g$	= gravitational acceleration
$h_e$	= energy head loss

A diagram showing the terms of the energy equation is shown in Figure 2-1.

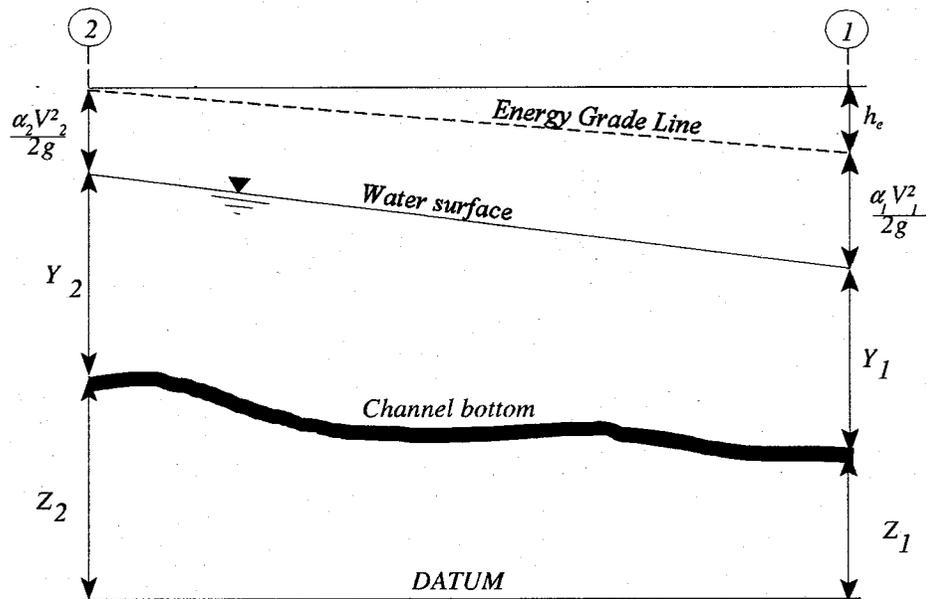


Figure 2.1 Representation of Terms in the Energy Equation

The energy head loss ( $h_e$ ) between two cross sections is comprised of friction losses and contraction or expansion losses. The equation for the energy head loss is as follows:

$$h_e = L\bar{S}_f + C \left| \frac{\alpha_2 V_2^2}{2g} - \frac{\alpha_1 V_1^2}{2g} \right| \quad (2-2)$$

Where:  $L$  = discharge weighted reach length

$\bar{S}_f$  = representative friction slope between two sections

$C$  = expansion or contraction loss coefficient

The distance weighted reach length,  $L$ , is calculated as:

$$L = \frac{L_{lob} \bar{Q}_{lob} + L_{ch} \bar{Q}_{ch} + L_{rob} \bar{Q}_{rob}}{\bar{Q}_{lob} + \bar{Q}_{ch} + \bar{Q}_{rob}} \quad (2-3)$$

where:  $L_{lob}$ ,  $L_{ch}$ ,  $L_{rob}$  = cross section reach lengths specified for flow in the left overbank, main channel, and right overbank, respectively

$\bar{Q}_{lob}$ ,  $\bar{Q}_{ch}$ ,  $\bar{Q}_{rob}$  = arithmetic average of the flows between sections for the left overbank, main channel, and right overbank, respectively

### Cross Section Subdivision for Conveyance Calculations

The determination of total conveyance and the velocity coefficient for a cross section requires that flow be subdivided into units for which the velocity is uniformly distributed. The approach used in HEC-RAS is to subdivide flow in the **overbank** areas using the input cross section n-value break points (locations where n-values change) as the basis for subdivision (Figure 2-2). Conveyance is calculated within each subdivision from the following form of Manning's equation (based on English units):

$$Q = K S_f^{1/2} \quad (2-4)$$

$$K = \frac{1.486}{n} A R^{2/3} \quad (2-5)$$

where:  $K$  = conveyance for subdivision

$n$  = Manning's roughness coefficient for subdivision

$A$  = flow area for subdivision

$R$  = hydraulic radius for subdivision (area / wetted perimeter)

The program sums up all the incremental conveyances in the overbanks to obtain a conveyance for the left overbank and the right overbank. The main channel conveyance is normally computed as a single conveyance element. The total conveyance for the cross section is obtained by summing the three subdivision conveyances (left, channel, and right).

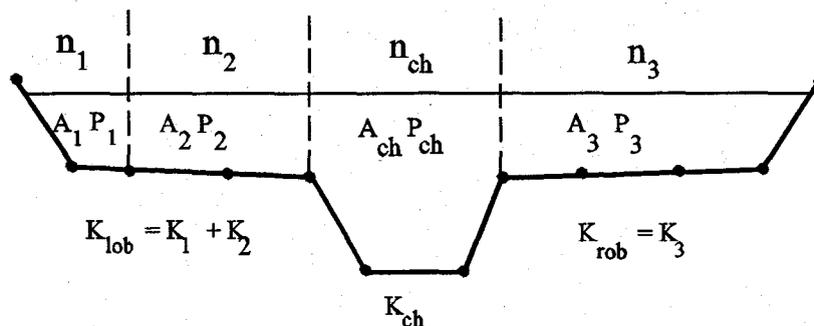


Figure 2.2 HEC-RAS Default Conveyance Subdivision

An alternative method available in HEC-RAS is to calculate conveyance between every coordinate point in the overbanks (Figure 2.3). The conveyance is then summed to get the total left overbank and right overbank values. This method is used in the Corps HEC-2 program. The method has been retained as an option within HEC-RAS in order to reproduce studies that were originally developed with HEC-2.

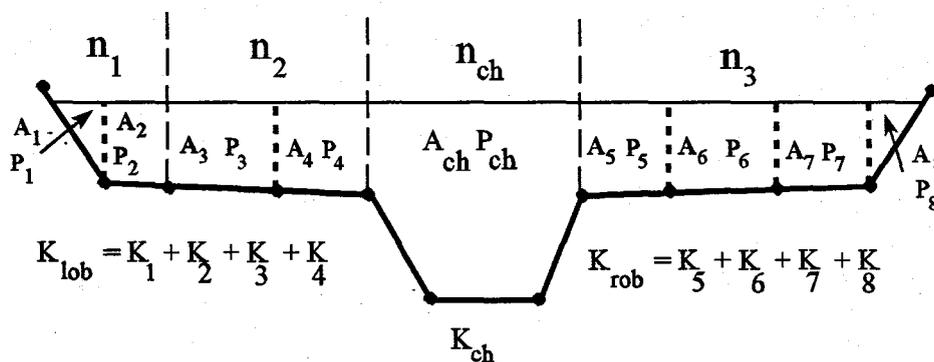


Figure 2.3 Alternative Conveyance Subdivision Method (HEC-2 style)

The two methods for computing conveyance will produce different answers whenever portions of the overbanks have ground sections with significant vertical slopes. In general, the HEC-RAS default approach will provide a lower total conveyance for the same water surface elevation.

In order to test the significance of the two ways of computing conveyance, comparisons were performed using 97 data sets from the HEC profile accuracy study (HEC, 1986). Water surface profiles were computed for the 1% chance event using the two methods for computing conveyance in HEC-RAS. The results of the study showed that the HEC-RAS default approach will generally produce a higher computed water surface elevation. Out of the 2048 cross section locations, 47.5% had computed water surface elevations within 0.10 ft. (30.48 mm), 71% within 0.20 ft. (60.96 mm), 94.4% within 0.4 ft. (121.92 mm), 99.4% within 1.0 ft. (304.8 mm), and one cross section had a difference of 2.75 ft. (0.84 m). Because the differences tend to be in the same direction, some effects can be attributed to propagation of downstream differences.

The results from these comparisons do not show which method is more accurate, they only show differences. In general, it is felt that the HEC-RAS default method is more commensurate with the Manning equation and the concept of separate flow elements. Further research, with observed water surface profiles, will be needed to make any conclusions about the accuracy of the two methods.

### **Composite Manning's n for the Main Channel**

Flow in the **main channel** is not subdivided, except when the roughness coefficient is changed within the channel area. HEC-RAS tests the applicability of subdivision of roughness within the main channel portion of a cross section, and if it is not applicable, the program will compute a single composite n value for the entire main channel. The program determines if the main channel portion of the cross section can be subdivided or if a composite main channel n value will be utilized based on the following criterion: if a main channel side slope is steeper than 5H:1V and the main channel has more than one n-value, a composite roughness  $n_c$  will be computed [Equation 6-17, Chow, 1959]. The channel side slope used by HEC-RAS is defined as the horizontal distance between adjacent n-value stations within the main channel over the difference in elevation of these two stations (see  $S_L$  and  $S_R$  of Figure 2.4).

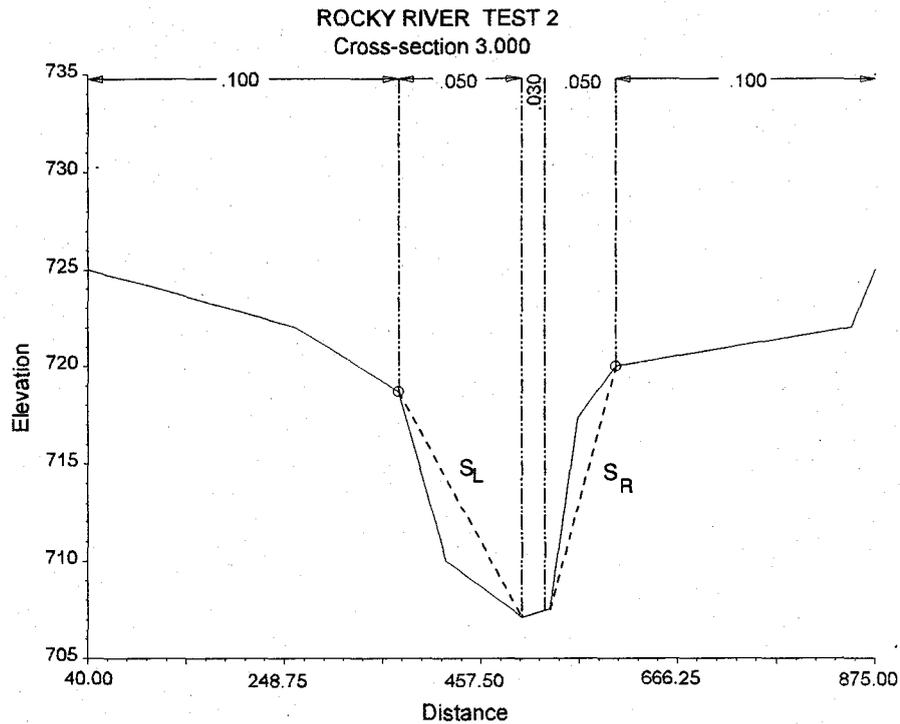


Figure 2.4 Definition of Bank Slope for Composite  $n_c$  Calculation

For the determination of  $n_c$ , the main channel is divided into  $N$  parts, each with a known wetted perimeter  $P_i$  and roughness coefficient  $n_i$ .

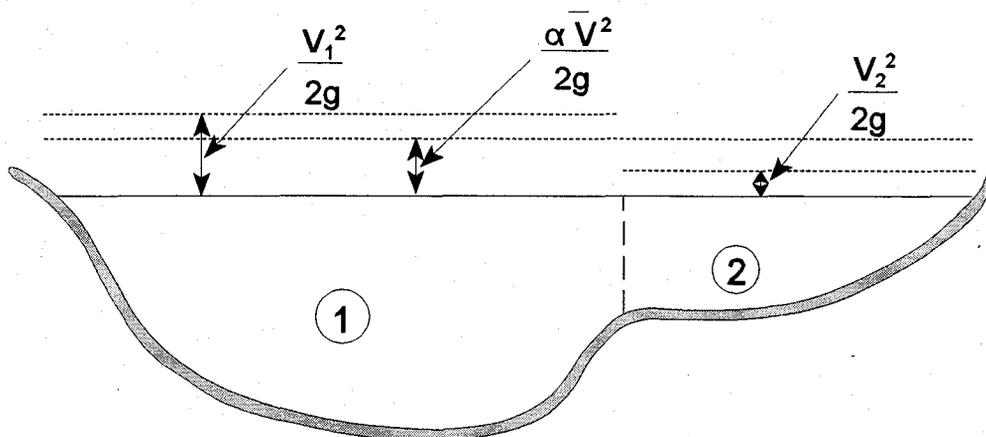
$$n_c = \left[ \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N (P_i n_i^{1.5})}{P} \right]^{2/3} \quad (2-6)$$

- where:  $n_c$  = composite or equivalent coefficient of roughness  
 $P$  = wetted perimeter of entire main channel  
 $P_i$  = wetted perimeter of subdivision I  
 $n_i$  = coefficient of roughness for subdivision I

The computed composite  $n_c$  should be checked for reasonableness. The computed value is the composite main channel  $n$  value in the output and summary tables.

## Evaluation of the Mean Kinetic Energy Head

Because the HEC-RAS software is a one-dimensional water surface profiles program, only a single water surface and therefore a single mean energy are computed at each cross section. For a given water surface elevation, the mean energy is obtained by computing a flow weighted energy from the three subsections of a cross section (left overbank, main channel, and right overbank). Figure 2.5 below shows how the mean energy would be obtained for a cross section with a main channel and a right overbank (no left overbank area).



$V_1$  = mean velocity for subarea 1

$V_2$  = mean velocity for subarea 2

**Figure 2.5 Example of How Mean Energy is Obtained**

To compute the mean kinetic energy it is necessary to obtain the velocity head weighting coefficient alpha. Alpha is calculated as follows:

Mean Kinetic Energy Head = Discharge-Weighted Velocity Head

$$\alpha \frac{\bar{V}^2}{2g} = \frac{Q_1 \left( \frac{V_1^2}{2g} \right) + Q_2 \left( \frac{V_2^2}{2g} \right)}{Q_1 + Q_2} \quad (2-7)$$

$$\alpha = \frac{2g [Q_1 (\frac{V_1^2}{2g}) + Q_2 (\frac{V_2^2}{2g})]}{(Q_1 + Q_2) \bar{V}^2} \quad (2-8)$$

$$\alpha = \frac{Q_1 V_1^2 + Q_2 V_2^2}{(Q_1 + Q_2) \bar{V}^2} \quad (2-9)$$

In General:

$$\alpha = \frac{[Q_1 V_1^2 + Q_2 V_2^2 + \dots + Q_N V_N^2]}{Q \bar{V}^2} \quad (2-10)$$

The velocity coefficient,  $\alpha$ , is computed based on the conveyance in the three flow elements: left overbank, right overbank, and channel. It can also be written in terms of conveyance and area as in the following equation:

$$\alpha = \frac{(A_t)^2 \left[ \frac{(K_{lob})^3}{(A_{lob})^2} + \frac{(K_{ch})^3}{(A_{ch})^2} + \frac{(K_{rob})^3}{(A_{rob})^2} \right]}{(K_t)^3} \quad (2-11)$$

where:  $A_t$  = total flow area of cross section

$A_{lob}$   $A_{ch}$   $A_{rob}$  = flow areas of left overbank, main channel and right overbank, respectively

$K_t$  = total conveyance of cross section

$K_{lob}$   $K_{ch}$   $K_{rob}$  = conveyances of left overbank, main channel and right overbank, respectively

## Friction Loss Evaluation

Friction loss is evaluated in HEC-RAS as the product of  $\bar{S}_f$  and L (Equation 2-2), where  $\bar{S}_f$  is the representative friction slope for a reach and L is defined by Equation 2-3. The friction slope (slope of the energy gradeline) at each cross section is computed from Manning's equation as follows:

$$S_f = \left(\frac{Q}{K}\right)^2 \quad (2-12)$$

Alternative expressions for the representative reach friction slope ( $\bar{S}_f$ ) in HEC-RAS are as follows:

Average Conveyance Equation

$$\bar{S}_f = \left(\frac{Q_1 + Q_2}{K_1 + K_2}\right)^2 \quad (2-13)$$

Average Friction Slope Equation

$$\bar{S}_f = \frac{S_{f_1} + S_{f_2}}{2} \quad (2-14)$$

Geometric Mean Friction Slope Equation

$$\bar{S}_f = \sqrt{S_{f_1} \cdot S_{f_2}} \quad (2-15)$$

Harmonic Mean Friction Slope Equation

$$\bar{S}_f = \frac{2 S_{f_1} \cdot S_{f_2}}{S_{f_1} + S_{f_2}} \quad (2-16)$$

Equation 2-13 is the 'default' equation used by the program; that is, it is used automatically unless a different equation is requested by input. The program also contains an option to select equations, depending on flow regime and profile type (e.g., S1, M1, etc.). Further discussion of the alternative methods for evaluating friction loss is contained in Chapter 4, "Overview of Optional Capabilities."

## Contraction and Expansion Loss Evaluation

Contraction and expansion losses in HEC-RAS are evaluated by the following equation:

$$h_o = C \left| \frac{\alpha_1 V_1^2}{2g} - \frac{\alpha_2 V_2^2}{2g} \right| \quad (2-17)$$

where: C = The contraction or expansion coefficient

The program assumes that a contraction is occurring whenever the velocity head downstream is greater than the velocity head upstream. Likewise, when the velocity head upstream is greater than the velocity head downstream, the program assumes that a flow expansion is occurring. Typical "C" values can be found in Chapter 3, "Basic Data Requirements."

## Computation Procedure

The unknown water surface elevation at a cross section is determined by an iterative solution of Equations 2-1 and 2-2. The computational procedure is as follows:

1. Assume a water surface elevation at the upstream cross section (or downstream cross section if a supercritical profile is being calculated).
2. Based on the assumed water surface elevation, determine the corresponding total conveyance and velocity head.
3. With values from step 2, compute  $\bar{S}_f$  and solve Equation 2-2 for  $h_e$ .
4. With values from steps 2 and 3, solve Equation 2-1 for  $WS_2$ .
5. Compare the computed value of  $WS_2$  with the value assumed in step 1; repeat steps 1 through 5 until the values agree to within .01 feet (.003 m), or the user-defined tolerance.

The criterion used to assume water surface elevations in the iterative procedure varies from trial to trial. The first trial water surface is based on projecting the previous cross section's water depth onto the current cross section. The second trial water surface elevation is set to the assumed water surface elevation plus 70% of the error from the first trial (computed W.S. - assumed W.S.). In other words,  $W.S. \text{ new} = W.S. \text{ assumed} + 0.70 * (W.S. \text{ computed} - W.S. \text{ assumed})$ . The third and subsequent trials are generally based on a "Secant" method of

projecting the rate of change of the difference between computed and assumed elevations for the previous two trials. The equation for the secant method is as follows:

$$WS_I = WS_{I-2} - Err_{I-2} * Err\_Assum / Err\_Diff \quad (2-18)$$

where:  $WS_I$  = the new assumed water surface

$WS_{I-1}$  = the previous iteration's assumed water surface

$WS_{I-2}$  = the assumed water surface from two trials previous

$Err_{I-2}$  = the error from two trials previous (computed water surface minus assumed from the I-2 iteration)

$Err\_Assum$  = the difference in assumed water surfaces from the previous two trials.  $Err\_Assum = WS_{I-2} - WS_{I-1}$

$Err\_Diff$  = the assumed water surface minus the calculated water surface from the previous iteration (I-1), plus the error from two trials previous ( $Err_{I-2}$ ).  $Err\_Diff = WS_{I-1} - WS\_Calc_{I-1} + Err_{I-2}$

The change from one trial to the next is constrained to a maximum of  $\pm 50$  percent of the assumed depth from the previous trial. On occasion the secant method can fail if the value of  $Err\_Diff$  becomes too small. If the  $Err\_Diff$  is less than  $1.0E-2$ , then the secant method is not used. When this occurs, the program computes a new guess by taking the average of the assumed and computed water surfaces from the previous iteration.

The program is constrained by a *maximum number of iterations* (the default is 20) for balancing the water surface. While the program is iterating, it keeps track of the water surface that produces the minimum amount of error between the assumed and computed values. This water surface is called the *minimum error water surface*. If the maximum number of iterations is reached before a balanced water surface is achieved, the program will then calculate critical depth (if this has not already been done). The program then checks to see if the error associated with the *minimum error water surface* is within a predefined tolerance (the default is 0.3 ft or 0.1 m). If the minimum error water surface has an associated error less than the predefined tolerance, and this water surface is on the correct side of critical depth, then the program will use this water surface as the final answer and set a warning message that it has done so. If the minimum error water surface has an associated error that is greater than the predefined tolerance, or it is on the wrong side of critical depth, the program will use critical depth as the final answer for the cross section and set a warning message that it has done so. The rationale for using the minimum error water surface is that it is probably a better answer than critical depth, as

long as the above criteria are met. Both the minimum error water surface and critical depth are only used in this situation to allow the program to continue the solution of the water surface profile. Neither of these two answers are considered to be valid solutions, and therefore warning messages are issued when either is used. In general, when the program can not balance the energy equation at a cross section, it is usually caused by an inadequate number of cross sections (cross sections spaced too far apart) or bad cross section data. Occasionally, this can occur because the program is attempting to calculate a subcritical water surface when the flow regime is actually supercritical.

When a "balanced" water surface elevation has been obtained for a cross section, checks are made to ascertain that the elevation is on the "right" side of the critical water surface elevation (e.g., above the critical elevation if a subcritical profile has been requested by the user). If the balanced elevation is on the "wrong" side of the critical water surface elevation, critical depth is assumed for the cross section and a "warning" message to that effect is displayed by the program. The program user should be aware of critical depth assumptions and determine the reasons for their occurrence, because in many cases they result from reach lengths being too long or from misrepresentation of the effective flow areas of cross sections.

For a subcritical profile, a preliminary check for proper flow regime involves checking the Froude number. The program calculates the Froude number of the "balanced" water surface for both the main channel only and the entire cross section. If either of these two Froude numbers are greater than 0.94, then the program will check the flow regime by calculating a more accurate estimate of critical depth using the minimum specific energy method (this method is described in the next section). A Froude number of 0.94 is used instead of 1.0, because the calculation of Froude number in irregular channels is not accurate. Therefore, using a value of 0.94 is conservative, in that the program will calculate critical depth more often than it may need to.

For a supercritical profile, critical depth is automatically calculated for every cross section, which enables a direct comparison between balanced and critical elevations.

### **Critical Depth Determination**

Critical depth for a cross section will be determined if any of the following conditions are satisfied:

- (1) The supercritical flow regime has been specified.
- (2) The calculation of critical depth has been requested by the user.

- (3) This is an external boundary cross section and critical depth must be determined to ensure the user entered boundary condition is in the correct flow regime.
- (4) The Froude number check for a subcritical profile indicates that critical depth needs to be determined to verify the flow regime associated with the balanced elevation.
- (5) The program could not balance the energy equation within the specified tolerance before reaching the maximum number of iterations.

The total energy head for a cross section is defined by:

$$H = WS + \frac{\alpha V^2}{2g} \quad (2-19)$$

where:  $H$  = total energy head

$WS$  = water surface elevation

$\frac{\alpha V^2}{2g}$  = velocity head

The critical water surface elevation is the elevation for which the total energy head is a minimum (i.e., minimum specific energy for that cross section for the given flow). The critical elevation is determined with an iterative procedure whereby values of  $WS$  are assumed and corresponding values of  $H$  are determined with Equation 2-19 until a minimum value for  $H$  is reached.

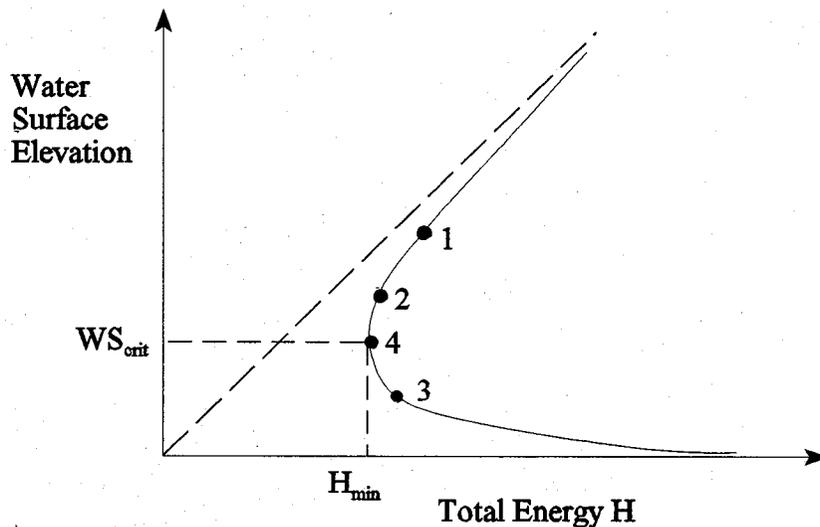


Figure 2.6 Energy vs Water Surface Elevation Diagram

The HEC-RAS program has two methods for calculating critical depth: a "parabolic" method and a "secant" method. The parabolic method is computationally faster, but it is only able to locate a single minimum energy. For most cross sections there will only be one minimum on the total energy curve, therefore the parabolic method has been set as the default method (the default method can be changed from the user interface). If the parabolic method is tried and it does not converge, then the program will automatically try the secant method.

In certain situations it is possible to have more than one minimum on the total energy curve. Multiple minimums are often associated with cross sections that have breaks in the total energy curve. These breaks can occur due to very wide and flat overbanks, as well as cross sections with levees and ineffective flow areas. When the parabolic method is used on a cross section that has multiple minimums on the total energy curve, the method will converge on the first minimum that it locates. This approach can lead to incorrect estimates of critical depth. If the user thinks that the program has incorrectly located critical depth, then the secant method should be selected and the model should be re-simulated.

The "parabolic" method involves determining values of H for three values of WS that are spaced at equal  $\Delta WS$  intervals. The WS corresponding to the minimum value for H, defined by a parabola passing through the three points on the H versus WS plane, is used as the basis for the next assumption of a value for WS. It is presumed that critical depth has been obtained when there is less than a 0.01 ft. (0.003 m) change in water depth from one iteration to the next and provided the energy head has not either decreased or increased by more than .01 feet (0.003 m).

The "secant" method first creates a table of water surface versus energy by slicing the cross section into 30 intervals. If the maximum height of the cross section (highest point to lowest point) is less than 1.5 times the maximum height of the main channel (from the highest main channel bank station to the invert), then the program slices the entire cross section into 30 equal intervals. If this is not the case, the program uses 25 equal intervals from the invert to the highest main channel bank station, and then 5 equal intervals from the main channel to the top of the cross section. The program then searches this table for the location of local minimums. When a point in the table is encountered such that the energy for the water surface immediately above and immediately below are greater than the energy for the given water surface, then the general location of a local minimum has been found. The program will then search for the local minimum by using the secant slope projection method. The program will iterate for the local minimum either thirty times or until the critical depth has been bounded by the critical error tolerance. After the local minimum has been determined more precisely, the program will continue searching the table to see if there are any other local minimums. The program can locate up to three local minimums in the energy curve. If more than one local minimum is

found, the program sets critical depth equal to the one with the minimum energy. If this local minimum is due to a break in the energy curve caused by overtopping a levee or an ineffective flow area, then the program will select the next lowest minimum on the energy curve. If all of the local minimums are occurring at breaks in the energy curve (caused by levees and ineffective flow areas), then the program will set critical depth to the one with the lowest energy. If no local minimums are found, then the program will use the water surface elevation with the least energy. If the critical depth that is found is at the top of the cross section, then this is probably not a real critical depth. Therefore, the program will double the height of the cross section and try again. Doubling the height of the cross section is accomplished by extending vertical walls at the first and last points of the section. The height of the cross section can be doubled five times before the program will quit searching.

### Applications of the Momentum Equation

Whenever the water surface passes through critical depth, the energy equation is not considered to be applicable. The energy equation is only applicable to gradually varied flow situations, and the transition from subcritical to supercritical or supercritical to subcritical is a rapidly varying flow situation. There are several instances when the transition from subcritical to supercritical and supercritical to subcritical flow can occur. These include significant changes in channel slope, bridge constrictions, drop structures and weirs, and stream junctions. In some of these instances empirical equations can be used (such as at drop structures and weirs), while at others it is necessary to apply the momentum equation in order to obtain an answer.

Within HEC-RAS, the momentum equation can be applied for the following specific problems: the occurrence of a hydraulic jump; low flow hydraulics at bridges; and stream junctions. In order to understand how the momentum equation is being used to solve each of the three problems, a derivation of the momentum equation is shown here. The application of the momentum equation to hydraulic jumps and stream junctions is discussed in detail in Chapter 4. Detailed discussions on applying the momentum equation to bridges is discussed in Chapter 5.

The momentum equation is derived from Newton's second law of motion:

Force = Mass x Acceleration (change in momentum)

$$\sum F_x = ma \quad (2-20)$$

Applying Newton's second law of motion to a body of water enclosed by two cross sections at locations 1 and 2 (Figure 2.7), the following expression for the change in momentum over a unit time can be written:

$$P_2 - P_1 + W_x - F_f = Q\rho\Delta V_x \quad (2-21)$$

- where:  $P$  = Hydrostatic pressure force at locations 1 and 2.  
 $W_x$  = Force due to the weight of water in the X direction.  
 $F_f$  = Force due to external friction losses from 2 to 1.  
 $Q$  = Discharge.  
 $\rho$  = Density of water  
 $\Delta V_x$  = Change in velocity from 2 to 1, in the X direction.

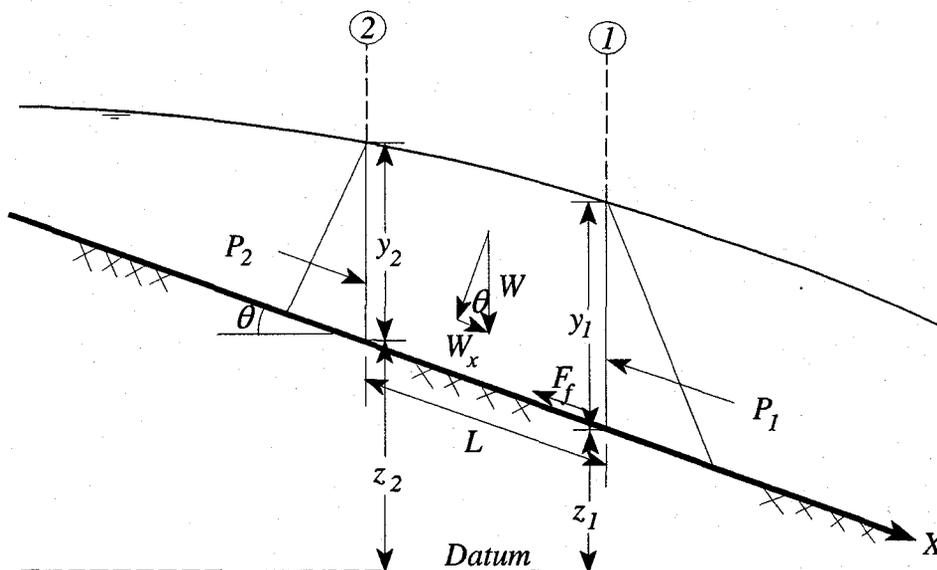


Figure 2.7 Application of the Momentum Principle

Hydrostatic Pressure Forces:

The force in the X direction due to hydrostatic pressure is:

$$P = \gamma A \bar{Y} \cos\theta \quad (2-22)$$

The assumption of a hydrostatic pressure distribution is only valid for slopes less than 1:10. The  $\cos \theta$  for a slope of 1:10 (approximately 6 degrees) is equal to 0.995. Because the slope of ordinary channels is far less than 1:10, the  $\cos \theta$  correction for depth can be set equal to 1.0 (Chow, 1959). Therefore, the equations for the hydrostatic pressure force at sections 1 and 2 are as follows:

$$P_1 = \gamma A_1 \bar{Y}_1 \quad (2-23)$$

$$P_2 = \gamma A_2 \bar{Y}_2 \quad (2-24)$$

where:  $\gamma$  = Unit weight of water  
 $A_i$  = Wetted area of the cross section at locations 1 and 2  
 $\bar{Y}_i$  = Depth measured from the water surface to the centroid of the cross sectional area at locations 1 and 2

Weight of Water Force:

Weight of water = (unit weight of water) x (volume of water)

$$W = \gamma \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) L \quad (2-25)$$

$$W_x = W \times \sin \theta \quad (2-26)$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{z_2 - z_1}{L} = S_o \quad (2-27)$$

$$W_x = \gamma \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) L S_o \quad (2-28)$$

where:  $L$  = Distance between sections 1 and 2 along the X axis  
 $S_o$  = Slope of the channel, based on mean bed elevations  
 $z_i$  = Mean bed elevation at locations 1 and 2

Force of External Friction:

$$F_f = \tau \bar{P}L \quad (2-29)$$

where:  $\tau$  = Shear stress  
 $\bar{P}$  = Average wetted perimeter between sections 1 and 2

$$\tau = \gamma \bar{R} \bar{S}_f \quad (2-30)$$

where:  $\bar{R}$  = Average hydraulic radius ( $R = A/P$ )

$$F_f = \gamma \frac{\bar{A}}{\bar{P}} \bar{S}_f \bar{P}L \quad (2-31)$$

$$F_f = \gamma \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) \bar{S}_f L \quad (2-32)$$

$\bar{S}_f$  = Slope of the energy grade line (friction slope)

Mass times Acceleration:

$$ma = Q\rho\Delta V_x \quad (2-33)$$

$$\rho = \frac{\gamma}{g} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta V_x = (\beta_1 V_1 - \beta_2 V_2)$$

$$ma = \frac{Q\gamma}{g} (\beta_1 V_1 - \beta_2 V_2) \quad (2-34)$$

where:  $\beta$  = momentum coefficient that accounts for a varying velocity distribution in irregular channels

Substituting Back into Equation 2-21, and assuming Q can vary from 2 to 1:

$$\gamma A_2 \bar{Y}_2 - \gamma A_1 \bar{Y}_1 + \gamma \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) LS_o - \gamma \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) LS_f = \frac{Q_1 \gamma}{g} \beta_1 V_1 - \frac{Q_2 \gamma}{g} \beta_2 V_2 \quad (2-35)$$

$$\frac{Q_2 \beta_2 V_2}{g} + A_2 \bar{Y}_2 + \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) LS_o - \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) LS_f = \frac{Q_1 \beta_1 V_1}{g} + A_1 \bar{Y}_1 \quad (2-36)$$

$$\frac{Q_2^2 \beta_2}{g A_2} + A_2 \bar{Y}_2 + \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) LS_o - \left( \frac{A_1 + A_2}{2} \right) LS_f = \frac{Q_1^2 \beta_1}{g A_1} + A_1 \bar{Y}_1 \quad (2-37)$$

Equation 2-37 is the functional form of the momentum equation that is used in HEC-RAS. All applications of the momentum equation within HEC-RAS are derived from equation 2-37.

### Air Entrainment in High Velocity Streams

For channels that have high flow velocity, the water surface may be slightly higher than otherwise expected due to the entrainment of air. While air entrainment is not important for most rivers, it can be significant for highly supercritical flows (Froude numbers greater than 1.6). HEC-RAS now takes this into account with the following two equations (EM 1110-2-1601, plate B-50):

For Froude numbers less than or equal to 8.2,

$$\frac{Da}{D} = 0.906(e)^{0.0615F} \quad (2-38)$$

For Froude numbers greater than 8.2,

$$\frac{Da}{D} = 0.620(e)^{0.1051F} \quad (2-39)$$

where: Da = water depth with air entrainment  
 D = water depth without air entrainment  
 e = numerical constant, equal to 2.718282  
 F = Froude number

A water surface with air entrainment is computed and displayed separately in the HEC-RAS tabular output. In order to display the water surface with air entrainment, the user must create their own profile table and include the variable "WS Air Entr." within that table. This variable is not automatically displayed in any of the standard HEC-RAS tables.

## Program Limitations

The following assumptions are implicit in the analytical expressions used in the current version of the program:

- (1) Flow is steady.
- (2) Flow is gradually varied. (Except at hydraulic structures such as: bridges; culverts; and weirs. At these locations, where the flow can be rapidly varied, the momentum equation or other empirical equations are used.)
- (3) Flow is one dimensional (i.e., velocity components in directions other than the direction of flow are not accounted for).
- (4) River channels have "small" slopes, say less than 1:10.

Flow is assumed to be steady because time-dependent terms are not included in the energy equation (Equation 2-1). Flow is assumed to be gradually varied because Equation 2-1 is based on the premise that a hydrostatic pressure distribution exists at each cross section. At locations where the flow is rapidly varied, the program switches to the momentum equation or other empirical equations. Flow is assumed to be one-dimensional because Equation 2-19 is based on the premise that the total energy head is the same for all points in a cross section. Small channel slopes are assumed because the pressure head, which is a component of  $Y$  in Equation 2-1, is represented by the water depth measured vertically.

The program does not currently have the capability to deal with movable boundaries (i.e., sediment transport) and requires that energy losses be definable with the terms contained in Equation 2-2.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## CHAPTER 3

# Basic Data Requirements

This chapter describes the basic data requirements for performing the one-dimensional flow calculations within HEC-RAS. The basic data are defined and discussions of applicable ranges for parameters are provided.

### **Contents**

- General
- Geometric Data
- Steady Flow Data

## General

The main objective of the HEC-RAS program is quite simple - to compute water surface elevations at all locations of interest for given flow values. The data needed to perform these computations are divided into the following categories: geometric data; steady flow data; unsteady flow data (not available yet); and sediment data (also not available yet). Geometric data are required for any of the analyses performed within HEC-RAS. The other data types are only required if you are going to do that specific type of analysis (i.e., steady flow data are required to perform a steady flow water surface profile computation). The current version of HEC-RAS is limited to steady flow computations, therefore, geometric data and steady flow data are the only available data categories.

## Geometric Data

The basic geometric data consist of establishing the connectivity of the river system (River System Schematic); cross section data; reach lengths; energy loss coefficients (friction losses, contraction and expansion losses); and stream junction information. Hydraulic structure data (bridges, culverts, etc.), which are also considered geometric data, will be described in later chapters.

### Study Limit Determination

When performing a hydraulic study, it is normally necessary to gather data both upstream of and downstream of the study reach. Gathering additional data upstream is necessary in order to evaluate any upstream impacts due to construction alternatives that are being evaluated within the study reach (Figure 3.1). The limits for data collection upstream should be at a distance such that the increase in water surface profile resulting from a channel modification converges with the existing conditions profile. Additional data collection downstream of the study reach is necessary in order to prevent any user defined boundary condition from affecting the results within the study reach. In general, the water surface at the downstream boundary of a model is not normally known. The user must estimate this water surface for each profile to be computed. A common practice is to use Manning's equation and compute normal depth as the starting water surface. The actual water surface may be higher or lower than normal depth. The use of normal depth will introduce an error in the water surface profile at the boundary. In general, for subcritical flow, the error at the boundary will diminish as the computations proceed upstream. In order to prevent any computed errors within the study reach, the unknown boundary condition should be placed far enough downstream such that the computed profile will converge to a consistent answer by the time the computations reach the downstream limit of the study.

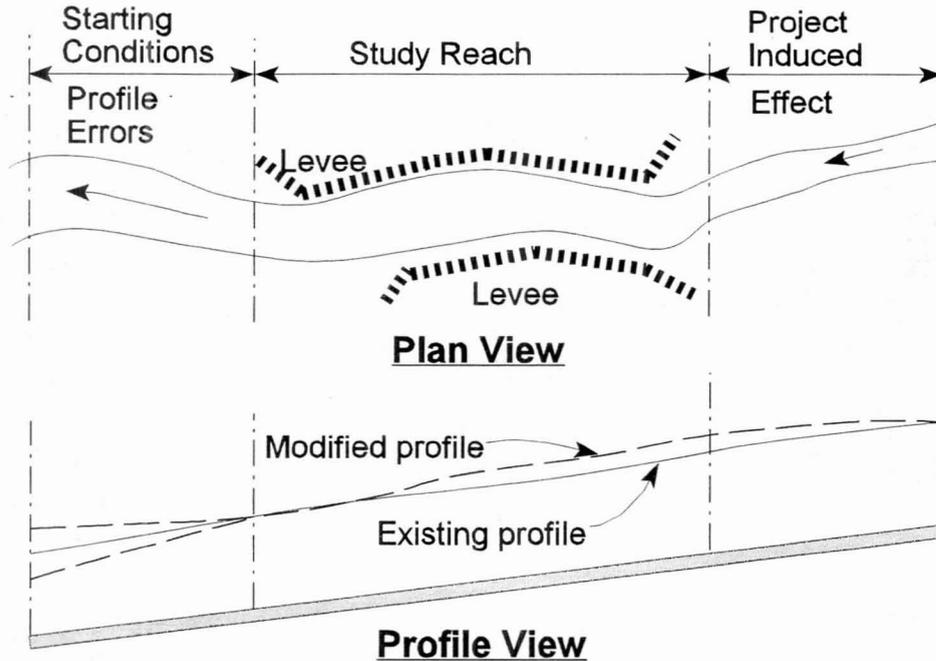


Figure 3.1 Example Study Limit Determination

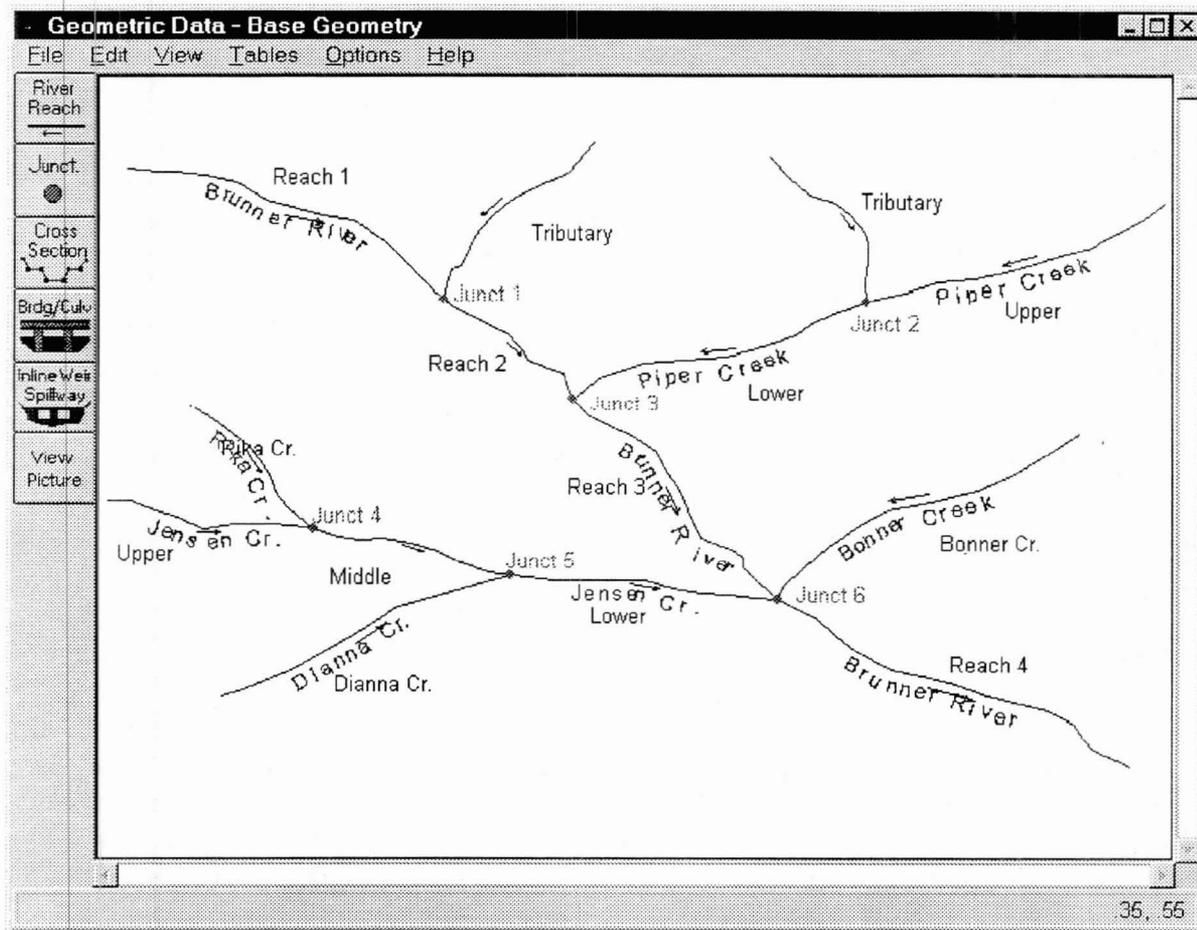
### The River System Schematic

The river system schematic is required for any geometric data set within the HEC-RAS system. The schematic defines how the various river reaches are connected, as well as establishing a naming convention for referencing all the other data. The river system schematic is developed by drawing and connecting the various reaches of the system within the geometric data editor (see Chapter 6 of the HEC-RAS user's manual for details on how to develop the schematic from within the user interface). The user is required to develop the river system schematic before any other data can be entered.

Each river reach on the schematic is given a unique identifier. As other data are entered, the data are referenced to a specific reach of the schematic. For example, each cross section must have a "River", "Reach" and "River Station" identifier. The river and reach identifiers defines which reach the cross section lives in, while the river station identifier defines where that cross section is located within the reach, with respect to the other cross sections for that reach.

The connectivity of reaches is very important in order for the model to understand how the computations should proceed from one reach to the next. The user is required to draw each reach from upstream to downstream, in what is considered to be the positive flow direction. The connection of reaches are considered junctions. Junctions should only be established at locations where

two or more streams come together or split apart. Junctions can not be established with a single reach flowing into another single reach. These two reaches must be combined and defined as one reach. An example river system schematic is shown in Figure 3.2.



**Figure 3.2 Example River System Schematic**

The example schematic shown in Figure 3.2 is for a dendritic river system. Arrows are automatically drawn on the schematic in the assumed positive flow direction. Junctions (red circles) are automatically formed as reaches are connected. As shown, the user is required to provide a river and reach identifier for each reach, as well as an identifier for each junction.

HEC-RAS has the ability to model river systems that range from simple single reach models to complicated networks. A "network" model is where river reaches split apart and then come back together, forming looped systems. An example schematic of a looped stream network is shown in Figure 3.3.

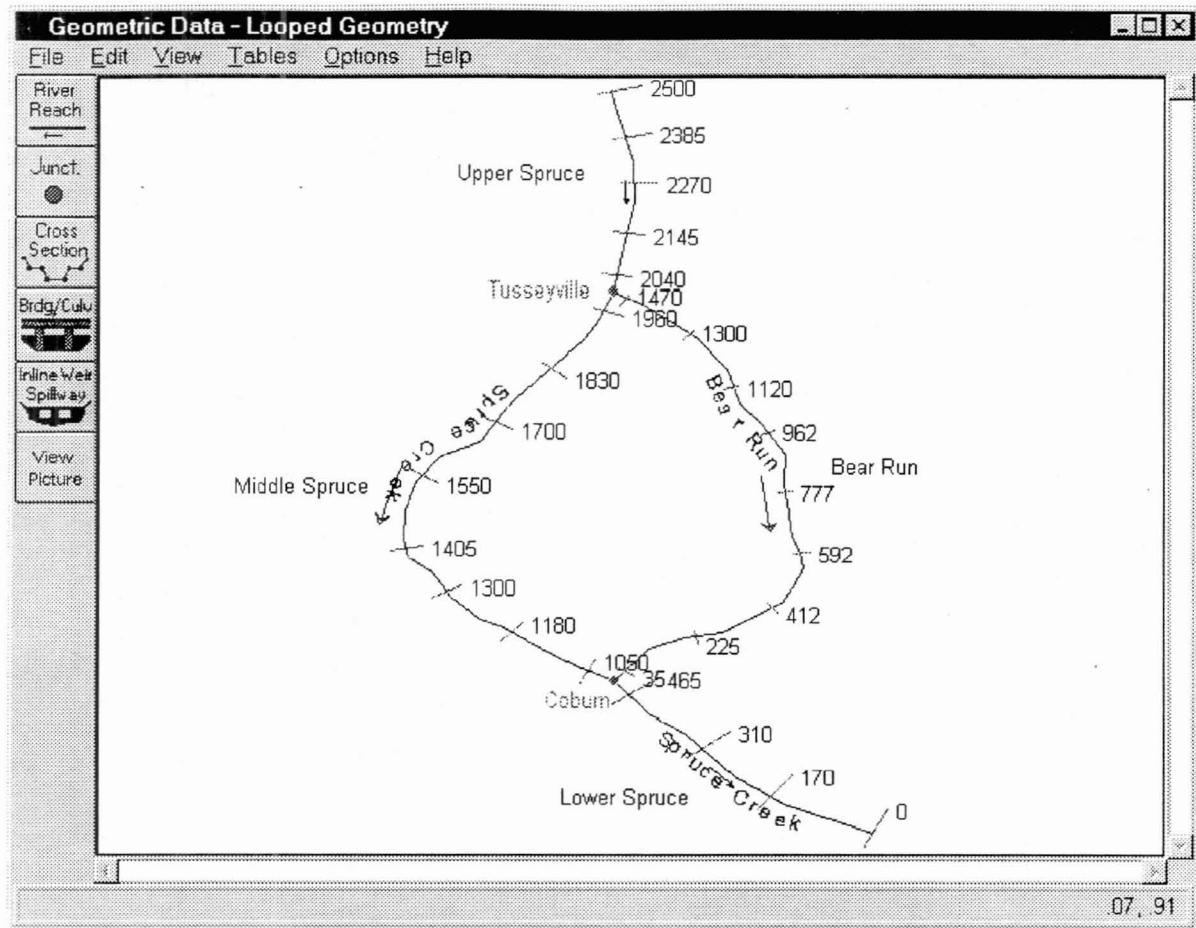


Figure 3.3 Example Schematic for a Looped Network of Reaches

The river system schematic shown in Figure 3.3 demonstrates the ability of HEC-RAS to model flow splits as well as flow combinations. The current version of the steady flow model within HEC-RAS does not determine the amount of flow going to each reach at a flow split. It is currently up to the user to define the amount of flow in each reach. After a simulation is made, the user should adjust the flow in the reaches in order to obtain a balance in energy around the junction of a flow split.

### Cross Section Geometry

Boundary geometry for the analysis of flow in natural streams is specified in terms of ground surface profiles (cross sections) and the measured distances between them (reach lengths). Cross sections are located at intervals along a stream to characterize the flow carrying capability of the stream and its

adjacent floodplain. They should extend across the entire floodplain and should be perpendicular to the anticipated flow lines (approximately perpendicular to the ground contour lines). Occasionally it is necessary to lay out cross sections in a curved or dog-leg alignment to meet this requirement. Every effort should be made to obtain cross sections that accurately represent the stream and floodplain geometry.

Cross sections are required at representative locations throughout a stream reach and at locations where changes occur in discharge, slope, shape, or roughness, at locations where levees begin or end and at bridges or control structures such as weirs. Where abrupt changes occur, several cross sections should be used to describe the change regardless of the distance. Cross section spacing is also a function of stream size, slope, and the uniformity of cross section shape. In general, large uniform rivers of flat slope normally require the fewest number of cross sections per mile. The purpose of the study also affects spacing of cross sections. For instance, navigation studies on large relatively flat streams may require closely spaced (e.g., 200 feet) cross sections to analyze the effect of local conditions on low flow depths, whereas cross sections for sedimentation studies, to determine deposition in reservoirs, may be spaced at intervals on the order of miles.

The choice of friction loss equation may also influence the spacing of cross sections. For instance, cross section spacing may be maximized when calculating an M1 profile (backwater profile) with the average friction slope equation or when the harmonic mean friction slope equation is used to compute M2 profiles (draw down profile). The HEC-RAS software provides the option to let the program select the averaging equation.

Each cross section in an HEC-RAS data set is identified by a River, Reach and River Station label. The cross section is described by entering the station and elevation (X-Y data) from left to right, with respect to looking in the downstream direction. The River Station identifier may correspond to stationing along the channel, mile points, or any fictitious numbering system. The numbering system must be consistent, in that the program assumes that higher numbers are upstream and lower numbers are downstream.

Each data point in the cross section is given a station number corresponding to the horizontal distance from a starting point on the left. Up to 500 data points may be used to describe each cross section. Cross section data are traditionally defined looking in the downstream direction. The program considers the left side of the stream to have the lowest station numbers and the right side to have the highest. Cross section data are allowed to have negative stationing values. Stationing must be entered from left to right in increasing order. However, more than one point can have the same stationing value. The left and right stations separating the main channel from the overbank areas must be specified on the cross section data editor. End points of a cross section that are too low (below the computed water surface elevation) will automatically be extended

vertically and a note indicating that the cross section had to be extended will show up in the output for that section. The program adds additional wetted perimeter for any water that comes into contact with the extended walls.

Other data that are required for each cross section consist of: downstream reach lengths; roughness coefficients; and contraction and expansion coefficients. These data will be discussed in detail later in this chapter.

Numerous program options are available to allow the user to easily add or modify cross section data. For example, when the user wishes to repeat a surveyed cross section, an option is available from the interface to make a copy of any cross section. Once a cross section is copied, other options are available to allow the user to modify the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the repeated cross section data. For a detailed explanation on how to use these cross section options, see chapter 6 of the HEC-RAS user's manual.

### Optional Cross Section Properties

A series of program options are available to restrict flow to the effective flow areas of cross sections. Among these capabilities are options for: ineffective flow areas; levees; and blocked obstructions. All of these capabilities are available from the "Options" menu of the Cross Section Data editor.

**Ineffective Flow Areas.** This option allows the user to define areas of the cross section that will contain water that is not actively being conveyed (ineffective flow). Ineffective flow areas are often used to describe portions of a cross section in which water will pond, but the velocity of that water, in the downstream direction, is close to zero. This water is included in the storage calculations and other wetted cross section parameters, but it is not included as part of the active flow area. When using ineffective flow areas, no additional wetted perimeter is added to the active flow area. An example of an ineffective flow area is shown in Figure 3.4. The cross-hatched area on the left of the plot represents what is considered to be the ineffective flow.

Two alternatives are available for setting ineffective flow areas. The first option allows the user to define a left station and elevation and a right station and elevation (normal ineffective areas). When this option is used, and if the water surface is below the established ineffective elevations, the areas to the left of the left station and to the right of the right station are considered ineffective. Once the water surface goes above either of the established elevations, then that specific area is no longer considered ineffective.

The second option allows for the establishment of blocked ineffective flow areas. Blocked ineffective flow areas require the user to enter an elevation, a left station, and a right station for each ineffective block. Up to ten blocked ineffective flow areas can be entered at each cross section. Once the water surface goes above the elevation of the blocked ineffective flow area, the blocked area is no longer considered ineffective.

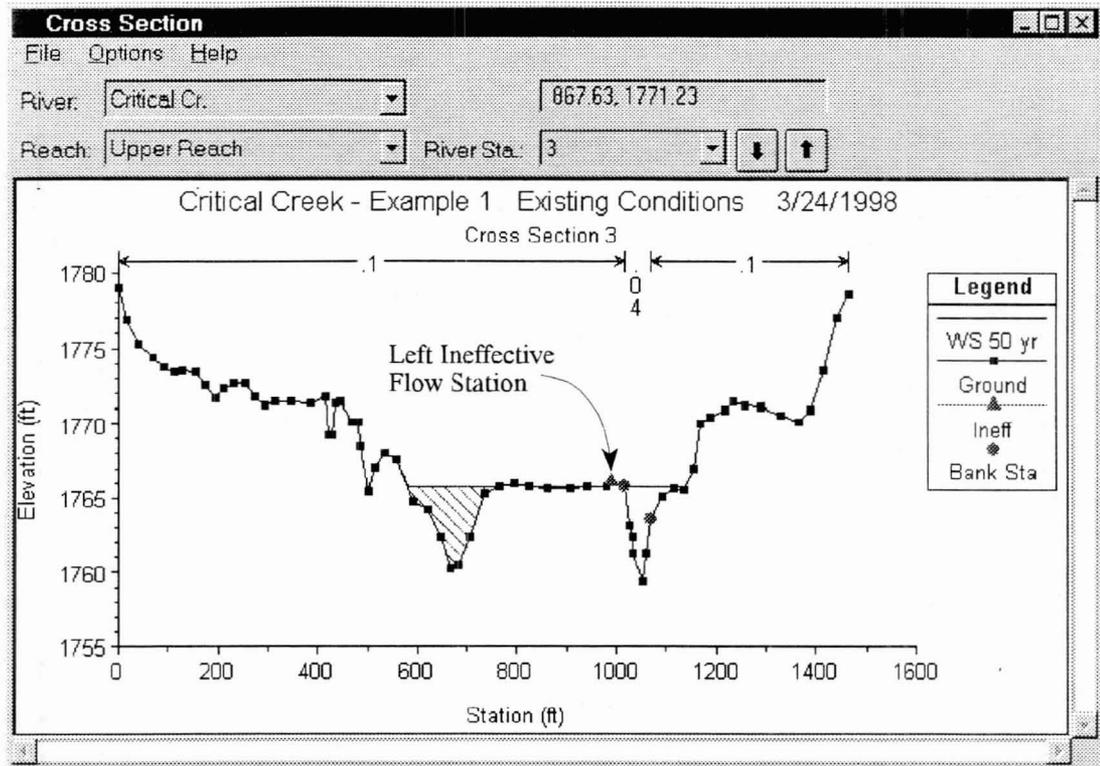
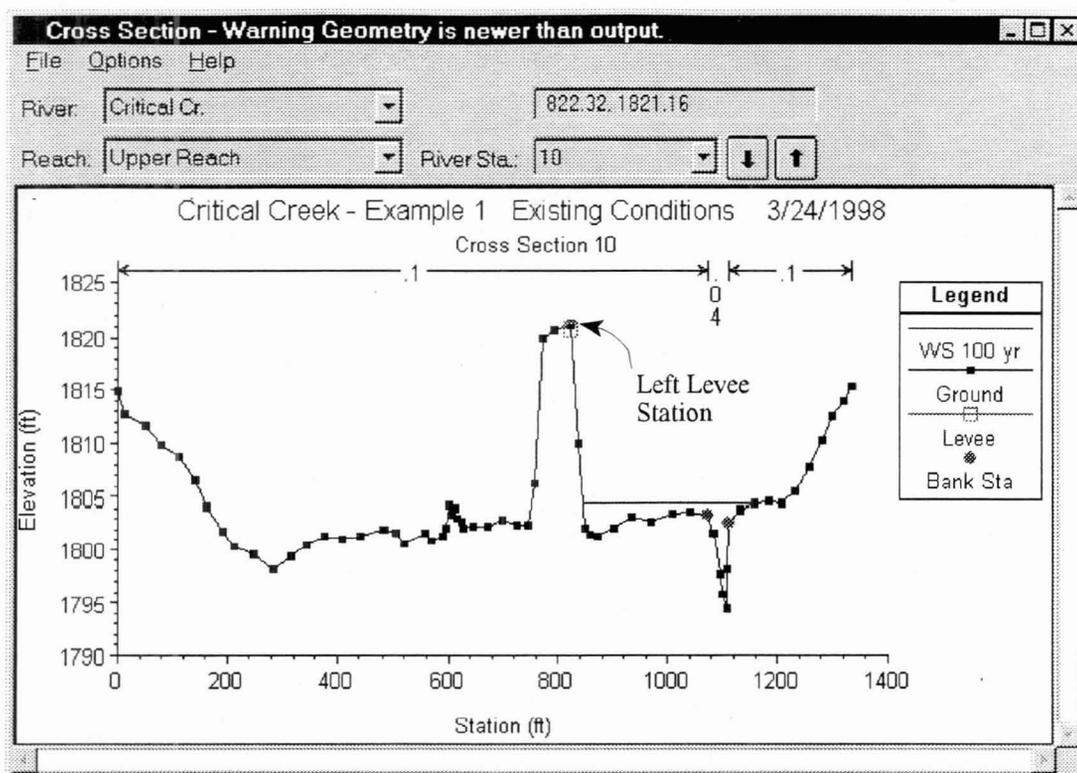


Figure 3.4 Cross section with normal ineffective flow areas

**Levees.** This option allows the user to establish a left and/or right levee station and elevation on any cross section. When levees are established, no water can go to the left of the left levee station or to the right of the right levee station until either of the levee elevations are exceeded. Levee stations must be defined explicitly, or the program assumes that water can go anywhere within the cross section. An example of a cross section with a levee on the left side is shown in Figure 3.5. In this example the levee station and elevation is associated with an existing point on the cross section.

The user may want to add levees into a data set in order to see what effect a levee will have on the water surface. A simple way to do this is to set a levee station and elevation that is above the existing ground. If a levee elevation is placed above the existing geometry of the cross section, then a vertical wall is placed at that station up to the established levee height. Additional wetted perimeter is included when water comes into contact with the levee wall. An example of this is shown in Figure 3.6.



**Figure 3.5 Example of the Levee Option**

**Blocked Obstructions.** This option allows the user to define areas of the cross section that will be permanently blocked out. Blocked obstructions decrease flow area and add wetted perimeter when the water comes in contact with the obstruction. A blocked obstruction does not prevent water from going outside of the obstruction.

Two alternatives are available for entering blocked obstructions. The first option allows the user to define a left station and elevation and a right station and elevation (normal blocked areas). When this option is used, the area to the left of the left station and to the right of the right station will be completely blocked out. An example of this type of blocked obstruction is shown in Figure 3.7.

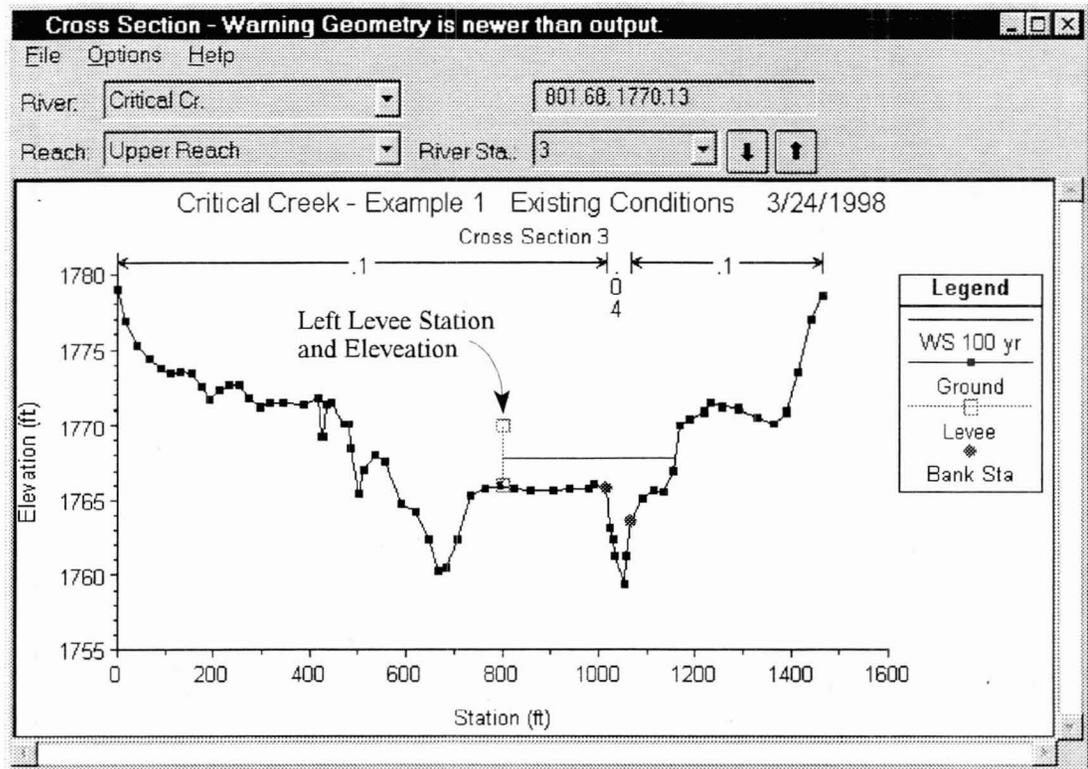


Figure 3.6 Example Levee Added to a Cross Section

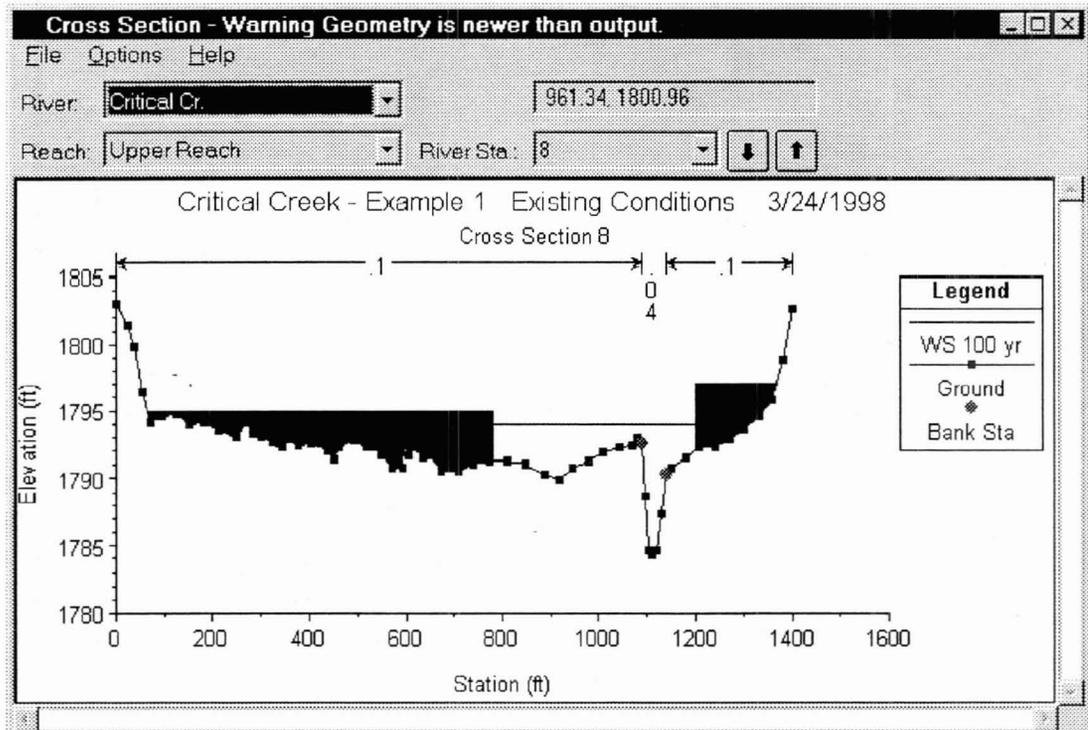


Figure 3.7 Example of Normal Blocked Obstructions

The second option, for blocked obstructions, allows the user to enter up to 20 individual blocks (Multiple Blocks). With this option the user enters a left station, a right station, and an elevation for each of the blocks. An example of a cross section with multiple blocked obstructions is shown in Figure 3.8.

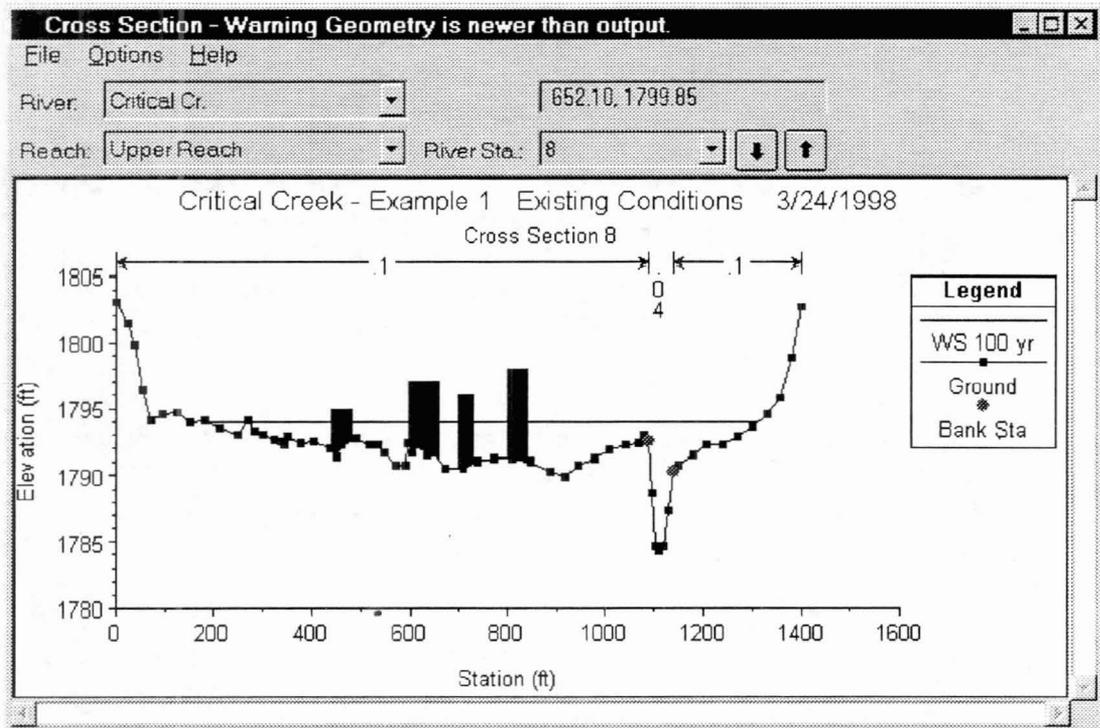


Figure 3.8 Example Cross Section With Multiple Blocked Obstructions

## Reach Lengths

The measured distances between cross sections are referred to as reach lengths. The reach lengths for the left overbank, right overbank and channel are specified on the cross section data editor. Channel reach lengths are typically measured along the thalweg. Overbank reach lengths should be measured along the anticipated path of the center of mass of the overbank flow. Often, these three lengths will be of similar value. There are, however, conditions where they will differ significantly, such as at river bends, or where the channel meanders and the overbanks are straight. Where the distances between cross sections for channel and overbanks are different, a discharge-weighted reach length is determined based on the discharges in the main channel and left and right overbank segments of the reach (see Equation 2-3, of chapter 2).

## Energy Loss Coefficients

Several types of loss coefficients are utilized by the program to evaluate energy losses: (1) Manning's  $n$  values or equivalent roughness 'k' values for friction loss, (2) contraction and expansion coefficients to evaluate transition (shock) losses, and (3) bridge and culvert loss coefficients to evaluate losses related to weir shape, pier configuration, pressure flow, and entrance and exit conditions. Energy loss coefficients associated with bridges and culverts will be discussed in chapters 5 and 6 of this manual.

**Manning's  $n$ .** Selection of an appropriate value for Manning's  $n$  is very significant to the accuracy of the computed water surface profiles. The value of Manning's  $n$  is highly variable and depends on a number of factors including: surface roughness; vegetation; channel irregularities; channel alignment; scour and deposition; obstructions; size and shape of the channel; stage and discharge; seasonal change; temperature; and suspended material and bedload.

In general, Manning's  $n$  values should be calibrated whenever observed water surface profile information (gaged data, as well as high water marks) is available. When gaged data are not available, values of  $n$  computed for similar stream conditions or values obtained from experimental data should be used as guides in selecting  $n$  values.

There are several references a user can access that show Manning's  $n$  values for typical channels. An extensive compilation of  $n$  values for streams and floodplains can be found in Chow's book "Open-Channel Hydraulics" [Chow, 1959]. Excerpts from Chow's book, for the most common types of channels, are shown in Table 3.1 below. Chow's book presents additional types of channels, as well as pictures of streams for which  $n$  values have been calibrated.

**Table 3.1**  
**Manning's 'n' Values**

Type of Channel and Description	Minimum	Normal	Maximum
<i>A. Natural Streams</i>			
<b>1. Main Channels</b>			
a. Clean, straight, full, no rifts or deep pools	0.025	0.030	0.033
b. Same as above, but more stones and weeds	0.030	0.035	0.040
c. Clean, winding, some pools and shoals	0.033	0.040	0.045
d. Same as above, but some weeds and stones	0.035	0.045	0.050
e. Same as above, lower stages, more ineffective slopes and sections	0.040	0.048	0.055
f. Same as "d" but more stones	0.045	0.050	0.060
g. Sluggish reaches, weedy, deep pools	0.050	0.070	0.080
h. Very weedy reaches, deep pools, or floodways with heavy stands of timber and brush	0.070	0.100	0.150
<b>2. Flood Plains</b>			
a. Pasture no brush			
1. Short grass	0.025	0.030	0.035
2. High grass	0.030	0.035	0.050
b. Cultivated areas			
1. No crop	0.020	0.030	0.040
2. Mature row crops	0.025	0.035	0.045
3. Mature field crops	0.030	0.040	0.050
c. Brush			
1. Scattered brush, heavy weeds	0.035	0.050	0.070
2. Light brush and trees, in winter	0.035	0.050	0.060
3. Light brush and trees, in summer	0.040	0.060	0.080
4. Medium to dense brush, in winter	0.045	0.070	0.110
5. Medium to dense brush, in summer	0.070	0.100	0.160
d. Trees			
1. Cleared land with tree stumps, no sprouts	0.030	0.040	0.050
2. Same as above, but heavy sprouts	0.050	0.060	0.080
3. Heavy stand of timber, few down trees, little undergrowth, flow below branches	0.080	0.100	0.120
4. Same as above, but with flow into branches	0.100	0.120	0.160
5. Dense willows, summer, straight	0.110	0.150	0.200
<b>3. Mountain Streams, no vegetation in channel, banks usually steep, with trees and brush on banks submerged</b>			
a. Bottom: gravels, cobbles, and few boulders	0.030	0.040	0.050
b. Bottom: cobbles with large boulders	0.040	0.050	0.070

**Table 3.1 (Continued)**  
**Manning's 'n' Values**

Type of Channel and Description	Minimum	Normal	Maximum
<i>B. Lined or Built-Up Channels</i>			
1. <b>Concrete</b>			
a. Trowel finish	0.011	0.013	0.015
b. Float Finish	0.013	0.015	0.016
c. Finished, with gravel bottom	0.015	0.017	0.020
d. Unfinished	0.014	0.017	0.020
e. Gunite, good section	0.016	0.019	0.023
f. Gunite, wavy section	0.018	0.022	0.025
g. On good excavated rock	0.017	0.020	
h. On irregular excavated rock	0.022	0.027	
2. <b>Concrete bottom float finished with sides of:</b>			
a. Dressed stone in mortar	0.015	0.017	0.020
b. Random stone in mortar	0.017	0.020	0.024
c. Cement rubble masonry, plastered	0.016	0.020	0.024
d. Cement rubble masonry	0.020	0.025	0.030
e. Dry rubble on riprap	0.020	0.030	0.035
3. <b>Gravel bottom with sides of:</b>			
a. Formed concrete	0.017	0.020	0.025
b. Random stone in mortar	0.020	0.023	0.026
c. Dry rubble or riprap	0.023	0.033	0.036
4. <b>Brick</b>			
a. Glazed	0.011	0.013	0.015
b. In cement mortar	0.012	0.015	0.018
5. <b>Metal</b>			
a. Smooth steel surfaces	0.011	0.012	0.014
b. Corrugated metal	0.021	0.025	0.030
6. <b>Asphalt</b>			
a. Smooth	0.013	0.013	
b. Rough	0.016	0.016	
7. <b>Vegetal lining</b>	0.030		0.500

**Table 3.1 (Continued)**  
**Manning's 'n' Values**

Type of Channel and Description	Minimum	Normal	Maximum
<i>C. Excavated or Dredged Channels</i>			
<b>1. Earth, straight and uniform</b>			
a. Clean, recently completed	0.016	0.018	0.020
b. Clean, after weathering	0.018	0.022	0.025
c. Gravel, uniform section, clean	0.022	0.025	0.030
d. With short grass, few weeds	0.022	0.027	0.033
<b>2. Earth, winding and sluggish</b>			
a. No vegetation	0.023	0.025	0.030
b. Grass, some weeds	0.025	0.030	0.033
c. Dense weeds or aquatic plants in deep channels	0.030	0.035	0.040
d. Earth bottom and rubble side	0.028	0.030	0.035
e. Stony bottom and weedy banks	0.025	0.035	0.040
f. Cobble bottom and clean sides	0.030	0.040	0.050
<b>3. Dragline-excavated or dredged</b>			
a. No vegetation	0.025	0.028	0.033
b. Light brush on banks	0.035	0.050	0.060
<b>4. Rock cuts</b>			
a. Smooth and uniform	0.025	0.035	0.040
b. Jagged and irregular	0.035	0.040	0.050
<b>5. Channels not maintained, weeds and brush</b>			
a. Clean bottom, brush on sides	0.040	0.050	0.080
b. Same as above, highest stage of flow	0.045	0.070	0.110
c. Dense weeds, high as flow depth	0.050	0.080	0.120
d. Dense brush, high stage	0.080	0.100	0.140

Other sources that include pictures of selected streams as a guide to n value determination are available (Fasken, 1963; Barnes, 1967; and Hicks and Mason, 1991). In general, these references provide color photos with tables of calibrated n values for a range of flows.

Although there are many factors that affect the selection of the n value for the channel, some of the most important factors are the type and size of materials that compose the bed and banks of a channel, and the shape of the channel. Cowan (1956) developed a procedure for estimating the effects of these

factors to determine the value of Manning's  $n$  of a channel. In Cowan's procedure, the value of  $n$  is computed by the following equation:

$$n = (n_b + n_1 + n_2 + n_3 + n_4) m \quad (3-1)$$

where: $n_b$	=	Base value of $n$ for a straight uniform, smooth channel in natural materials
$n_1$	=	Value added to correct for surface irregularities
$n_2$	=	Value for variations in shape and size of the channel
$n_3$	=	Value for obstructions
$n_4$	=	Value for vegetation and flow conditions
$m$	=	Correction factor to account for meandering of the channel

A detailed description of Cowan's method can be found in "Guide for Selecting Manning's Roughness Coefficients for Natural Channels and Flood Plains" (FHWA, 1984). This report was developed by the U.S. Geological Survey (Arcement, 1989) for the Federal Highway Administration. The report also presents a method similar to Cowan's for developing Manning's  $n$  values for flood plains, as well as some additional methods for densely vegetated flood plains.

Limerinos (1970) related  $n$  values to hydraulic radius and bed particle size based on samples from 11 stream channels having bed materials ranging from small gravel to medium size boulders. The Limerinos equation is as follows:

$$n = \frac{(0.0926) R^{1/6}}{1.16 + 2.0 \log\left(\frac{R}{d_{84}}\right)} \quad (3-2)$$

where: $R$	=	Hydraulic radius, in feet (data range was 1.0 to 6.0 feet)
$d_{84}$	=	Particle diameter, in feet, that equals or exceeds that of 84 percent of the particles (data range was 1.5 mm to 250 mm)

The Limerinos equation (3-2) fit the data that he used very well, in that the coefficient of correlation  $\bar{R}^2 = 0.88$  and the standard error of estimates for values of  $n/R^{1/6} = 0.0087$ .

Limerinos selected reaches that had a minimum amount of roughness, other than that caused by the bed material. The Limerinos equation provides a good estimate of the base  $n$  value. The base  $n$  value should then be increased to account for other factors, as shown above in Cowen's method.

Jarrett (1984) developed an equation for high gradient streams (slopes greater than 0.002). Jarrett performed a regression analysis on 75 data sets that were surveyed from 21 different streams. Jarrett's equation for Manning's  $n$  is as follows:

$$n = 0.39 S^{0.38} R^{-0.16} \quad (3-3)$$

where:  $S$  = The friction slope. The slope of the water surface can be used when the friction slope is unknown.

Jarrett (1984) states the following limitations for the use of his equation:

1. The equations are applicable to natural main channels having stable bed and bank materials (gravels, cobbles, and boulders) without backwater.
2. The equations can be used for slopes from 0.002 to 0.04 and for hydraulic radii from 0.5 to 7.0 feet (0.15 to 2.1 m). The upper limit on slope is due to a lack of verification data available for the slopes of high-gradient streams. Results of the regression analysis indicate that for hydraulic radius greater than 7.0 feet (2.1 m),  $n$  did not vary significantly with depth; thus extrapolating to larger flows should not be too much in error as long as the bed and bank material remain fairly stable.
3. During the analysis of the data, the energy loss coefficients for contraction and expansion were set to 0.0 and 0.5, respectively.
4. Hydraulic radius does not include the wetted perimeter of bed particles.
5. These equations are applicable to streams having relatively small amounts of suspended sediment.

Because Manning's  $n$  depends on many factors such as the type and amount of vegetation, channel configuration, stage, etc., several options are available in HEC-RAS to vary  $n$ . When three  $n$  values are sufficient to describe the channel and overbanks, the user can enter the three  $n$  values directly onto the cross section editor for each cross section. Any of the  $n$  values may be changed at any cross section. Often three values are not enough to adequately describe

the lateral roughness variation in the cross section; in this case the "Horizontal Variation of n Value" should be selected from the "Options" menu of the cross section editor. If n values change within the channel, the criterion described in Chapter 2, under composite n values, is used to determine whether the n values should be converted to a composite value using Equation 2-5.

**Equivalent Roughness 'k'.** An equivalent roughness parameter 'k', commonly used in the hydraulic design of channels, is provided as an option for describing boundary roughness in HEC-RAS. Equivalent roughness, sometimes called "roughness height," is a measure of the linear dimension of roughness elements, but is not necessarily equal to the actual, or even the average, height of these elements. In fact, two roughness elements with different linear dimensions may have the same 'k' value because of differences in shape and orientation [Chow, 1959].

The advantage of using equivalent roughness 'k' instead of Manning's 'n' is that 'k' reflects changes in the friction factor due to stage, whereas Manning's 'n' alone does not. This influence can be seen in the definition of Chezy's "C" (English units) for a rough channel (Equation 2-6, USACE, 1991):

$$C = 32.6 \log_{10} \left[ \frac{12.2R}{k} \right] \quad (3-4)$$

where: C = Chezy roughness coefficient

R = hydraulic radius (feet)

k = equivalent roughness (feet)

Note that as the hydraulic radius increases (which is equivalent to an increase in stage), the friction factor "C" increases. In HEC-RAS, 'k' is converted to a Manning's 'n' by using the above equation and equating the Chezy and Manning's equations (Equation 2-4, USACE, 1991) to obtain the following:

English Units:

$$n = \frac{1.486R^{1/6}}{32.6 \log_{10} \left[ 12.2 \frac{R}{k} \right]} \quad (3-5)$$

Metric Unit:

$$n = \frac{R^{1/6}}{18.0 \log_{10} \left[ 12.2 \frac{R}{k} \right]} \quad (3-6)$$

where: n = Manning's roughness coefficient

Again, this equation is based on the assumption that all channels (even concrete-lined channels) are "hydraulically rough." A graphical illustration of this conversion is available [USACE, 1991].

Horizontal variation of 'k' values is described in the same manner as horizontal variation of Manning's 'n' values. See chapter 6 of the HEC-RAS user's manual, to learn how to enter k values into the program. Up to twenty values of 'k' can be specified for each cross section.

Tables and charts for determining 'k' values for concrete-lined channels are provided in EM 1110-2-1601 [USACE, 1991]. Values for riprap-lined channels may be taken as the theoretical spherical diameter of the median stone size. Approximate 'k' values [Chow, 1959] for a variety of bed materials, including those for natural rivers are shown in Table 3.2.

**Table 3.2**  
**Equivalent Roughness Values of Various Bed Materials**

	<b>k</b> <b>(Feet)</b>
Brass, Cooper, Lead, Glass	0.0001 - 0.0030
Wrought Iron, Steel	0.0002 - 0.0080
Asphalted Cast Iron	0.0004 - 0.0070
Galvanized Iron	0.0005 - 0.0150
Cast Iron	0.0008 - 0.0180
Wood Stave	0.0006 - 0.0030
Cement	0.0013 - 0.0040
Concrete	0.0015 - 0.0100
Drain Tile	0.0020 - 0.0100
Riveted Steel	0.0030 - 0.0300
Natural River Bed	0.1000 - 3.0000

The values of 'k' (0.1 to 3.0 ft.) for natural river channels are normally much larger than the actual diameters of the bed materials to account for boundary irregularities and bed forms.

**Contraction and Expansion Coefficients.** Contraction or expansion of flow due to changes in the cross section is a common cause of energy losses within a reach (between two cross sections). Whenever this occurs, the loss is computed from the contraction and expansion coefficients specified on the cross section data editor. The coefficients, which are applied between cross sections, are specified as part of the data for the upstream cross section. The coefficients are multiplied by the absolute difference in velocity heads between the current cross section and the next cross section downstream, which gives

the energy loss caused by the transition (Equation 2-2 of Chapter 2). Where the change in river cross section is small, and the flow is subcritical, coefficients of contraction and expansion are typically on the order of 0.1 and 0.3, respectively. When the change in effective cross section area is abrupt such as at bridges, contraction and expansion coefficients of 0.3 and 0.5 are often used. On occasion, the coefficients of contraction and expansion around bridges and culverts may be as high as 0.6 and 0.8, respectively. These values may be changed at any cross section. For additional information concerning transition losses and for information on bridge loss coefficients, see chapter 5, Modeling Bridges. Typical values for contraction and expansion coefficients, for subcritical flow, are shown in Table 3.3 below.

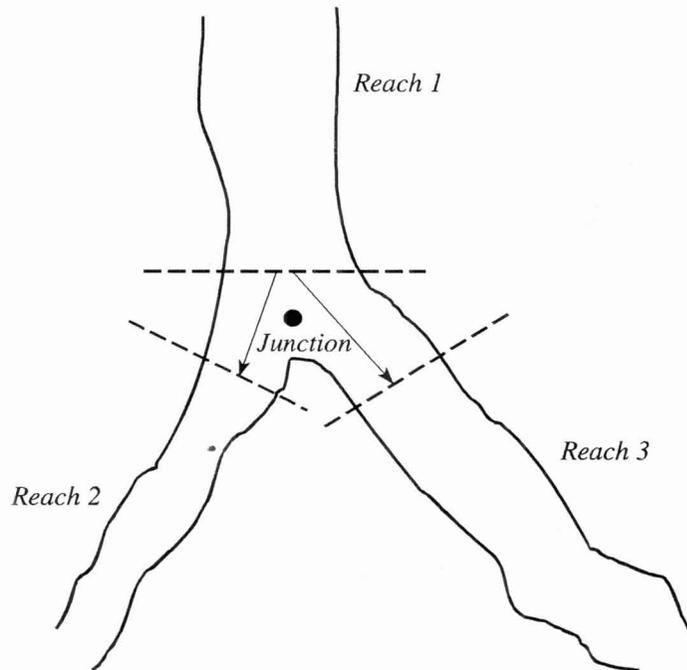
**Table 3.3**  
**Subcritical Flow Contraction and Expansion Coefficients**

	<b>Contraction</b>	<b>Expansion</b>
No transition loss computed	0.0	0.0
Gradual transitions	0.1	0.3
Typical Bridge sections	0.3	0.5
Abrupt transitions	0.6	0.8

The maximum value for the contraction and expansion coefficient is one (1.0). In general, the empirical contraction and expansion coefficients should be lower for supercritical flow. In supercritical flow the velocity heads are much greater, and small changes in depth can cause large changes in velocity head. Using contraction and expansion coefficients that would be typical for subcritical flow can result in over estimation of the energy losses and oscillations in the computed water surface profile. In constructed trapezoidal and rectangular channels, designed for supercritical flow, the user should set the contraction and expansion coefficients to zero in the reaches where the cross sectional geometry is not changing shape. In reaches where the flow is contracting and expanding, the user should select contraction and expansion coefficients carefully. Typical values for gradual transitions in supercritical flow would be around 0.05 for the contraction coefficient and 0.10 for the expansion coefficient. As the natural transitions begin to become more abrupt, it may be necessary to use higher values, such as 0.1 for the contraction coefficient and 0.2 for the expansion coefficient.

## Stream Junction Data

Stream junctions are defined as locations where two or more streams come together or split apart. Junction data consists of reach lengths across the junction and tributary angles (only if the momentum equation is selected). Reach lengths across the junction are entered in the Junction Data editor. This allows for the lengths across very complicated confluences (e.g., flow splits) to be accommodated. An example of this is shown in Figure 3.9.



**Figure 3.9** Example of a Stream Junction

As shown in Figure 3.9, using downstream reach lengths, for the last cross section in Reach 1, would not adequately describe the lengths across the junction. It is therefore necessary to describe lengths across junctions in the Junction Data editor. For the example shown in Figure 3.9, two lengths would be entered. These lengths should represent the average distance that the water will travel from the last cross section in Reach 1 to the first cross section of the respective reaches.

In general, the cross sections that bound a junction should be placed as close together as possible. This will minimize the error in the calculation of energy losses across the junction.

In HEC-RAS a junction can be modeled by either the energy equation (Equation 2-1 of chapter 2) or the momentum equation. The energy equation does not take into account the angle of any tributary coming in or leaving the main stream, while the momentum equation does. In most cases, the amount of energy loss due to the angle of the tributary flow is not significant, and using the energy equation to model the junction is more than adequate. However, there are situations where the angle of the tributary can cause significant energy losses. In these situations it would be more appropriate to use the momentum approach. When the momentum approach is selected, an angle for all tributaries of the main stem must be entered. A detailed description of how junction calculations are made can be found in Chapter 4 of this manual.

## Steady Flow Data

Steady flow data are required in order to perform a steady water surface profile calculation. Steady flow data consist of: flow regime; boundary conditions; and peak discharge information.

### Flow Regime

Profile computations begin at a cross section with known or assumed starting conditions and proceed upstream for subcritical flow or downstream for supercritical flow. The flow regime (subcritical, supercritical, or mixed flow regime) is specified on the Steady Flow Analysis window of the user interface. Subcritical profiles computed by the program are constrained to critical depth or above, and supercritical profiles are constrained to critical depth or below. In cases where the flow regime will pass from subcritical to supercritical, or supercritical to subcritical, the program should be run in a mixed flow regime mode. For a detailed discussion of mixed flow regime calculations, see Chapter 4 of this manual.

### Boundary Conditions

Boundary conditions are necessary to establish the starting water surface at the ends of the river system (upstream and downstream). A starting water surface is necessary in order for the program to begin the calculations. In a subcritical flow regime, boundary conditions are only necessary at the downstream ends of the river system. If a supercritical flow regime is going to be calculated, boundary conditions are only necessary at the upstream ends of the river system. If a mixed flow regime calculation is going to be made, then boundary conditions must be entered at all ends of the river system.

The boundary conditions editor contains a table listing every reach. Each reach has an upstream and a downstream boundary condition. Connections to junctions are considered internal boundary conditions. Internal boundary conditions are automatically listed in the table, based on how the river system was defined in the geometric data editor. The user is only required to enter the necessary external boundary conditions. There are four types of boundary conditions available to the user:

**Known Water Surface Elevations** - For this boundary condition the user must enter a known water surface elevation for each of the profiles to be computed.

**Critical Depth** - When this type of boundary condition is selected, the user is not required to enter any further information. The program will calculate critical depth for each of the profiles and use that as the boundary condition.

**Normal Depth** - For this type of boundary condition, the user is required to enter an energy slope that will be used in calculating normal depth (using Manning's equation) at that location. A normal depth will be calculated for each profile based on the user entered slope. In general, the energy slope can be approximated by using the average slope of the channel or the average slope of the water surface in the vicinity of the cross section.

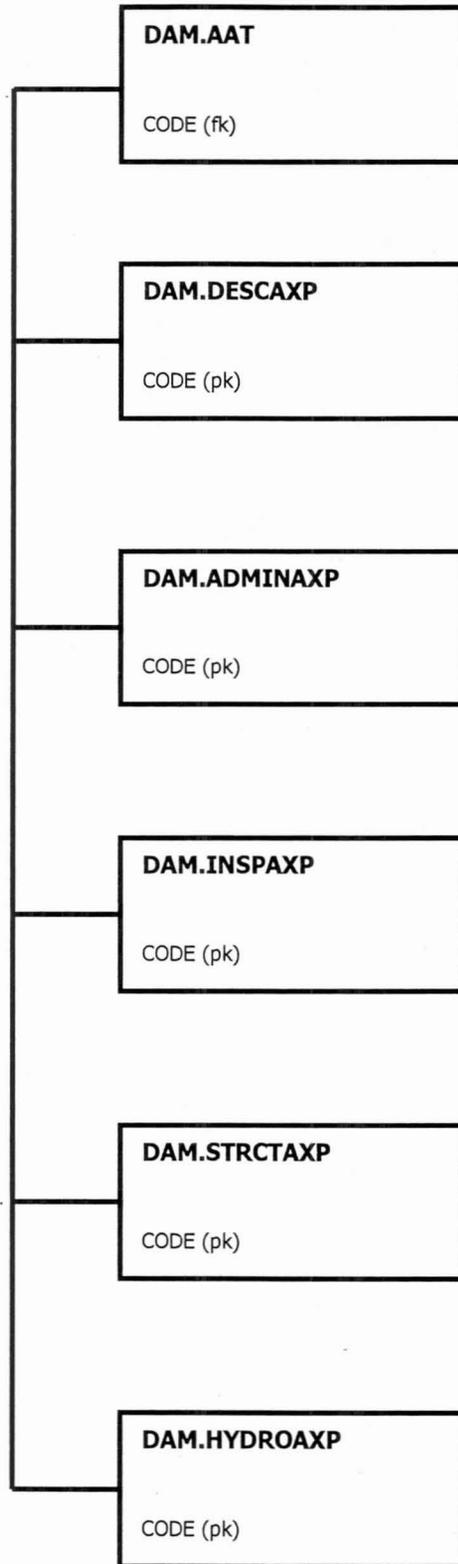
**Rating Curve** - When this type of boundary condition is selected, a pop up window appears allowing the user to enter an elevation versus flow rating curve. For each profile, the elevation is interpolated from the rating curve given the flow, using linear interpolation between the user entered points.

Whenever the water surface elevations at the boundaries of the study are unknown; and a user defined water surface is required at the boundary to start the calculations; the user must either estimate the water surface, or select normal depth or critical depth. Using an estimated water surface will incorporate an error in the water surface profile in the vicinity of the boundary condition. If it is important to have accurate answers at cross sections near the boundary condition, additional cross sections should be added. If a subcritical profile is being computed, then additional cross sections need only be added below the downstream boundaries. If a supercritical profile is being computed, then additional cross sections should be added upstream of the relevant upstream boundaries. If a mixed flow regime profile is being computed, then cross sections should be added upstream and downstream of all the relevant boundaries. In order to test whether the added cross sections are sufficient for a particular boundary condition, the user should try several different starting elevations at the boundary condition, for the same discharge. If the water surface profile converges to the same answer, by the time the computations get to the cross sections that are in the study area, then enough sections have been added, and the boundary condition is not effecting the answers in the study area.

## Discharge Information

Discharge information is required at each cross section in order to compute the water surface profile. Discharge data are entered from upstream to downstream for each reach. At least one flow value must be entered for each reach in the river system. Once a flow value is entered at the upstream end of a reach, it is assumed that the flow remains constant until another flow value is encountered with the same reach. The flow rate can be changed at any cross section within a reach. However, the flow rate can not be changed in the middle of a bridge, culvert, or stream junction. Flow data must be entered for the total number of profiles that are requested to be computed.

# STRUCTURE DATA SCHEME: DE-NORMALIZE FORM



This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## CHAPTER 4

# Overview of Optional Capabilities

HEC-RAS has numerous optional capabilities that allow the user to model unique situations. These capabilities include: multiple profile analysis; multiple plan analysis; optional friction loss equations; cross section interpolation; mixed flow regime calculations; modeling stream junctions; and flow distribution calculations.

### Contents

- Multiple Profile Analysis
- Multiple Plan Analysis
- Optional Friction Loss Equations
- Cross Section Interpolation
- Mixed Flow Regime Calculations
- Modeling Stream Junctions
- Flow Distribution Calculations

## Multiple Profile Analysis

HEC-RAS can compute up to 15 profiles, for the same geometric data, within a single execution of the steady flow computations. The number of profiles to be computed is defined as part of the steady flow data. When more than one profile is requested, the user must ensure that flow data and boundary conditions are established for each profile. Once a multiple profile computation is made, the user can view output, in a graphical and tabular mode, for any single profile or combination of profiles.

## Multiple Plan Analysis

The HEC-RAS system has the ability to compute a series of water surface profiles for a number of different characterizations (plans) of the river system. Modifications can be made to the geometry and/or flow data, and then saved in separate files. Plans are then formulated by selecting a particular geometry file and a particular flow file. The multiple plan option is useful when, for example, a comparison of existing conditions and future channel modifications are to be analyzed. Channel modifications can consist of any change in the geometric data, such as: the addition of a bridge or culvert; channel improvements; the addition of levees; changes in  $n$  values due to development or changes in vegetation; etc. The multiple plan option can also be used to perform a design of a specific geometric feature. For example, if you were sizing a bridge opening, a separate geometry file could be developed for a base condition (no bridge), and then separate geometry files could be developed for each possible bridge configuration. A plan would then consist of selecting a flow file and one of the geometry files. Computations are performed for each plan individually. Once the computations are performed for all the plans, the user can then view output in a graphical and tabular mode for any single plan or combination of plans.

## Optional Friction Loss Equations

The friction loss between adjacent cross sections is computed as the product of the representative rate of friction loss (friction slope) and the weighted-average reach length. The program allows the user to select from the following previously defined friction loss equations:

- Average Conveyance (Equation 2-13)
- Average Friction Slope (Equation 2-14)
- Geometric Mean Friction Slope (Equation 2-15)
- Harmonic Mean Friction Slope (Equation 2-16)

Any of the above friction loss equations will produce satisfactory estimates provided that reach lengths are not too long. The advantage sought in alternative friction loss formulations is to be able to maximize reach lengths without sacrificing profile accuracy.

Equation 2-13, the average conveyance equation, is the friction loss formulation that has been set as the default method within HEC-RAS. This equation is viewed as giving the best overall results for a range of profile types (M1, M2, etc). Research (Reed and Wolfkill, 1976) indicates that Equation 2-14 is the most suitable for M1 profiles. (Suitability as indicated by Reed and Wolfkill is the most accurate determination of a known profile with the least number of cross sections.) Equation 2-15 is the standard friction loss formulation used in the FHWA/USGS step-backwater program WSPRO (Sherman, 1990). Equation 2-16 has been shown by Reed and Wolfkill to be the most suitable for M2 profiles.

Another feature of this option is the capability of the program to select the most appropriate of the preceding four equations on a cross section by cross section basis depending on flow conditions (e.g., M1, S1, etc.) within the reach. At present, however, the criteria for this automated method (shown in Table 4.1), does not select the best equation for friction loss analysis in reaches with significant lateral expansion, such as the reach below a contracted bridge opening.

The selection of friction loss equations is accomplished from the Options menu on the Steady Flow Analysis window.

**Table 4.1**  
**Criteria Utilized to Select Friction Equation**

<b>Profile Type</b>	<b>Is friction slope at current cross section greater than friction slope at preceding cross section?</b>	<b>Equation Used</b>
Subcritical (M1, S1)	Yes	Average Friction Slope (2-14)
Subcritical (M2)	No	Harmonic Mean (2-16)
Supercritical (S2)	Yes	Average Friction Slope (2-14)
Supercritical (M3, S3)	No	Geometric Mean (2-15)

## Cross Section Interpolation

Occasionally it is necessary to supplement surveyed cross section data by interpolating cross sections between two surveyed sections. Interpolated cross sections are often required when the change in velocity head is too large to accurately determine the change in the energy gradient. An adequate depiction of the change in energy gradient is necessary to accurately model friction losses as well as contraction and expansion losses. When cross sections are spaced too far apart, the program may end up defaulting to critical depth.

The HEC-RAS program has the ability to generate cross sections by interpolating the geometry between two user entered cross sections. The geometric interpolation routines in HEC-RAS are based on a string model, as shown in Figure 4.1

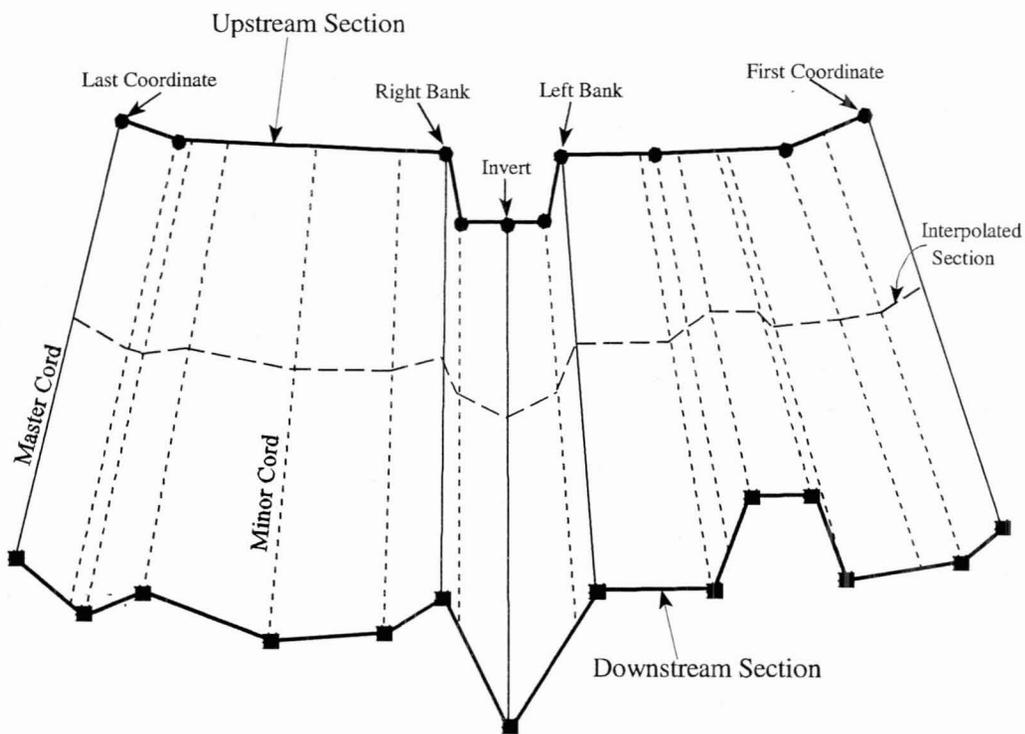


Figure 4.1 String Model for Geometric Cross Section Interpolation

The string model in HEC-RAS consists of cords that connect the coordinates of the upstream and downstream cross sections. The cords are classified as "Master Cords" and "Minor Cords." The master cords are defined explicitly as to the number and starting and ending location of each cord. The default number of master cords is five. The five default master cords are based on the following location criteria:

1. First coordinate of the cross section (May be equal to left bank).
2. Left bank of main channel (Required to be a master cord).
3. Minimum elevation point in the main channel.
4. Right bank of main channel (Required to be a master cord).
5. Last coordinate of the cross section (May be equal to right bank).

The interpolation routines are not restricted to a set number of master cords. At a minimum, there must be two master cords, but there is no maximum. Additional master cords can be added by the user. This is explained in Chapter 6 of the HEC-RAS user's manual, under cross section interpolation.

The minor cords are generated automatically by the interpolation routines. A minor cord is generated by taking an existing coordinate in either the upstream or downstream section and establishing a corresponding coordinate at the opposite cross section by either matching an existing coordinate or interpolating one. The station value at the opposite cross section is determined by computing the proportional distance that the known coordinate represents between master chords, and then applying the proportion to the distance between master cords of the opposite section. The number of minor cords will be equal to the sum of all the coordinates in the upstream and downstream sections minus the number of master cords.

Once all the minor cords are computed, the routines can then interpolate any number of sections between the two known cross sections. Interpolation is accomplished by linearly interpolating between the elevations at the ends of a cord. Interpolated points are generated at all of the minor and master cords. The elevation of a particular point is computed by distance weighting, which is based on how far the interpolated cross section is from the user known cross sections.

The interpolation routines will also interpolate roughness coefficients (Manning's  $n$ ). Interpolated cross section roughness is based on a string model similar to the one used for geometry. Cords are used to connect the breaks in roughness coefficients of the upstream and downstream sections. The cords are also classified as master and minor cords. The default number of master cords is set to four, and are located based on the following criteria:

1. First coordinate of the cross section (may be equal to left bank).
2. Left bank of main channel.
3. Right bank of main channel.
4. Last coordinate of the cross section (may be equal to right bank).

When either of the two cross sections has more than three  $n$  values, additional minor cords are added at all other  $n$  value break points. Interpolation of roughness coefficients is then accomplished in the same manner as the geometry interpolation.

In addition to the Manning's  $n$  values, the following information is interpolated automatically for each generated cross section: downstream reach lengths; main channel bank stations; contraction and expansion coefficients; normal ineffective flow areas; levees; and normal blocked obstructions. Ineffective flow areas, levees, and blocked obstructions are only interpolated if both of the user entered cross sections have these features turned on.

Cross section interpolation is accomplished from the user interface. To learn how to perform the interpolation, review the section on interpolating in Chapter 6 of the HEC-RAS user's manual.

## Mixed Flow Regime Calculations

The HEC-RAS software has the ability to perform subcritical, supercritical, or mixed flow regime calculations. The Specific Force equation is used in HEC-RAS to determine which flow regime is controlling, as well as locating any hydraulic jumps. The equation for Specific Force is derived from the momentum equation (Equation 2-29). When applying the momentum equation to a very short reach of river, the external force of friction and the force due to the weight of water are very small, and can be ignored. The momentum equation then reduces to the following equation:

$$\frac{Q^2 \beta_1}{g A_1} + A_1 \bar{Y}_1 = \frac{Q^2 \beta_2}{g A_2} + A_2 \bar{Y}_2 \quad (4-1)$$

where:  $Q$  = Discharge at each section  
 $\beta$  = Momentum coefficient (similar to alpha)  
 $A$  = Total flow area  
 $\bar{Y}$  = Depth from the water surface to centroid of the area  
 $g$  = Gravitational acceleration

The two sides of the equation are analogous, and may be expressed for any channel section as a general function:

$$SF = \frac{Q^2\beta}{gA} + A\bar{Y} \quad (4-2)$$

The generalized function (equation 4-2) consists of two terms. The first term is the momentum of the flow passing through the channel cross section per unit time. This portion of the equation is considered the dynamic component. The second term represents the momentum of the static component, which is the force exerted by the hydrostatic pressure of the water. Both terms are essentially a force per unit weight of water. The sum of the two terms is called the Specific Force (Chow, 1959).

When the specific force equation is applied to natural channels, it is written in the following manner:

$$SF = \frac{Q^2\beta}{gA_m} + A_r\bar{Y} \quad (4-3)$$

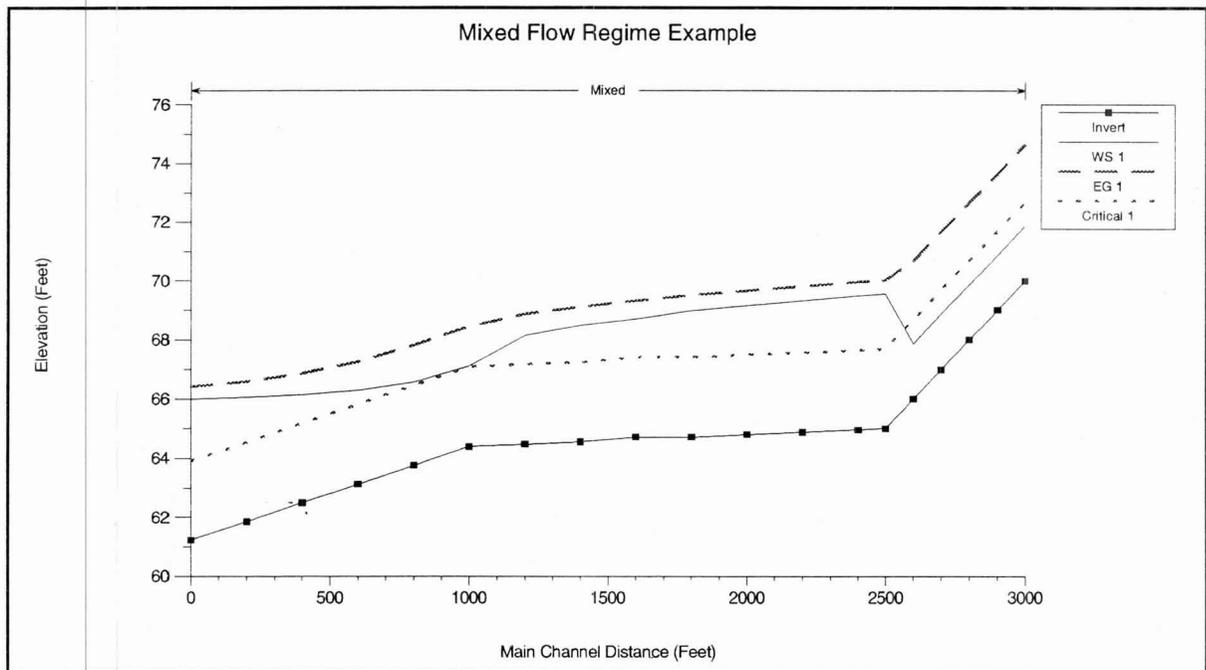
where:  $A_m$  = Flow area in which there is motion  
 $A_r$  = Total flow area, including ineffective flow areas

The mixed flow regime calculations in HEC-RAS are performed as follows:

1. First, a subcritical water surface profile is computed starting from a known downstream boundary condition. During the subcritical calculations, all locations where the program defaults to critical depth are flagged for further analysis.
2. Next the program begins a supercritical profile calculation starting upstream. The program starts with a user specified upstream boundary condition. If the boundary condition is supercritical, the program checks to see if it has a greater specific force than the previously computed subcritical water surface at this location. If the supercritical boundary condition has a greater specific force, then it is assumed to control, and the program will begin calculating a supercritical profile from this section. If the subcritical answer has a greater specific force, then the program begins searching downstream to find a location where the program defaulted to critical depth in the subcritical run. When a critical depth is located, the program uses it as a boundary condition to begin a supercritical profile calculation.

3. The program calculates a supercritical profile in the downstream direction until it reaches a cross section that has both a valid subcritical and a supercritical answer. When this occurs, the program calculates the specific force of both computed water surface elevations. Whichever answer has the greater specific force is considered to be the correct solution. If the supercritical answer has a greater specific force, the program continues making supercritical calculations in the downstream direction and comparing the specific force of the two solutions. When the program reaches a cross section whose subcritical answer has a greater specific force than the supercritical answer, the program assumes that a hydraulic jump occurred between that section and the previous cross section.
4. The program then goes to the next downstream location that has a critical depth answer and continues the process.

An example mixed flow profile, from HEC-RAS, is shown in Figure 4.2. This example was adapted from problem 9-8, page 245, in Chow's "Open Channel Hydraulics" (Chow, 1959).



**Figure 4.2 Example Mixed Flow Regime Profile from HEC-RAS**

As shown in Figure 4.2, the flow regime transitions from supercritical to subcritical just before the first break in slope.

## Modeling Stream Junctions

Stream junctions can be modeled in two different ways within HEC-RAS. The default method is an energy based solution. This method solves for water surfaces across the junction by performing standard step backwater and forewater calculations through the junction. The method does not account for the angle of any of the tributary flows. Because most streams are highly subcritical flow, the influence of the tributary flow angle is often insignificant. If the angle of the tributary plays an important role in influencing the water surface around the junction, then the user should switch to the alternative method available in HEC-RAS, which is a momentum based method. The momentum based method is a one dimensional formulation of the momentum equation, but the angles of the tributaries are used to evaluate the forces associated with the tributary flows. There are six possible flow conditions that HEC-RAS can handle at a junction:

1. Subcritical flow - flow combining
2. Subcritical flow - flow split
3. Supercritical flow - flow combining
4. Supercritical flow - flow split
5. Mixed flow regime - flow combining
6. Mixed flow regime - flow split

The most common situations are the subcritical flow cases (1) and (2). The following is a discussion of how the energy method and the momentum based method are applied to these six flow cases.

### Energy Based Junction Method

The energy based method solves for water surfaces across the junction by performing standard step calculations with the one dimensional energy equation (Equation 2-1). Each of the six cases are discussed individually.

#### Case 1: Subcritical Flow - Flow Combining.

An example junction with flow combining is shown in Figure 4.3. In this case, subcritical flow calculations are performed up to the most upstream section of reach 3. From here, backwater calculations are performed separately across the junction for each of the two upstream reaches. The water surface at reach 1, station 4.0 is calculated by performing a balance of energy from station 3.0 to 4.0. Friction losses are based on the length from station 4.0 to 3.0 and the average friction slope between the two sections. Contraction or expansion losses are also evaluated across the junction. The water surface for the downstream end of reach 2 is calculated in the same manner. The energy equation from station 3.0 to 4.0 is written as follows:

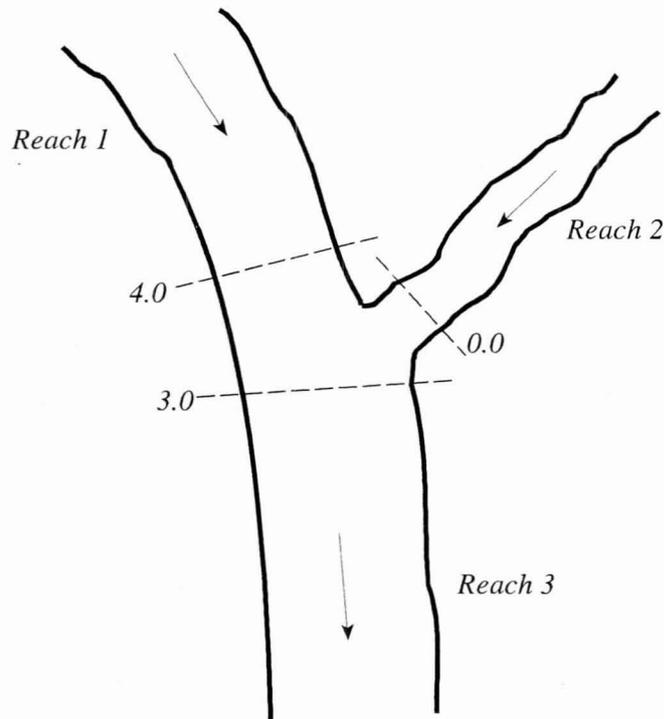
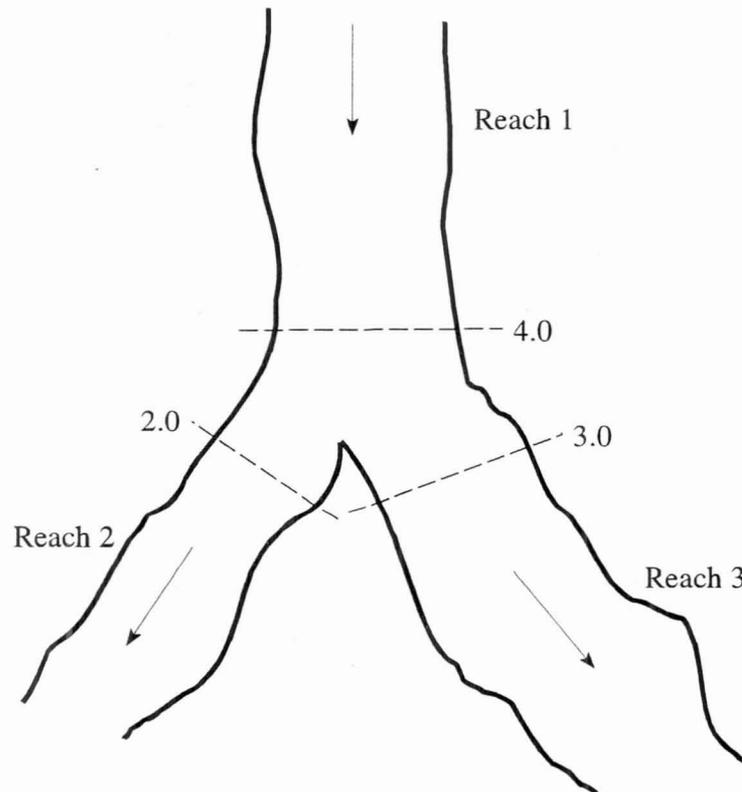


Figure 4.3 Example Junction with Flow Combining

$$WS_4 + \frac{\alpha_4 V_4^2}{2g} = WS_3 + \frac{\alpha_3 V_3^2}{2g} + L_{4-3} \bar{S}_{f_{4-3}} + C \left| \frac{\alpha_4 V_4^2}{2g} - \frac{\alpha_3 V_3^2}{2g} \right| \quad (4-4)$$

Case 2: Subcritical Flow - Flow Split

For this case, a subcritical water surface profile is calculated for both reaches 2 and 3, up to river stations 2.0 and 3.0 (see Figure 4.4). The program then calculates the specific force (momentum) at the two locations. The cross section with the greater specific force is used as the downstream boundary for calculating the water surface across the junction at river station 4.0. For example, if cross section 3.0 had a greater specific force than section 2.0, the program will compute a backwater profile from station 3.0 to station 4.0 in order to get the water surface at 4.0.



**Figure 4.4 Example Flow Split at a Junction**

Currently the HEC-RAS program assumes that the user has entered the correct flow for each of the three reaches. In general, the amount of flow going to reach 2 and reach 3 is unknown. In order to obtain the correct flow distribution at the flow split, the user must perform a trial and error process. This procedure involves the following:

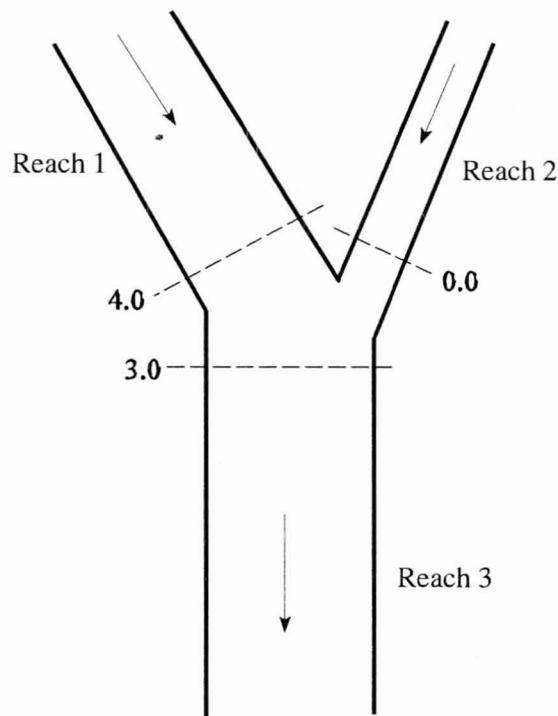
1. Assume an initial flow split at the junction.
2. Run the program in order to get energies and water surfaces at all the locations around the junction.
3. Compare the energy at stations 2.0 and 3.0. If they differ by a significant magnitude, then the flow distribution is incorrect. Re-distribute the flow by putting more flow into the reach that had the lower energy.
4. Run the program again and compare the energies. If the energy at stations 2.0 and 3.0 still differ significantly, then re-distribute the flow again.

5. Keep doing this until the energies at stations 2.0 and 3.0 are within a reasonable tolerance.

Ideally it would be better to perform a backwater from station 2.0 to 4.0 and also from station 3.0 to 4.0, and then compare the two computed energies at the same location. Since the program only computes one energy at station 4.0, the user must compare the energies at the downstream cross sections. This procedure assumes that the cross sections around the junction are spaced closely together.

Case 3: Supercritical Flow - Flow Combining

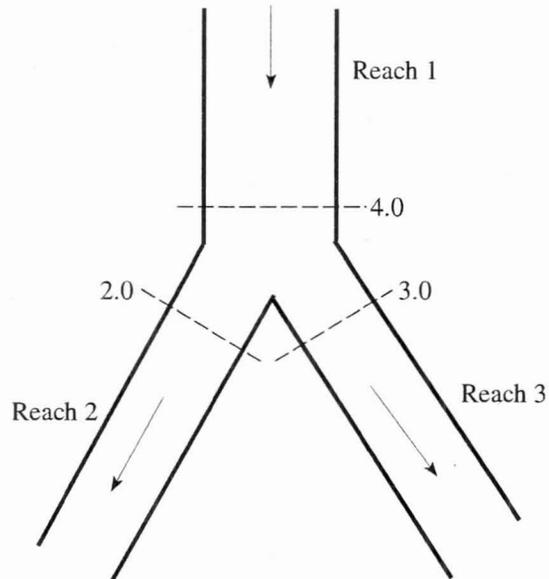
In this case, a supercritical water surface profile is calculated for all of reach 1 and 2, down to stations 4.0 and 0.0 (see Figure 4.5). The program calculates the specific force at stations 4.0 and 0.0, and then takes the stream with the larger specific force as the controlling stream. A supercritical forewater calculation is made from the controlling upstream section down to station 3.0.



**Figure 4.5 Example Supercritical Flow Combine**

Case 4: Supercritical Flow - Flow Split

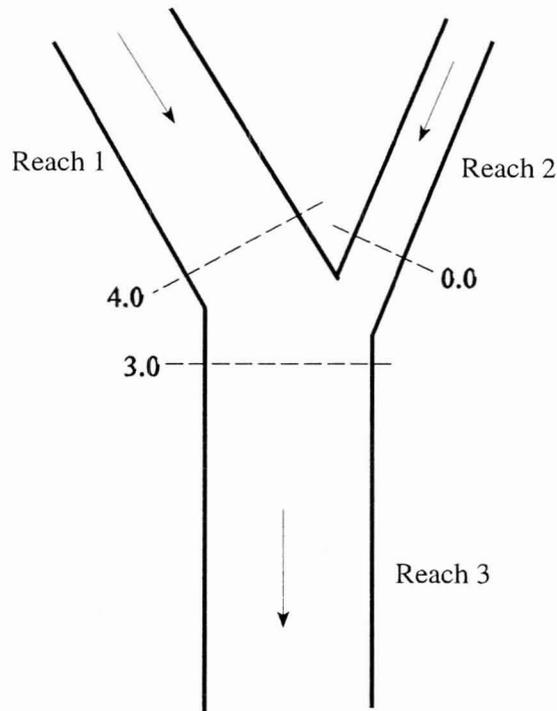
In this case a supercritical water surface profile is calculated down to station 4.0 of reach 1 (see Figure 4.6). The water surfaces at sections 3.0 and 2.0 are calculated by performing separate forewater calculations from station 4.0 to station 2.0, and then from station 4.0 to 3.0.



**Figure 4.6 Example Supercritical Flow Split**

Case 5: Mixed Flow Regime - Flow Combining

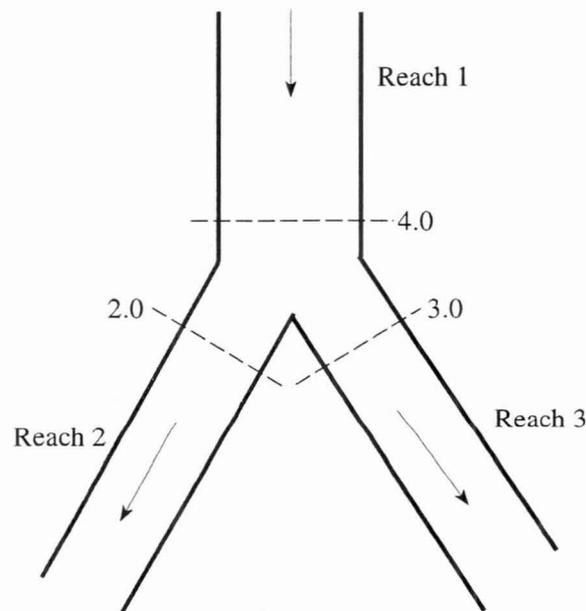
In the case of mixed flow, a subcritical profile calculation is made through the junction as described previously (see Figure 4.7). If the flow remains subcritical during the supercritical flow calculations, then the subcritical answers are assumed to be correct. If, however, the flow at either or both of the cross sections upstream of the junction is found to have supercritical flow controlling, then the junction must be re-calculated. When one or more of the upstream sections is supercritical, the program will calculate the specific force of all the upstream sections. If the supercritical sections have a greater specific force than the subcritical sections, then the program assumes that supercritical flow will control. The program then makes a forewater calculation from the upstream section with the greatest specific force (let's say section 4.0) to the downstream section (section 3.0).



**Figure 4.7 Example of Mixed Flow Regime at a Flow Combine**

The program next computes the specific force of both the subcritical and supercritical answers at section 3.0. If the supercritical answer at section 3.0 has a lower specific force than the previously computed subcritical answer, then the program uses the subcritical answer and assumes that a hydraulic jump occurred at the junction. If the supercritical answer has a greater specific force, then the program continues downstream with forewater calculations until a hydraulic jump is encountered. Also, any upstream reach that is subcritical must be recomputed. For example, if reach two is subcritical, the water surface at section 0.0 was based on a backwater calculation from section 3.0 to 0.0. If section 3.0 is found to be supercritical, the water surface at section 0.0 is set to critical depth, and backwater calculations are performed again for reach 2. If there are any reaches above reach 2 that are affected by this change, then they are also recomputed.

## Case 6: Mixed Flow Regime - Split Flow



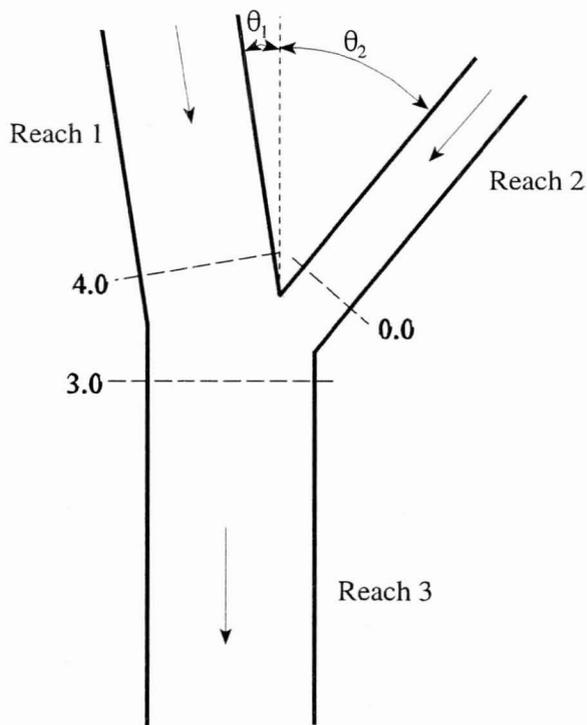
**Figure 4.8 Example of Mixed Flow Regime at a Flow Split**

In this case, a subcritical profile through the junction is computed as described previously. If during the supercritical flow pass it is found that section 4.0 (Figure 4.8) is actually supercritical, the program will perform forewater calculations across the junction. The program will make a forewater calculation from section 4.0 to 2.0 and then from 4.0 to 3.0. The program will then calculate the specific force of the subcritical and supercritical answers at sections 2.0 and 3.0. Which ever answer has the greater specific force is assumed to be correct for each location. Normal mixed flow regime calculations continue on downstream from the junction.

### Momentum Based Junction Method

The user can choose a momentum based method to solve the junction problem instead of the default energy based method. As described previously, there are six possible flow conditions at the junction. The momentum based method uses the same logic as the energy based method for solving the junction problem. The only difference is that the momentum based method solves for the water surfaces across the junction with the momentum equation. Also, the momentum equation is formulated such that it can take into account the angles

at which reaches are coming into or leaving the junction. To use the momentum based method, the user must supply the angle for any reach whose flow lines are not parallel to the main stem's flow lines. An example of a flow combining junction is shown below in Figure 4.9. In this example, angles for both reaches 1 and 2 could be entered. Each angle is taken from a line that is perpendicular to cross section 3.0 of reach 3.



**Figure 4.9** Example Geometry for Applying the Momentum Equation to a Flow Combining Junction

For subcritical flow, the water surface is computed up to section 3.0 of reach 3 by normal standard step backwater calculations. If the momentum equation is selected, the program solves for the water surfaces at sections 4.0 and 0.0 by performing a momentum balance across the junction. The momentum balance is written to only evaluate the forces in the X direction (the direction of flow based on cross section 3.0 of reach 3). For this example the equation is as follows:

$$SF_3 = SF_4 \cos(\theta_1) - F_{f_{4-3}} + W_{x_{4-3}} + SF_0 \cos(\theta_2) - F_{f_{0-3}} + W_{x_{0-3}} \quad (4-5)$$

where:  $SF$  = Specific Force (as define in Equation 4.3)

The frictional and the weight forces are computed in two segments. For example, the friction and weight forces between sections 4.0 and 3.0 are based on the assumption that the centroid of the junction is half the distance between the two sections. The first portion of the forces are computed from section 4.0 to the centroid of the junction, utilizing the area at cross section 4.0. The second portion of the forces are computed from the centroid of the junction to section 3.0, using a flow weighted area at section 3.0. The equations to compute the friction and weight forces for this example are as follows:

Forces due to friction:

$$F_{f_{4-3}} = \bar{S}_{f_{4-3}} \frac{L_{4-3}}{2} A_4 \cos(\theta_1) + \bar{S}_{f_{4-3}} \frac{L_{4-3}}{2} A_3 \frac{Q_4}{Q_3} \quad (4-6)$$

$$F_{f_{0-3}} = \bar{S}_{f_{0-3}} \frac{L_{0-3}}{2} A_0 \cos(\theta_2) + \bar{S}_{f_{0-3}} \frac{L_{0-3}}{2} A_3 \frac{Q_0}{Q_3} \quad (4-7)$$

Forces due to weight of water:

$$W_{x_{4-3}} = S_{o_{4-3}} \frac{L_{4-3}}{2} A_4 \cos(\theta_1) + S_{o_{4-3}} \frac{L_{4-3}}{2} A_3 \frac{Q_4}{Q_3} \quad (4-8)$$

$$W_{x_{0-3}} = S_{o_{0-3}} \frac{L_{0-3}}{2} A_0 \cos(\theta_2) + S_{o_{0-3}} \frac{L_{0-3}}{2} A_3 \frac{Q_0}{Q_3} \quad (4-9)$$

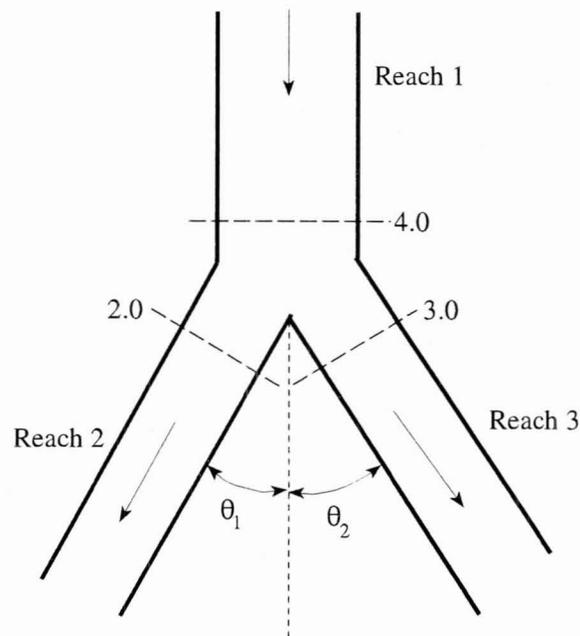
To solve the momentum balance equation (Equation 4-5) for this example, the following assumptions are made:

1. The water surface elevations at section 4.0 and 0.0 are solved simultaneously, and are assumed to be equal to each other. This is a rough approximation, but it is necessary in order to solve Equation 4-5. Because of this assumption, the cross sections around the junction should be closely spaced in order to minimize the error associated with this assumption.
2. The area used at section 3.0 for friction and weight forces is distributed between the upper two reaches by using a flow weighting. This is necessary in order not to double account for the flow volume and frictional area.

When evaluating supercritical flow at this type of junction (Figure 4.9), the water surface elevations at sections 4.0 and 0.0 are computed from forewater calculations, and therefore the water surface elevations at section 3.0 can be solved directly from equation 4-5.

For mixed flow regime computations, the solution approach is the same as the energy based method, except the momentum equation is used to solve for the water surfaces across the junction.

An example of applying the momentum equation to a flow split is shown in Figure 4.10 below:



**Figure 4.10 Example Geometry for Applying the Momentum Equation to a Flow Split Type of Junction**

For the flow split shown in Figure 4.10, the momentum equation is written as follows:

$$SF_4 = SF_2 \cos(\theta_1) + F_{f_{4-2}} - W_{x_{4-2}} + SF_3 \cos(\theta_2) + F_{f_{4-3}} - W_{x_{4-3}} \quad (4-10)$$

For subcritical flow, the water surface elevation is known at sections 2.0 and 3.0, and the water surface elevation at section 4.0 can be found by solving Equation 4-10. For supercritical flow, the water surface is known at section 4.0 only, and, therefore, the water surface elevations at sections 3.0 and 2.0 must be solved simultaneously. In order to solve Equation 4-10 for supercritical flow, it is assumed that the water surface elevations at sections 2.0 and 3.0 are equal.

Mixed flow regime computations for a flow split are handled in the same manner as the energy based solution, except the momentum equation (Equation 4-10) is used to solve for the water surface elevations across the junction.

## Flow Distribution Calculations

The general cross section output shows the distribution of flow in three subdivisions of the cross section: left overbank, main channel, and the right overbank. Additional output showing the distribution of flow for multiple subdivisions of the left and right overbanks, as well as the main channel, can be requested by the user.

The flow distribution output can be obtained by first defining the locations that the user would like to have this type of output. The user can either select specific locations or all locations in the model. Next, the number of slices for the flow distribution computations must be defined for the left overbank, main channel, and the right overbank. The user can define up to 45 total slices. Each flow element (left overbank, main channel, and right overbank) must have at least one slice. The user can change the number of slices used at each of the cross sections. The final step is to perform the normal profile calculations. During the computations, at each cross section where flow distribution is requested, the program will calculate the flow (discharge), area, wetted perimeter, percentage of conveyance, hydraulic depth, and average velocity for each of the user defined slices. For further details on how to request and view flow distribution output, see Chapters 7 and 8 of the HEC-RAS User's manual.

The computations for the flow distribution are performed after the program has calculated a water surface elevation and energy by the normal methodology described in Chapter 2 of this manual. The flow distribution computations are performed as follows:

1. First, the water surface is computed in the normal manner of using the three flow subdivisions (left overbank, main channel, and right overbank), and balancing the energy equation.

2. Once a water surface elevation is computed, the program slices the cross section into the user defined flow distribution slices, and then computes an area, wetted perimeter, and hydraulic depth (area over top width) for each slice.
3. Using the originally computed energy slope ( $S_f$ ), the cross section Manning's n values, the computed area and wetted perimeter for each slice, and Manning's equation, the program computes the conveyance and percentage of discharge for each of the slices.
4. The program sums up the computed conveyance for each of the slices. In general, the slice computed conveyance will not be the same as the originally computed conveyance (from the traditional methods for conveyance subdivision described in Chapter 2 of this manual). Normally, as a cross section is subdivided further and further, the computed conveyance, for a given water surface elevation, will increase.
5. In order to correct for the difference in computed conveyances, the program computes a ratio of the original total conveyance (from the normal calculations) divided by the total slice conveyance. This ratio is then applied to each of the slices, in order to achieve the same conveyance as was originally computed.
6. The final step is to compute an average velocity for each slice. The average velocity is computed by taking the discharge and dividing by the area for each of the user defined slices.

An example of the flow distribution output is shown in Figure 4.11.

Flow Distribution Output							
File Type Options Help							
River: Critical Cr.		Profile: 100 yr					
Reach: Upper Reach		Riv Sta: 12					
Plan: Exst Cond River Critical Cr. Reach Upper Reach Riv Sta: 12 Profile: 100 yr							
Left Sta	Right Sta	Flow	Area	W.P.	% Conv.	Hydr D.	Velocity
(ft)	(ft)	(cfs)	(sq ft)	(ft)		(ft)	(ft/s)
0.00	72.00	276.41	125.23	50.40	3.07	2.50	2.21
72.00	144.00	925.60	298.40	72.08	10.28	4.14	3.10
144.00	216.00	803.82	274.13	72.05	8.93	3.81	2.93
216.00	288.00	278.66	145.92	72.97	3.10	2.03	1.91
288.00	360.00	560.07	222.03	73.14	6.22	3.08	2.52
360.00	432.00	748.93	262.71	72.03	8.32	3.65	2.85
432.00	504.00	578.88	225.07	72.01	6.43	3.13	2.57
504.00	576.00	463.56	196.97	72.00	5.15	2.74	2.35
576.00	648.00	527.69	212.91	72.01	5.86	2.96	2.48
648.00	720.00	361.40	169.74	72.10	4.02	2.36	2.13
720.00 LB	724.50	40.57	10.24	5.67	0.45	2.28	3.96
724.50	729.00	190.26	26.28	5.89	2.11	5.84	7.24
729.00	733.50	448.27	41.88	5.22	4.98	9.31	10.70
Errors, Warnings and Notes							
Warning - The velocity head has changed by more than 0.5 ft (0.15 m). This may indicate the need for additional cross sections.							
Warning - The energy loss was greater than 1.0 ft (0.3 m) between the current and previous cross section. This may indicate the need for additional cross sections.							
Flow in subsection defined by left and right stations							

Figure 4.11 Example Output for the Flow Distribution Option

In general, the results of the flow distribution computations should be used cautiously. Specifically, the velocities and percentages of discharge are based on the results of a one-dimensional hydraulic model. A true velocity and flow distribution varies vertically as well as horizontally. To achieve such detail, the user would need to use a three-dimensional hydraulic model, or go out and measure the flow distribution in the field. While the results for the flow distribution, provided by HEC-RAS, are better than the standard three subdivisions (left overbank, main channel, and right overbank) provided by the model, the values are still based on average estimates of the one-dimensional results. Also, the results obtained from the flow distribution option can vary with the number of slices used for the computations. In general, it is better to use as few slices as possible.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## CHAPTER 5

# Modeling Bridges

HEC-RAS computes energy losses caused by structures such as bridges and culverts in three parts. One part consists of losses that occur in the reach immediately downstream from the structure, where an expansion of flow generally takes place. The second part is the losses at the structure itself, which can be modeled with several different methods. The third part consists of losses that occur in the reach immediately upstream of the structure, where the flow is generally contracting to get through the opening. This chapter discusses how bridges are modeled using HEC-RAS. Discussions include: general modeling guidelines; hydraulic computations through the bridge; selecting a bridge modeling approach; and unique bridge problems and suggested approaches.

### Contents

- General Modeling Guidelines
- Hydraulic Computations Through the Bridge
- Selecting a Bridge Modeling Approach
- Unique Bridge Problems and Suggested Approaches

## General Modeling Guidelines

Considerations for modeling the geometry of a reach of river in the vicinity of a bridge are essentially the same for any of the available bridge modeling approaches within HEC-RAS. Modeling guidelines are provided in this section for locating cross sections; defining ineffective flow areas; and evaluating contraction and expansion losses around bridges.

### Cross Section Locations

The bridge routines utilize four user-defined cross sections in the computations of energy losses due to the structure. During the hydraulic computations, the program automatically formulates two additional cross sections inside of the bridge structure. A plan view of the basic cross section layout is shown in Figure 5.1. The cross sections in Figure 5.1 are labeled as river stations 1, 2, 3, and 4 for the purpose of discussion within this chapter. Whenever the user is performing water surface profile computations through a bridge (or any other hydraulic structure), additional cross sections should always be included both downstream and upstream of the bridge. This will prevent any user entered boundary conditions from effecting the hydraulic results through the bridge.

**Cross section 1** is located sufficiently downstream from the structure so that the flow is not affected by the structure (i.e., the flow has fully expanded). This distance (the expansion reach length,  $L_e$ ) should generally be determined by field investigation during high flows. If field investigation is not possible, then there are several possible criterion for locating the downstream section. The USGS has established a criteria for locating cross section 1 a distance downstream from the bridge equal to one times the bridge opening width (the distance between points B and C on Figure 5.1). Traditionally, the Corps of Engineers used a criterion to locate the downstream cross section about four times the average length of the side constriction caused by the structure abutments (the average of the distance from A to B and C to D on Figure 5.1). The expansion distance will vary depending upon the degree of constriction, the shape of the constriction, the magnitude of the flow, and the velocity of the flow.

Recently a detailed study was completed by the Hydrologic Engineering Center entitled "Flow Transitions in Bridge Backwater Analysis" (RD-42, HEC, 1995). The purpose of this study was to provide better guidance to hydraulic engineers performing water surface profile computations through bridges. Specifically the study focused on determining the expansion reach length,  $L_e$ ; the contraction reach length,  $L_c$ ; the expansion energy loss coefficient,  $C_e$ ; and the contraction energy loss coefficient,  $C_c$ . A summary of this research, and the final recommendations, can be found in Appendix B of this document.

The user should not allow the distance between cross section 1 and 2 to become so great that friction losses will not be adequately modeled. If the modeler thinks that the expansion reach will require a long distance, then intermediate cross sections should be placed within the expansion reach in order to adequately model friction losses. The ineffective flow option can be used to limit the effective flow area of the intermediate cross sections in the expansion reach.

**Cross section 2** is located a short distance downstream from the bridge (i.e., commonly placed at the downstream toe of the road embankment). This cross section should represent the effective flow area just outside the bridge.

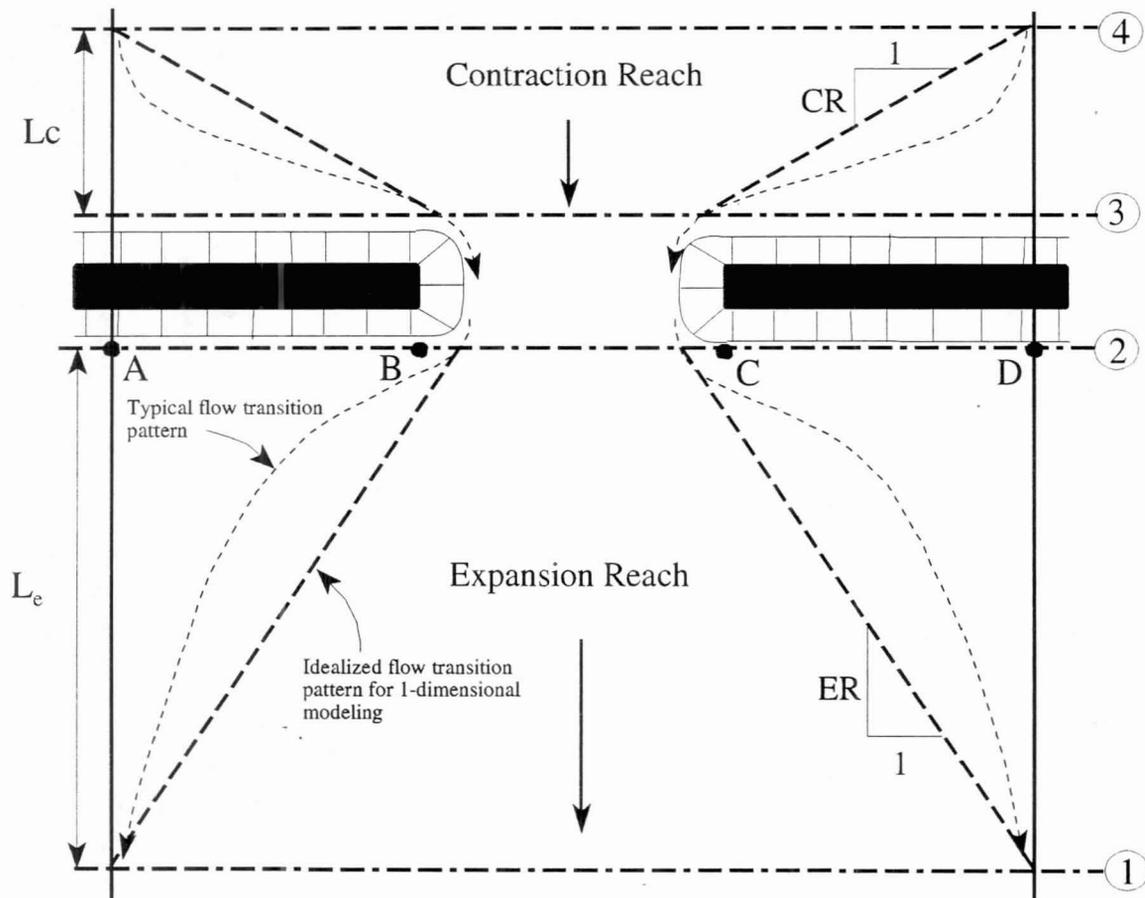


Figure 5.1 Cross Section Locations at a Bridge

**Cross section 3** should be located a short distance upstream from the bridge (commonly placed at the upstream toe of the road embankment). The distance between cross section 3 and the bridge should only reflect the length required for the abrupt acceleration and contraction of the flow that occurs in the immediate area of the opening. Cross section 3 represents the effective flow area just upstream of the bridge. Both cross sections 2 and 3 will have ineffective flow areas to either side of the bridge opening during low flow and pressure flow profiles. In order to model only the effective flow areas at these two sections, the modeler should use the ineffective flow area option at both of these cross sections.

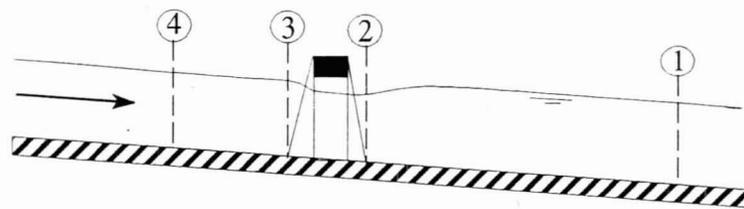
**Cross section 4** is an upstream cross section where the flow lines are approximately parallel and the cross section is fully effective. In general, flow contractions occur over a shorter distance than flow expansions. The distance between cross section 3 and 4 (the contraction reach length,  $L_c$ ) should generally be determined by field investigation during high flows. The USGS has established a criterion for locating cross section 4 a distance upstream from the bridge equal to one times the bridge opening width (the distance between points B and C on Figure 5.1). Traditionally, the Corps of Engineers used a criterion to locate the upstream cross section one times the average length of the side constriction caused by the structure abutments (the average of the distance from A to B and C to D on Figure 5.1). The contraction distance will vary depending upon the degree of constriction, the shape of the constriction, the magnitude of the flow, and the velocity of the flow. As mentioned previously, the detailed study "Flow Transitions in Bridge Backwater Analysis" (RD-42, HEC, 1995) was performed to provide better guidance to hydraulic engineers performing water surface profile computations through bridges. A summary of this research, and the final recommendations, can be found in Appendix B of this document.

During the hydraulic computations, the program automatically formulates two additional cross sections inside of the bridge structure. The geometry inside of the bridge is a combination of the bounding cross sections (sections 2 and 3) and the bridge geometry. The bridge geometry consists of the bridge deck and roadway, sloping abutments if necessary, and any piers that may exist. The user can specify different bridge geometry for the upstream and downstream sides of the structure if necessary. Cross section 2 and the structure information on the downstream side of the bridge are used as the geometry just inside the structure at the downstream end. Cross section 3 and the upstream structure information are used as the bridge geometry just inside the structure at the upstream end.

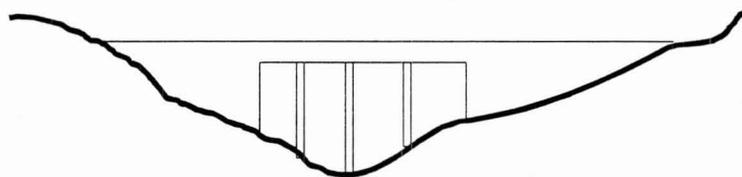
## Defining Ineffective Flow Areas

A basic problem in defining the bridge data is the definition of ineffective flow areas near the bridge structure. Referring to Figure 5-1, the dashed lines represent the effective flow boundary for low flow and pressure flow conditions. Therefore, for cross sections 2 and 3, ineffective flow areas to either side of the bridge opening (along distance AB and CD) should not be included as part of the active flow area for low flow or pressure flow.

The bridge example shown in Figure 5-2 is a typical situation where the bridge spans the entire floodway and its abutments obstruct the natural floodplain. This is a similar situation as was shown in plan view in Figure 5-1. The cross section numbers and locations are the same as those discussed in the "Cross Section Locations" section of this chapter. The problem is to convert the natural ground profile at cross sections 2 and 3 from the cross section shown in part "B" to that shown in part "C" of Figure 5-2. The elimination of the ineffective overbank areas can be accomplished by redefining the geometry at cross sections 2 and 3 or by using the natural ground profile and requesting the program's ineffective area option to eliminate the use of the overbank area (as shown in part C of Figure 5-2). Also, for high flows (flows over topping the bridge deck), the area outside of the main bridge opening may no longer be ineffective, and will need to be included as active flow area. If the modeler chooses to redefine the cross section, a fixed boundary is used at the sides of the cross section to contain the flow, when in fact a solid boundary is not physically there. The use of the ineffective area option is more appropriate and it does not add wetted perimeter to the active flow boundary above the given ground profile.



A. Channel Profile and cross section locations



B. Bridge cross section on natural ground



C. Portion of cross sections 2 &amp; 3 that is ineffective for low flow

### Figure 5.2 Cross Sections Near Bridges

The ineffective area option is used at sections 2 and 3 to keep all the active flow in the area of the bridge opening until the elevations associated with the left and/or right ineffective flow areas are exceeded by the computed water surface elevation. The program allows the stations and controlling elevations of the left and right ineffective flow areas to be specified by the user. Also, the stations of the ineffective flow areas do not have to coincide with stations of the ground profile, the program will interpolate the ground station.

The ineffective flow areas should be set at stations that will adequately describe the active flow area at cross sections 2 and 3. In general, these stations should be placed outside the edges of the bridge opening to allow for the contraction and expansion of flow that occurs in the immediate vicinity of the bridge. On the upstream side of the bridge (section 3) the flow is contracting rapidly. A practical method for placing the stations of the ineffective flow areas is to assume a 1:1 contraction rate in the immediate vicinity of the bridge. In other words, if cross section 3 is 10 feet from the upstream bridge face, the ineffective flow areas should be placed 10 feet away from each side of the bridge opening. On the downstream side of the bridge (section 2), a similar

assumption can be applied. The active flow area on the downstream side of the bridge may be less than, equal to, or greater than the width of the bridge opening. As flow converges into the bridge opening, depending on the abruptness of the abutments, the active flow area may constrict to be less than the bridge opening. As the flow passes through and out of the bridge it begins to expand. Because of this phenomenon, estimating the stationing of the ineffective flow areas at cross section 2 can be very difficult. In general, the user should make the active flow area equal to the width of the bridge opening or wider (to account for flow expanding), unless the bridge abutments are very abrupt (vertical wall abutments with no wing walls).

The elevations specified for ineffective flow should correspond to elevations where significant weir flow passes over the bridge. For the downstream cross section, the threshold water surface elevation for weir flow is not usually known on the initial run, so an estimate must be made. An elevation below the minimum top-of-road, such as an average between the low chord and minimum top-of-road, can be used as a first estimate.

Using the ineffective area option to define the ineffective flow areas allows the overbank areas to become effective as soon as the ineffective area elevations are exceeded. The assumption is that under weir flow conditions, the water can generally flow across the whole bridge length and the entire overbank in the vicinity of the bridge would be effectively carrying flow up to and over the bridge. If it is more reasonable to assume only part of the overbank is effective for carrying flow when the bridge is under weir flow, then the overbank  $n$  values can be increased to reduce the amount of conveyance in the overbank areas under weir flow conditions.

Cross section 3, just upstream from the bridge, is usually defined in the same manner as cross section 2. In many cases the cross sections are identical. The only difference generally is the stations and elevations to use for the ineffective area option. For the upstream cross section, the elevation should initially be set to the low point of the top-of-road. When this is done, the user could possibly get a solution where the bridge hydraulics are computing weir flow, but the upstream water surface elevation comes out lower than the top of road. Both the weir flow and pressure flow equations are based on the energy grade line in the upstream cross section. Once an upstream energy is computed from the bridge hydraulics, the program tries to compute a water surface elevation in the upstream cross section that corresponds to that energy. Occasionally the program may get a water surface that is confined by the ineffective flow areas and lower than the minimum top of road. When this happens, the user should decrease the elevations of the upstream ineffective flow areas in order to get them to turn off. Once they turn off, the computed water surface elevation will be much closer to the computed energy gradeline (which is higher than the minimum high chord elevation).

Using the ineffective area option in the manner just described for the two cross sections on either side of the bridge provides for a constricted section when all of the flow is going under the bridge. When the water surface is higher than the control elevations used, the entire cross section is used. The program user should check the computed solutions on either side of the bridge section to ensure they are consistent with the type of flow. That is, for low flow or pressure flow solutions, the output should show the effective area restricted to the bridge opening. When the bridge output indicates weir flow, the solution should show that the entire cross section is effective. During overflow situations, the modeler should ensure that the overbank flow around the bridge is consistent with the weir flow.

## Contraction and Expansion Losses

Losses due to contraction and expansion of flow between cross sections are determined during the standard step profile calculations. Manning's equation is used to calculate friction losses, and all other losses are described in terms of a coefficient times the absolute value of the change in velocity head between adjacent cross sections. When the velocity head increases in the downstream direction, a contraction coefficient is used; and when the velocity head decreases, an expansion coefficient is used.

As shown in Figure 5.1, the flow contraction occurs between cross sections 4 and 3, while the flow expansion occurs between sections 2 and 1. The contraction and expansion coefficients are used to compute energy losses associated with changes in the shape of river cross sections (or effective flow areas). The loss due to expansion of flow is usually larger than the contraction loss, and losses from short abrupt transitions are larger than losses from gradual transitions. Typical values for contraction and expansion coefficients under subcritical flow conditions are shown in Table 5.1 below:

**Table 5.1**  
**Subcritical Flow Contraction and Expansion Coefficients**

	Contraction	Expansion
No transition loss computed	0.0	0.0
Gradual transitions	0.1	0.3
Typical Bridge sections	0.3	0.5
Abrupt transitions	0.6	0.8

The maximum value for the contraction and expansion coefficient is 1.0. As mentioned previously, a detailed study was completed by the Hydrologic Engineering Center entitled "Flow Transitions in Bridge Backwater Analysis" (HEC, 1995). A summary of this research, as well as recommendations for contraction and expansion coefficients, can be found in Appendix B.

In general, contraction and expansion coefficients for supercritical flow should be lower than subcritical flow. For typical bridges that are under class C flow conditions (totally supercritical flow), the contraction and expansion coefficients should be around 0.1 and 0.3 respectively. For abrupt bridge transitions under class C flow, values of 0.3 and 0.5 may be more appropriate.

## Hydraulic Computations Through the Bridge

The bridge routines in HEC-RAS allow the modeler to analyze a bridge with several different methods without changing the bridge geometry. The bridge routines have the ability to model low flow (Class A, B, and C), low flow and weir flow (with adjustments for submergence on the weir), pressure flow (orifice and sluice gate equations), pressure and weir flow, and highly submerged flows (the program will automatically switch to the energy equation when the flow over the road is highly submerged). This portion of the manual describes in detail how the program models each of these different flow types.

### Low Flow Computations

Low flow exists when the flow going through the bridge opening is open channel flow (water surface below the highest point on the low chord of the bridge opening). For low flow computations, the program first uses the momentum equation to identify the class of flow. This is accomplished by first calculating the momentum at critical depth inside the bridge at the upstream and downstream ends. The end with the higher momentum (therefore most constricted section) will be the controlling section in the bridge. If the two sections are identical, the program selects the upstream bridge section as the controlling section. The momentum at critical depth in the controlling section is then compared to the momentum of the flow downstream of the bridge when performing a subcritical profile (upstream of the bridge for a supercritical profile). If the momentum downstream is greater than the critical depth momentum inside the bridge, the class of flow is considered to be completely subcritical (i.e., class A low flow). If the momentum downstream is less than the momentum at critical depth, in the controlling bridge section, then it is assumed that the constriction will cause the flow to pass through critical depth and a hydraulic jump will occur at some distance downstream (i.e., class B low flow). If the profile is completely supercritical through the bridge, then this is considered class C low flow.

**Class A low flow.** Class A low flow exists when the water surface through the bridge is completely subcritical (i.e., above critical depth). Energy losses through the expansion (sections 2 to 1) are calculated as friction losses and expansion losses. Friction losses are based on a weighted friction slope times a weighted reach length between sections 1 and 2. The weighted friction slope is based on one of the four available alternatives in the HEC-RAS, with the average-conveyance method being the default. This option is user selectable.

The average length used in the calculation is based on a discharge-weighted reach length. Energy losses through the contraction (sections 3 to 4) are calculated as friction losses and contraction losses. Friction and contraction losses between sections 3 and 4 are calculated in the same way as friction and expansion losses between sections 1 and 2.

There are four methods available for computing losses through the bridge (sections 2 to 3):

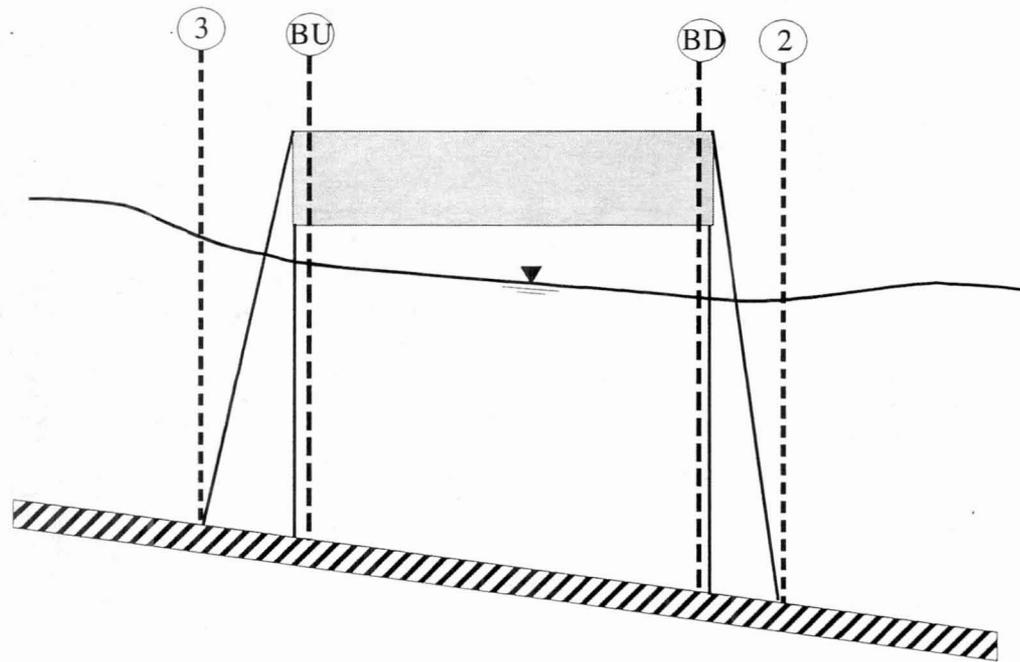
- Energy Equation (standard step method)
- Momentum Balance
- Yarnell Equation
- FHWA WSPRO method

The user can select any or all of these methods to be computed. This allows the modeler to compare the answers from several techniques all in a single execution of the program. If more than one method is selected, the user must choose either a single method as the final solution or direct the program to use the method that computes the greatest energy loss through the bridge as the final solution at section 3. Minimal results are available for all the methods computed, but detailed results are available for the method that is selected as the final answer. A detailed discussion of each method follows:

Energy Equation (standard step method):

The energy based method treats a bridge in the same manner as a natural river cross section, except the area of the bridge below the water surface is subtracted from the total area, and the wetted perimeter is increased where the water is in contact with the bridge structure. As described previously, the program formulates two cross sections inside the bridge by combining the ground information of sections 2 and 3 with the bridge geometry. As shown in Figure 5.3, for the purposes of discussion, these cross sections will be referred to as sections BD (Bridge Downstream) and BU (Bridge Upstream).

The sequence of calculations starts with a standard step calculation from just downstream of the bridge (section 2) to just inside of the bridge (section BD) at the downstream end. The program then performs a standard step through the bridge (from section BD to section BU). The last calculation is to step out of the bridge (from section BU to section 3).



**Figure 5.3 Cross Sections Near and Inside the Bridge**

The energy based method requires Manning's  $n$  values for friction losses and contraction and expansion coefficients for transition losses. The estimate of Manning's  $n$  values is well documented in many hydraulics text books, as well as several research studies. Basic guidance for estimating roughness coefficients is provided in Chapter 3 of this manual. Contraction and expansion coefficients are also provided in Chapter 3, as well as in earlier sections of this chapter. Detailed output is available for cross sections inside the bridge (sections BD and BU) as well as the user entered cross sections (sections 2 and 3).

Momentum Balance Method:

The momentum method is based on performing a momentum balance from cross section 2 to cross section 3. The momentum balance is performed in three steps. The first step is to perform a momentum balance from cross section 2 to cross section BD inside the bridge. The equation for this momentum balance is as follows:

$$A_{BD} \bar{Y}_{BD} + \frac{\beta_{BD} Q_{BD}^2}{g A_{BD}} = A_2 \bar{Y}_2 - A_{PBD} \bar{Y}_{PBD} + \frac{\beta_2 Q_2^2}{g A_2} + F_f - W_x \quad (5-1)$$

where:  $A_2, A_{BD}$  = Active flow area at section 2 and BD, respectively

$A_{PBD}$  = Obstructed area of the pier on downstream side

$\bar{Y}_2, \bar{Y}_{BD}$  = Vertical distance from water surface to center of gravity of flow area  $A_2$  and  $A_{BD}$ , respectively

$\bar{Y}_{PBD}$  = Vertical distance from water surface to center of gravity of wetted pier area on downstream side

$\beta_2, \beta_{BD}$  = Velocity weighting coefficients for momentum equation

$Q_2, Q_{BD}$  = Discharge

$g$  = Gravitational acceleration

$F_f$  = External force due to friction, per unit weight of water

$W_x$  = Force due to weight of water in the direction of flow, per unit weight of water

The second step is a momentum balance from section BD to BU (see Figure 5.3). The equation for this step is as follows:

$$A_{BU} \bar{Y}_{BU} + \frac{\beta_{BU} Q_{BU}^2}{g A_{BU}} = A_{BD} \bar{Y}_{BD} + \frac{\beta_{BD} Q_{BD}^2}{g A_{BD}} + F_f - W_x \quad (5-2)$$

The final step is a momentum balance from section BU to section 3 (see Figure 5.3). The equation for this step is as follows:

$$A_3 \bar{Y}_3 + \frac{\beta_3 Q_3^2}{g A_3} = A_{BU} \bar{Y}_{BU} + \frac{\beta_{BU} Q_{BU}^2}{g A_{BU}} + A_{PBU} \bar{Y}_{PBU} + \frac{1}{2} C_D \frac{A_{PBU} Q_3^2}{g A_3^2} + F_f - W_x \quad (5-3)$$

where:  $C_D$  = Drag coefficient for flow going around the piers.  
Guidance on selecting drag coefficients can be found under Table 5.2 below.

The momentum balance method requires the use of roughness coefficients for the estimation of the friction force and a drag coefficient for the force of drag on piers. As mentioned previously, roughness coefficients are described in Chapter 3 of this manual. Drag coefficients are used to estimate the force due to the water moving around the piers, the separation of the flow, and the resulting wake that occurs downstream. Drag coefficients for various cylindrical shapes have been derived from experimental data (Lindsey, 1938). The following table shows some typical drag coefficients that can be used for piers:

**Table 5.2**  
**Typical drag coefficients for various pier shapes**

Pier Shape	Drag Coefficient $C_D$
Circular pier	1.20
Elongated piers with semi-circular ends	1.33
Elliptical piers with 2:1 length to width	0.60
Elliptical piers with 4:1 length to width	0.32
Elliptical piers with 8:1 length to width	0.29
Square nose piers	2.00
Triangular nose with 30 degree angle	1.00
Triangular nose with 60 degree angle	1.39
Triangular nose with 90 degree angle	1.60
Triangular nose with 120 degree angle	1.72

The momentum method provides detailed output for the cross sections inside the bridge (BU and BD) as well as outside the bridge (2 and 3). The user has the option of turning the friction and weight force components off. The default is to include the friction force but not the weight component. The computation of the weight force is dependent upon computing a mean bed slope through the bridge. Estimating a mean bed slope can be very difficult with irregular cross section data. A bad estimate of the bed slope can lead to large errors in the momentum solution. The user can turn this force on if they feel that the bed slope through the bridge is well behaved for their application.

During the momentum calculations, if the water surface (at sections BD and BU) comes into contact with the maximum low chord of the bridge, the momentum balance is assumed to be invalid and the results are not used.

Yarnell Equation:

The Yarnell equation is an empirical equation that is used to predict the change in water surface from just downstream of the bridge (section 2 of Figure 5.3) to just upstream of the bridge (section 3). The equation is based on approximately 2600 lab experiments in which the researchers varied the shape of the piers, the width, the length, the angle, and the flow rate. The Yarnell equation is as follows (Yarnell, 1934):

$$H_{3-2} = 2K (K + 10\omega - 0.6)(\alpha + 15\alpha^4) \frac{V_2^2}{2g} \quad (5-4)$$

where:  $H_{3-2}$  = Drop in water surface elevation from section 3 to 2

$K$  = Yarnell's pier shape coefficient

$\omega$  = Ratio of velocity head to depth at section 2

$\alpha$  = Obstructed area of the piers divided by the total unobstructed area at section 2

$V_2$  = Velocity downstream at section 2

The computed upstream water surface elevation (section 3) is simply the downstream water surface elevation plus  $H_{3-2}$ . With the upstream water surface known the program computes the corresponding velocity head and energy elevation for the upstream section (section 3). When the Yarnell method is used, hydraulic information is only provided at cross sections 2 and 3 (no information is provided for sections BU and BD).

The Yarnell equation is sensitive to the pier shape ( $K$  coefficient), the pier obstructed area, and the velocity of the water. The method is not sensitive to the shape of the bridge opening, the shape of the abutments, or the width of the bridge. Because of these limitations, the Yarnell method should only be used at bridges where the majority of the energy losses are associated with the piers. When Yarnell's equation is used for computing the change in water surface through the bridge, the user must supply the Yarnell pier shape coefficient,  $K$ . The following table gives values for Yarnell's pier coefficient,  $K$ , for various pier shapes:

**Table 5.3**  
**Yarnell's pier coefficient,  $K$ , for various pier shapes**

Pier Shape	Yarnell K Coefficient
Semi-circular nose and tail	0.90
Twin-cylinder piers with connecting diaphragm	0.95
Twin-cylinder piers without diaphragm	1.05
90 degree triangular nose and tail	1.05
Square nose and tail	1.25
Ten pile trestle bent	2.50

FHWA WSPRO Method:

The low flow hydraulic computations of the Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA) WSPRO computer program has been adapted as an option for low flow hydraulics in HEC-RAS. The WSPRO methodology had to be modified slightly in order to fit into the HEC-RAS concept of cross-section locations around and through a bridge.

The WSPRO method computes the water surface profile through a bridge by solving the energy equation. The method is an iterative solution performed from the exit cross section (1) to the approach cross section (4). The energy balance is performed in steps from the exit section (1) to the cross section just downstream of the bridge (2); from just downstream of the bridge (2) to inside of the bridge at the downstream end (BD); from inside of the bridge at the downstream end (BD) to inside of the bridge at the upstream end (BU); From inside of the bridge at the upstream end (BU) to just upstream of the bridge (3); and from just upstream of the bridge (3) to the approach section (4). A general energy balance equation from the exit section to the approach section can be written as follows:

$$h_4 + \frac{\alpha_4 V_4^2}{2g} = h_1 + \frac{\alpha_1 V_1^2}{2g} + h_{L(4-1)} \quad (5-5)$$

- where:  $h_1$  = Water surface elevation at section 1
- $V_1$  = Velocity at section 1
- $h_4$  = Water surface elevation at section 4
- $V_4$  = Velocity at section 4
- $h_L$  = Energy losses from section 4 to 1

The incremental energy losses from section 4 to 1 are calculated as follows:

#### From Section 1 to 2

Losses from section 1 to section 2 are based on friction losses and an expansion loss. Friction losses are calculated using the geometric mean friction slope times the flow weighted distance between sections 1 and 2. The following equation is used for friction losses from 1 to 2:

$$h_{f(1-2)} = \frac{BQ^2}{K_2 K_1} \quad (5-6)$$

where  $B$  is the flow weighted distance between sections 1 and 2, and  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  are the total conveyance at sections 1 and 2 respectively. The expansion loss from section 2 to section 1 is computed by the following equation:

$$h_e = \frac{Q^2}{2gA_1^2} [2\beta_1 - \alpha_1 - 2\beta_2 \left(\frac{A_1}{A_2}\right) + \alpha_2 \left(\frac{A_1}{A_2}\right)^2] \quad (5-7)$$

where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are energy and momentum correction factors for nonuniform flow.  $\alpha_1$  and  $\beta_1$  are computed as follows:

$$\alpha_1 = \frac{\sum (K_i^3/A_i^2)}{K_T^3/A_T^2} \quad (5-8)$$

$$\beta_1 = \frac{\sum (K_i^2/A_i)}{K_T^2/A_T} \quad (5-9)$$

$\alpha_2$  and  $\beta_2$  are related to the bridge geometry and are defined as follows:

$$\alpha_2 = \frac{1}{C^2} \quad (5-10)$$

$$\beta_2 = \frac{1}{C} \quad (5-11)$$

where  $C$  is an empirical discharge coefficient for the bridge, which was originally developed as part of the Contracted Opening method by Kindswater, Carter, and Tracy (USGS, 1953), and subsequently modified by Matthai (USGS, 1968). The computation of the discharge coefficient,  $C$ , is explained in detail in appendix D of this manual.

### From Section 2 to 3

Losses from section 2 to section 3 are based on friction losses only. The energy balance is performed in three steps: from section 2 to BD; BD to BU; and BU to 3. Friction losses are calculated using the geometric mean friction slope times the flow weighted distance between sections. The following equation is used for friction losses from BD to BU:

$$h_{f(BU-BD)} = \frac{L_B Q^2}{K_{BU} K_{BD}} \quad (5-12)$$

where  $K_{BU}$  and  $K_{BD}$  are the total conveyance at sections BU and BD respectively, and  $L_B$  is the length through the bridge. Similar equations are used for the friction losses from section 2 to BD and BU to 3.

### From Section 3 to 4

Energy losses from section 3 to 4 are based on friction losses only. The equation for computing the friction loss is as follows:

$$h_{f(3-4)} = \frac{L_{av} Q^2}{K_3 K_4} \quad (5-13)$$

where  $L_{av}$  is the effective flow length in the approach reach, and  $K_3$  and  $K_4$  are the total conveyances at sections 3 and 4. The effective flow length is computed as the average length of 20 equal conveyance stream tubes (FHWA, 1986). The computation of the effective flow length by the stream tube method is explained in appendix D of this manual.

**Class B low flow.** Class B low flow can exist for either subcritical or supercritical profiles. For either profile, class B flow occurs when the profile passes through critical depth in the bridge constriction. For a **subcritical profile**, the momentum equation is used to compute an upstream water surface (section 3 of Figure 5.3) above critical depth and a downstream water surface (section 2) below critical depth. For a **supercritical profile**, the bridge is acting as a control and is causing the upstream water surface elevation to be above critical depth. Momentum is used to calculate an upstream water surface above critical depth and a downstream water surface below critical depth. If for some reason the momentum equation fails to converge on an answer during the class B flow computations, the program will automatically switch to an energy based method for calculating the class B profile through the bridge.

Whenever class B flow is found to exist, the user should run the program in a mixed flow regime mode. If the user is running a mixed flow regime profile, the program will proceed with backwater calculations upstream, and later with forewater calculations downstream from the bridge. Also, any hydraulic jumps that may occur upstream and downstream of the bridge can be located if they exist.

**Class C low flow.** Class C low flow exists when the water surface through the bridge is completely supercritical. The program can use either the energy equation or the momentum equation to compute the water surface through the bridge for this class of flow.

## High Flow Computations

The HEC-RAS program has the ability to compute high flows (flows that come into contact with the maximum low chord of the bridge deck) by either the Energy equation (standard step method) or by using separate hydraulic equations for pressure and/or weir flow. The two methodologies are explained below.

**Energy Equation (standard step method).** The energy based method is applied to high flows in the same manner as it is applied to low flows. Computations are based on balancing the energy equation in three steps through the bridge. Energy losses are based on friction and contraction and expansion losses. Output from this method is available at the cross sections inside the bridge as well as outside.

As mentioned previously, friction losses are based on the use of Manning's equation. Guidance for selecting Manning's  $n$  values is provided in Chapter 3 of this manual. Contraction and expansion losses are based on a coefficient times the change in velocity head. Guidance on the selection of contraction and expansion coefficients has also been provided in Chapter 3, as well as previous sections of this chapter.

The energy based method performs all computations as though they are open channel flow. At the cross sections inside the bridge, the area obstructed by the bridge piers, abutments, and deck is subtracted from the flow area and additional wetted perimeter is added. Occasionally the resulting water surfaces inside the bridge (at sections BU and BD) can be computed at elevations that would be inside of the bridge deck. The water surfaces inside of the bridge reflect the hydraulic grade line elevations, not necessarily the actual water surface elevations. Additionally, the active flow area is limited to the open bridge area.

**Pressure and Weir Flow Method.** A second approach for the computation of high flows is to utilize separate hydraulic equations to compute the flow as pressure and/or weir flow. The two types of flow are presented below.

Pressure Flow Computations:

Pressure flow occurs when the flow comes into contact with the low chord of the bridge. Once the flow comes into contact with the upstream side of the bridge, a backwater occurs and orifice flow is established. The program will handle two cases of orifice flow; the first is when only the upstream side of the bridge is in contact with the water; and the second is when the bridge opening is flowing completely full. The HEC-RAS program will automatically select the appropriate equation, depending upon the flow situation. For the first case (see Figure 5.4), a sluice gate type of equation is used (FHWA, 1978):

$$Q = C_d A_{BU} \left[ 2g \left( Y_3 - \frac{Z}{2} + \frac{\alpha_3 V_3^2}{2g} \right) \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (5-14)$$

- where:  $Q$  = Total discharge through the bridge opening
- $C_d$  = Coefficient of discharge for pressure flow
- $A_{BU}$  = Net area of the bridge opening at section BU
- $Y_3$  = Hydraulic depth at section 3
- $Z$  = Vertical distance from maximum bridge low chord to the mean river bed elevation at section BU

The discharge coefficient  $C_d$ , can vary depending upon the depth of water upstream. Values for  $C_d$  range from 0.27 to 0.5, with a typical value of 0.5 commonly used in practice. The user can enter a fixed value for this coefficient or the program will compute one based on the amount that the inlet is submerged. A diagram relating  $C_d$  to  $Y_3/Z$  is shown in Figure 5.5.

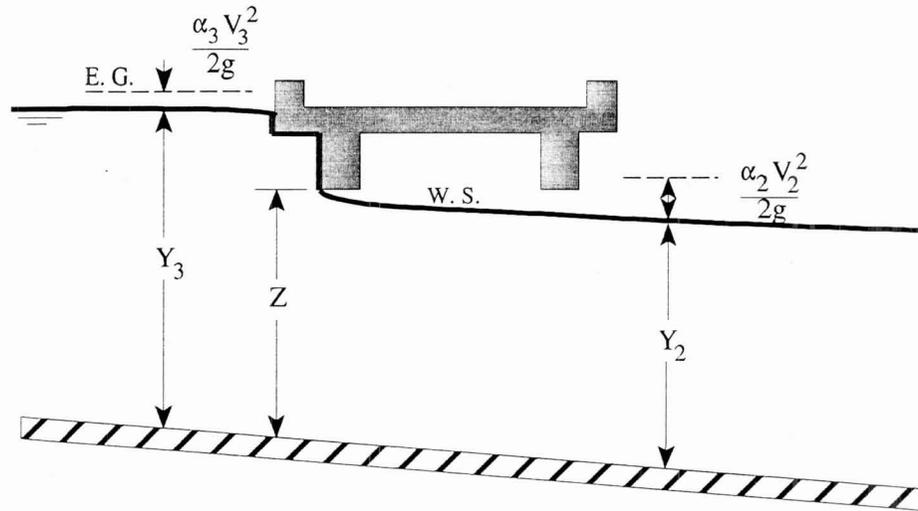


Figure 5.4 Example of a bridge under sluice gate type of pressure flow

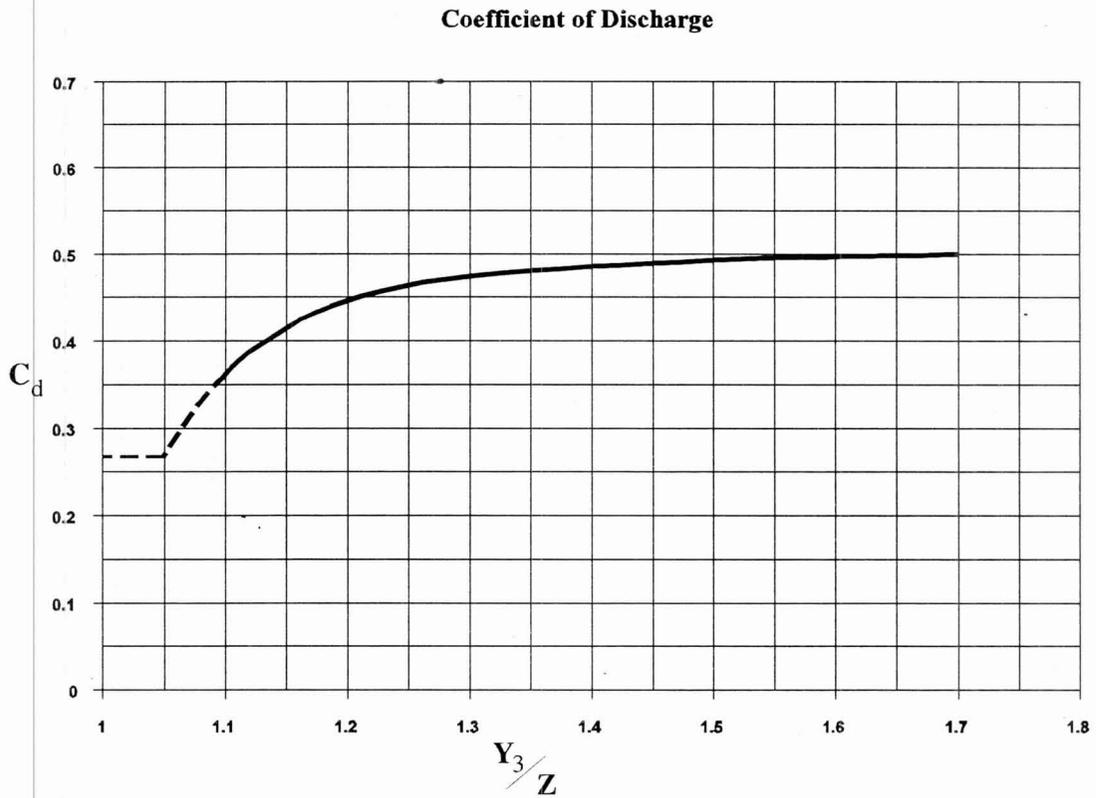


Figure 5.5 Coefficient of discharge for sluice gate type flow

As shown in Figure 5.5, the limiting value of  $Y_3/Z$  is 1.1. There is a transition zone somewhere between  $Y_3/Z = 1.0$  and 1.1 where free surface flow changes to orifice flow. The type of flow in this range is unpredictable, and equation 5-14 is not applicable.

In the second case, when both the upstream and downstream side of the bridge are submerged, the standard full flowing orifice equation is used (see Figure 5.6). This equation is as follows:

$$Q = CA\sqrt{2gH} \quad (5-15)$$

where:  $C$  = Coefficient of discharge for fully submerged pressure flow. Typical value of  $C$  is 0.8.

$H$  = The difference between the energy gradient elevation upstream and the water surface elevation downstream.

$A$  = Net area of the bridge opening.

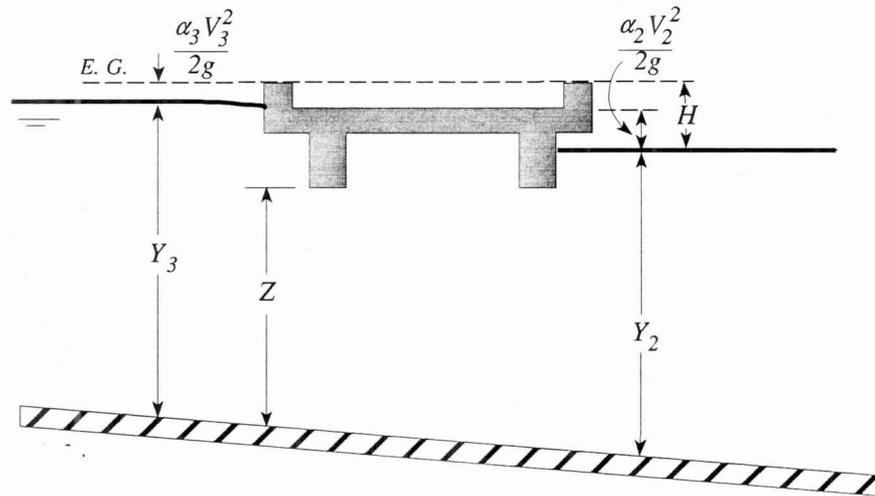


Figure 5.6 Example of a bridge under fully submerged pressure flow

Typical values for the discharge coefficient  $C$  range from 0.7 to 0.9, with a value of 0.8 commonly used for most bridges. The user must enter a value for  $C$  whenever the pressure flow method is selected. The discharge coefficient  $C$  can be related to the total loss coefficient, which comes from the form of the orifice equation that is used in the HEC-2 computer program (HEC, 1991):

$$Q = A \sqrt{\frac{2gH}{K}} \quad (5-16)$$

where:  $K$  = Total loss coefficient

The conversion from  $K$  to  $C$  is as follows:

$$C = \sqrt{\frac{1}{K}} \quad (5-17)$$

The program will begin checking for the possibility of pressure flow when the computed low flow energy grade line is above the maximum low chord elevation at the upstream side of the bridge. Once pressure flow is computed, the pressure flow answer is compared to the low flow answer, the higher of the two is used. The user has the option to tell the program to use the water surface, instead of energy, to trigger the pressure flow calculation.

#### Weir Flow Computations:

Flow over the bridge, and the roadway approaching the bridge, is calculated using the standard weir equation (see Figure 5.7):

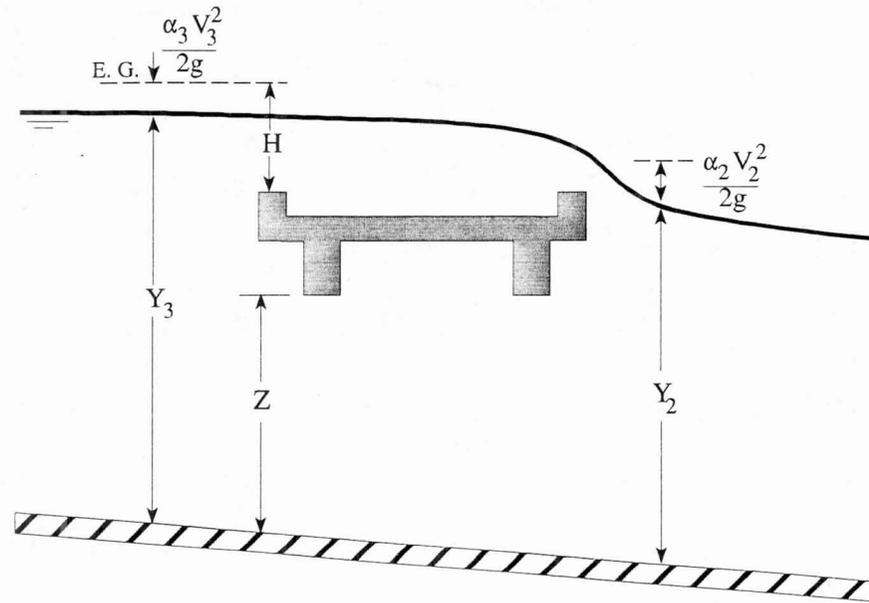
$$Q = CLH^{3/2} \quad (5-18)$$

where:  $Q$  = Total flow over the weir

$C$  = Coefficient of discharge for weir flow

$L$  = Effective length of the weir

$H$  = Difference between energy upstream and road crest



**Figure 5.7 Example bridge with pressure and weir flow**

The approach velocity is included by using the energy grade line elevation in lieu of the upstream water surface elevation for computing the head,  $H$ .

Under free flow conditions (discharge independent of tailwater) the coefficient of discharge  $C$ , ranges from 2.5 to 3.1 (1.38 - 1.71 metric) for broad-crested weirs depending primarily upon the gross head on the crest ( $C$  increases with head). Increased resistance to flow caused by obstructions such as trash on bridge railings, curbs, and other barriers would decrease the value of  $C$ .

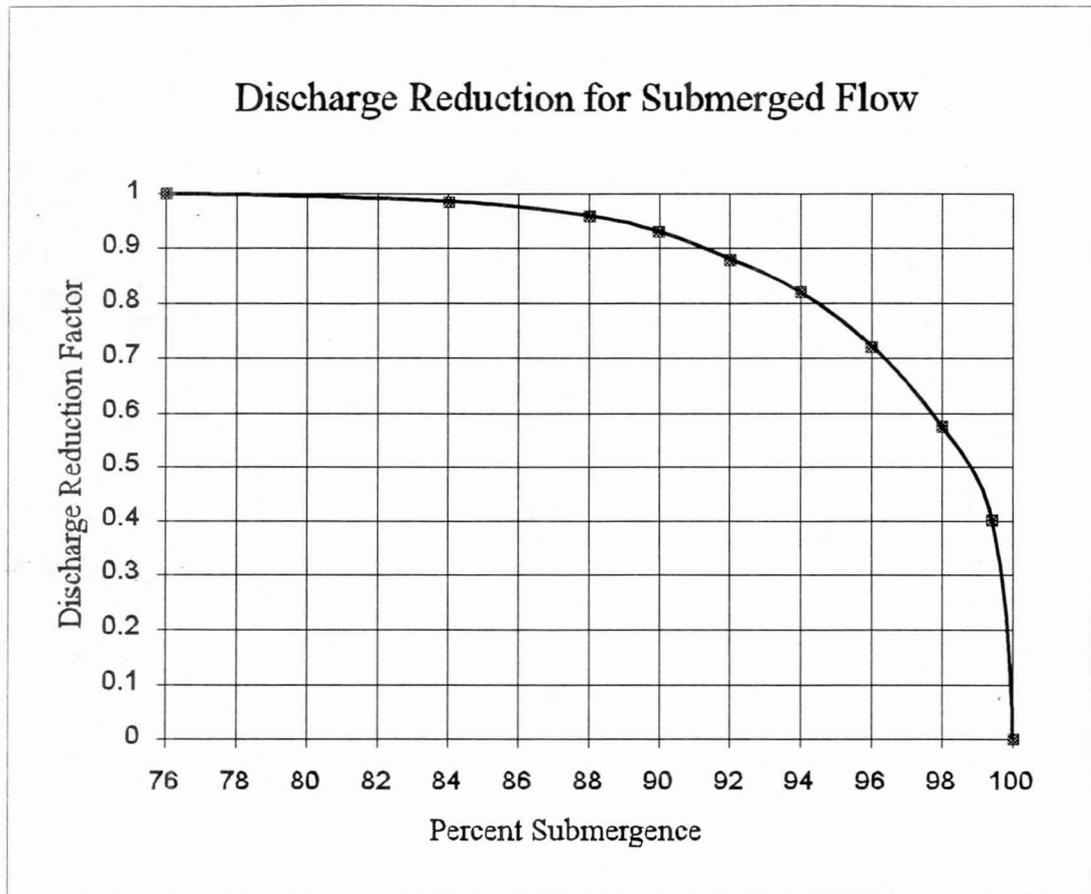
Tables of weir coefficients,  $C$ , are given for broad-crested weirs in King's Handbook (King, 1963), with the value of  $C$  varying with measured head  $H$  and breadth of weir. For rectangular weirs with a breadth of 15 feet and a  $H$  of 1 foot or more, the given value is 2.63 (1.45 for metric). Trapezoidal shaped weirs generally have a larger coefficient with typical values ranging from 2.7 to 3.08 (1.49 to 1.70 for metric).

'Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways' (FHWA, 1978) provides a curve of  $C$  versus the head on the roadway. The roadway section is shown as a trapezoid and the coefficient rapidly changes from 2.9 for a very small  $H$  to 3.03 for  $H = 0.6$  feet. From there, the curve levels off near a value of 3.05 (1.69 for metric).

With very little prototype data available, it seems the assumption of a rectangular weir for flow over the bridge deck (assuming the bridge can withstand the forces) and a coefficient of 2.6 (1.44 for metric) would be reasonable. If the weir flow is over the roadway approaches to the bridge, a value of 3.0 (1.66 for metric) would be consistent with available data. If weir flow occurs as a combination of bridge and roadway overflow, then an average coefficient (weighted by weir length) could be used.

For high tailwater elevations, the program will automatically reduce the amount of weir flow to account for submergence on the weir. Submergence is defined as the depth of water above the minimum weir elevation on the downstream side (section 2) divided by the height of the energy gradeline above the minimum weir elevation on the upstream side (section 3). The reduction of weir flow is accomplished by reducing the weir coefficient based on the amount of submergence. Submergence corrections are based on a trapezoidal weir shape or optionally an ogee spillway shape. The total weir flow is computed by subdividing the weir crest into segments, computing L, H, a submergence correction, and a Q for each section, then summing the incremental discharges. The submergence correction for a trapezoidal weir shape is from "Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways" (Bradley, 1978). Figure 5.8 shows the relationship between the percentage of submergence and the flow reduction factor.

When the weir becomes highly submerged the program will automatically switch to calculating the upstream water surface by the energy equation (standard step backwater) instead of using the pressure and weir flow equations. The criteria for when the program switches to energy based calculations is user controllable. A default maximum submergence is set to 0.95 (95 percent).



**Figure 5.8** Factor for reducing weir flow for submergence

### Combination Flow.

Sometimes combinations of low flow or pressure flow occur with weir flow. In these cases, an iterative procedure is used to determine the amount of each type of flow. The program continues to iterate until both the low flow method (or pressure flow) and the weir flow method have the same energy (within a specified tolerance) upstream of the bridge (section 3). The combination of low flow and weir flow can only be computed with the energy and Yarnell low flow method.

## Selecting a Bridge Modeling Approach

There are several choices available to the user when selecting methods for computing the water surface profile through a bridge. For low flow (water surface is below the maximum low chord of the bridge deck), the user can select any or all of the four available methods. For high flows, the user must choose between either the energy based method or the pressure and weir flow approach. The choice of methods should be considered carefully. The following discussion provides some basic guidelines on selecting the appropriate methods for various situations.

### Low Flow Methods

For low flow conditions (water surface below the highest point on the low chord of the bridge opening), the Energy and Momentum methods are the most physically based, and in general are applicable to the widest range of bridges and flow situations. Both methods account for friction losses and changes in geometry through the bridge. The energy method accounts for additional losses due to flow transitions and turbulence through the use of contraction and expansion losses. The momentum method can account for additional losses due to pier drag. The FHWA WSPRO method was originally developed for bridge crossings that constrict wide flood plains with heavily vegetated overbank areas. The method is an energy based solution with some empirical attributes (the expansion loss equation in the WSPRO method utilizes an empirical discharge coefficient). The Yarnell equation is an empirical formula. When applying the Yarnell equation, the user should ensure that the problem is within the range of data that the method was developed for. The following examples are some typical cases where the various low flow methods might be used:

1. In cases where the bridge piers are a small obstruction to the flow, and friction losses are the predominate consideration, the energy based method, the momentum method, and the WSPRO method should give the best answers.
2. In cases where pier losses and friction losses are both predominant, the momentum method should be the most applicable. But any of the methods can be used.
3. Whenever the flow passes through critical depth within the vicinity of the bridge, both the momentum and energy methods are capable of modeling this type of flow transition. The Yarnell and WSPRO methods are for subcritical flow only.

4. For supercritical flow, both the energy and the momentum method can be used. The momentum based method may be better at locations that have a substantial amount of pier impact and drag losses. The Yarnell equation and the WSPRO method are only applicable to subcritical flow situations.
5. For bridges in which the piers are the dominant contributor to energy losses and the change in water surface, either the momentum method or the Yarnell equation would be most applicable. However, the Yarnell equation is only applicable to Class A low flow.
6. For long culverts under low flow conditions, the energy based standard step method is the most suitable approach. Several sections can be taken through the culvert to model changes in grade or shape or to model a very long culvert. This approach also has the benefit of providing detailed answers at several locations within the culvert, which is not possible with the culvert routines in HEC-RAS. However, if the culvert flows full, or if it is controlled by inlet conditions, the culvert routines would be the best approach. For a detailed discussion of the culvert routines within HEC-RAS, see Chapter 6 of this manual.

## High Flow Methods

For high flows (flows that come into contact with the maximum low chord of the bridge deck), the energy based method is applicable to the widest range of problems. The following examples are some typical cases where the various high flow methods might be used.

1. When the bridge deck is a small obstruction to the flow, and the bridge opening is not acting like an pressurized orifice, the energy based method should be used.
2. When the bridge deck and road embankment are a large obstruction to the flow, and a backwater is created due to the constriction of the flow, the pressure and weir method should be used.
3. When the bridge and/or road embankment is overtopped, and the water going over top of the bridge is not highly submerged by the downstream tailwater, the pressure and weir method should be used. The pressure and weir method will automatically switch to the energy method if the bridge becomes 95 percent submerged. The user can change the percent submergence at which the program will switch from the pressure and weir method to the energy method. This is accomplished from the Deck/Roadway editor in the Bridge/Culvert Data editor.

4. When the bridge is highly submerged, and flow over the road is not acting like weir flow, the energy based method should be used.

## Unique Bridge Problems and Suggested Approaches

Many bridges are more complex than the simple examples presented in the previous sections. The following discussion is intended to show how HEC-RAS can be used to calculate profiles for more complex bridge crossings. The discussion here will be an extension of the previous discussions and will address only those aspects that have not been discussed previously.

### Perched Bridges

A perched bridge is one for which the road approaching the bridge is at the floodplain ground level, and only in the immediate area of the bridge does the road rise above ground level to span the watercourse (Figure 5.9). A typical flood-flow situation with this type of bridge is low flow under the bridge and overbank flow around the bridge. Because the road approaching the bridge is usually not much higher than the surrounding ground, the assumption of weir flow is often not justified. A solution based on the energy method (standard step calculations) would be better than a solution based on weir flow with correction for submergence. Therefore, this type of bridge should generally be modeled using the energy based method, especially when a large percentage of the total discharge is in the overbank areas.

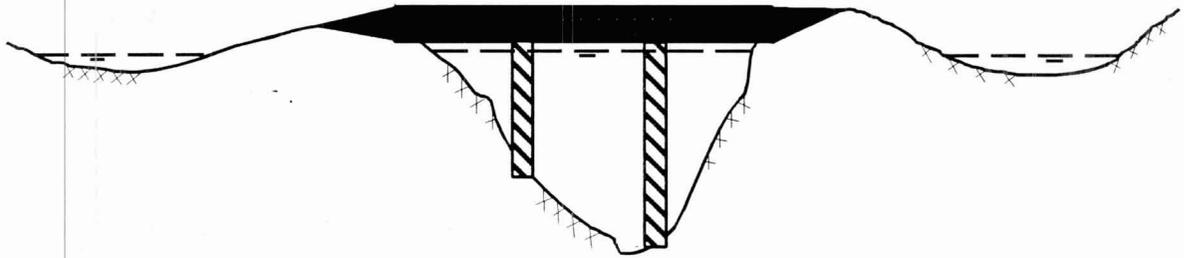


Figure 5.9 Perched Bridge Example

## Low Water Bridges

A low water bridge (Figure 5.10) is designed to carry only low flows under the bridge. Flood flows are carried over the bridge and road. When modeling this bridge for flood flows, the anticipated solution is a combination of pressure and weir flow. However, with most of the flow over the top of the bridge, the correction for submergence may introduce considerable error. If the tailwater is going to be high, it may be better to use the energy based method.

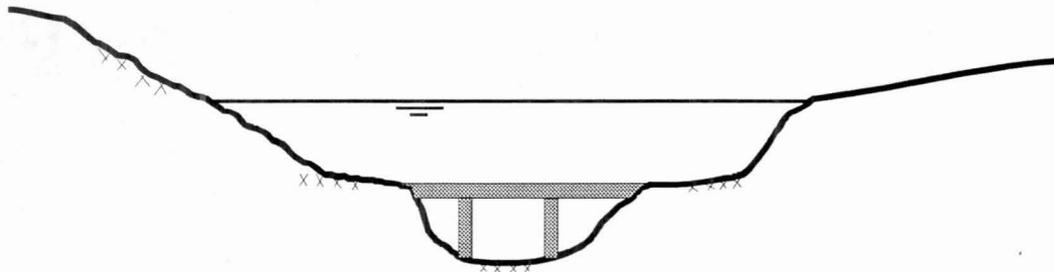
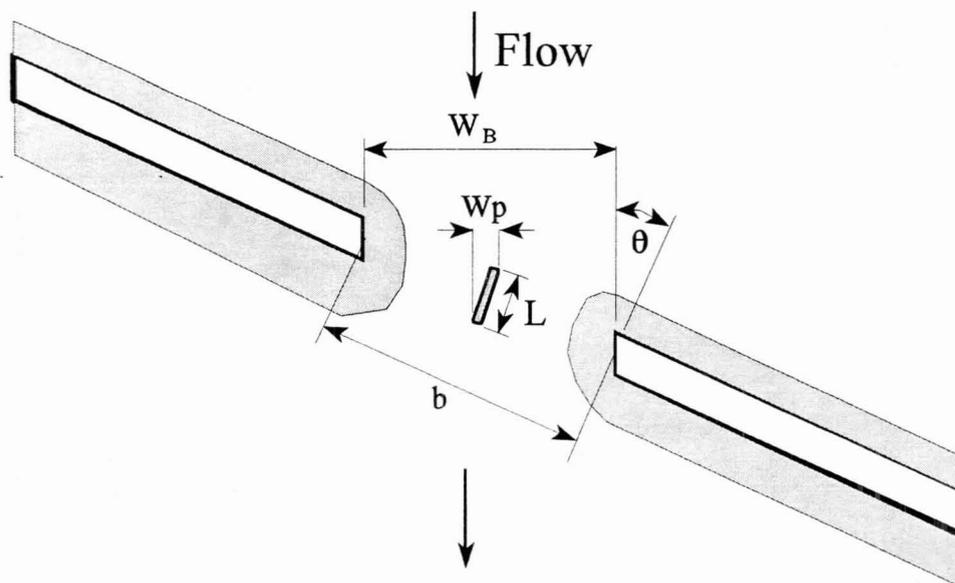


Figure 5.10 Low Water Bridge Example

## Bridges on a Skew

Skewed bridge crossings (Figure 5.11) are generally handled by making adjustments to the bridge dimensions to define an equivalent cross section perpendicular to the flow lines. In the current version of HEC-RAS, it is up to the user to make these adjustments. The cross sections that bound the bridge can be adjusted from the cross section editor. The bridge information (bridge deck/roadway, abutments, and piers) should be adjusted before you enter the information. In a future version of HEC-RAS, the user will be able to enter a skew angle for the bridge deck, piers, and abutments from the bridge and culvert editor of the user interface. The program will then multiply the dimensions of the bridge data by the cosine of the skew angle.

In the publication "Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways" (Bradley, 1978) the effect of skew on low flow is discussed. In model testing, skewed crossings with angles up to 20 degrees showed no objectionable flow patterns. For increasing angles, flow efficiency decreased. A graph illustrating the impact of skewness indicates that using the projected length is adequate for angles up to 30 degrees for small flow contractions.



**Figure 5.11 Example Bridge on a Skew**

For the example shown in figure 5.11, the projected width of the bridge opening, perpendicular to the flow lines, can be computed with the following equation:

$$W_B = \cos\theta * b \quad (5-19)$$

where:  $W_B$  = Projected width of the bridge opening, perpendicular to the flow lines

$b$  = The length of the bridge opening as measured along the skewed road crossing

$\theta$  = The bridge skew angle in degrees

The pier information must also be adjusted to account for the skew of the bridge. If the piers are continuous, as shown in Figure 5.11, then the following equation can be applied to get the projected width of the piers, perpendicular to the flow lines:

$$W_p = \sin\theta * L + \cos\theta * w_p \quad (5-20)$$

where:  $W_p$  = The projected width of the pier, perpendicular to the flow lines

$L$  = The actual length of the pier

$w_p$  = The actual width of the pier

## Parallel Bridges

With the construction of divided highways, a common modeling problem involves parallel bridges (Figure 5.12). For new highways, these bridges are often identical structures. The hydraulic losses through the two structures has been shown to be between one and two times the loss for one bridge [Bradley, 1978]. The model results [Bradley, 1978] indicate the loss for two bridges ranging from 1.3 to 1.55 times the loss for one bridge crossing, over the range of bridge spacings tested. Presumably if the two bridges were far enough apart, the losses for the two bridges would equal twice the loss for one. If the parallel bridges are very close to each other, and the flow will not be able to expand between the bridges, the bridges can be modeled as a single bridge. If there is enough distance between the bridge, in which the flow has room to expand and contract, the bridges should be modeled as two separate bridges. If both bridges are modeled, care should be exercised in depicting the expansion and contraction of flow between the bridges. Expansion and contraction rates should be based on the same procedures as single bridges.

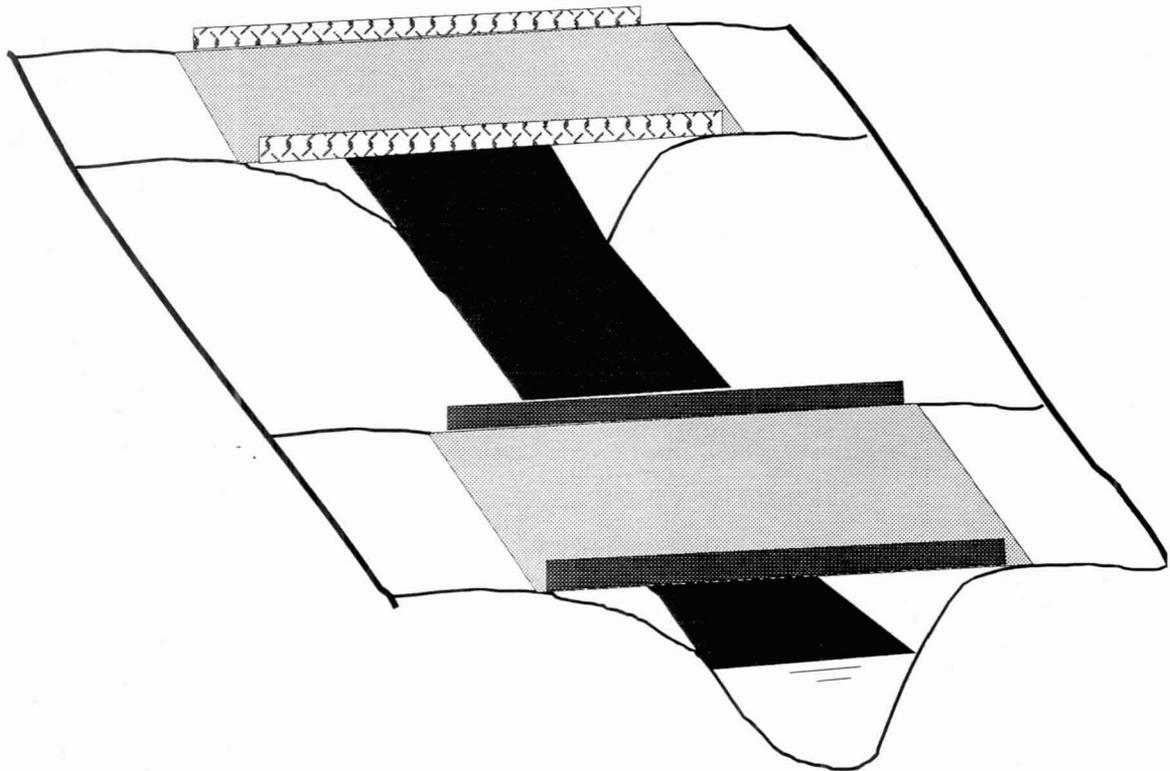


Figure 5.12 Parallel Bridge Example

## Multiple Bridge Opening

Some bridges (Figure 5.13) have more than one opening for flood flow, especially over a very wide floodplain. Multiple culverts, bridges with side relief openings, and separate bridges over a divided channel are all examples of multiple opening problems. With more than one bridge opening, and possible different control elevations, the problem can be very complicated. HEC-RAS can handle multiple bridge and/or culvert openings. Detailed discussions on how to model multiple bridge and/or culvert openings is covered under Chapter 7 of the HEC-RAS Hydraulic Reference manual and Chapter 6 of the User's manual.

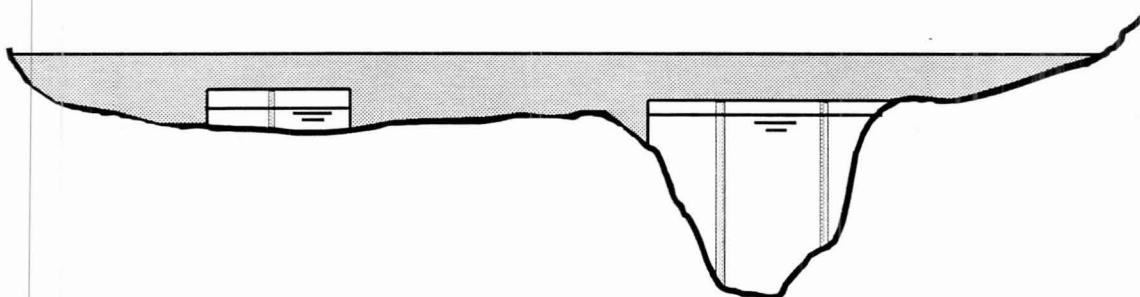


Figure 5.13 Example Multiple Bridge Opening

## Modeling Floating Pier Debris

Trash, trees, and other debris may accumulate on the upstream side of a pier. During high flow events, this debris may block a significant portion of the bridge opening. In order to account for this effect, a pier debris option has been added to HEC-RAS.

The pier debris option blocks out a rectangular shaped area in front of the given pier. The user enters the height and the width of the given block. The program then adjusts the area and wetted perimeter of the bridge opening to account for the pier debris. The rectangular block is centered on the centerline of the upstream pier. The pier debris is assumed to float at the top of the water surface. That is, the top of the rectangular block is set at the same elevation as the water surface. For instance, assume a bridge opening that has a pier that is six feet wide with a centerline station of 100 feet, the elevation of water inside of the bridge is ten feet, and that the user wants to model pier debris that sticks out two feet past either side of the pier and is [vertically] four feet high. The user would enter a pier debris rectangle that is 10 feet wide (six feet for the pier plus two feet for the left side and two feet for the right side) and 4 feet high. The pier debris would block out the flow that is between stations 95 and 105 and between an elevation of six and ten feet (from an elevation of six feet to the top of the water surface).

The pier debris does not "form" until the given pier has flow. If the bottom of the pier is above the water surface, then there is no area or wetted perimeter adjustment for that pier. However, if the water surface is above the top of the pier, the debris is assumed to lodge underneath the bridge, where the top of the pier intersects the bottom of the bridge deck. It is assumed that the debris entirely blocks the flow and that the debris is physically part of the pier. (The Yarnell and momentum bridge methods require the area of the pier, and pier debris is included in these calculations.)

The program physically changes the geometry of the bridge in order to model the pier debris. This is done to ensure that there is no double accounting of area or wetted perimeter. For instance, pier debris that extends past the abutment, or into the ground, or that overlaps the pier debris of an adjacent pier is ignored.

Shown in Figure 5.14 is the pier editor with the pier debris option turned on. Note that there is a check box to turn the floating debris option on. Once this option is turned on, two additional fields will appear to enter the height and overall width of the pier debris. Additionally, there is a button that the user can use to set the entered height and width for the first pier as being the height and width of debris that will be used for all piers at this bridge location. Otherwise, the debris data can be defined separately for every pier.

**Pier Data Editor**

Add Copy Delete Pier # 1 [Down Arrow] [Up Arrow]

Del Row Centerline Station Upstream 92.5

Ins Row Centerline Station Downstream 92.5

Skew Angle

Floating Debris

Set for all Debris Width 5.5

Debris Height 6

	Upstream		Downstream		
	Pier Width	Elevation	Pier Width	Elevation	
1	1.5	0	1.5	0	
2	1.5	288	1.5	288	
3					
4					
5					
6					
7					

OK Cancel Help Copy Up to Down

**Figure 5.14 Pier Editor With Floating Debris Option**

After the user has run the computational program with the pier debris option turned on, the pier debris will then be displayed on the cross section plots of the upstream side of the bridge (this is the cross sections with the labels "BR U," for inside of the bridge at the upstream end). An example cross-section plot with pier debris is shown in Figure 5.15.

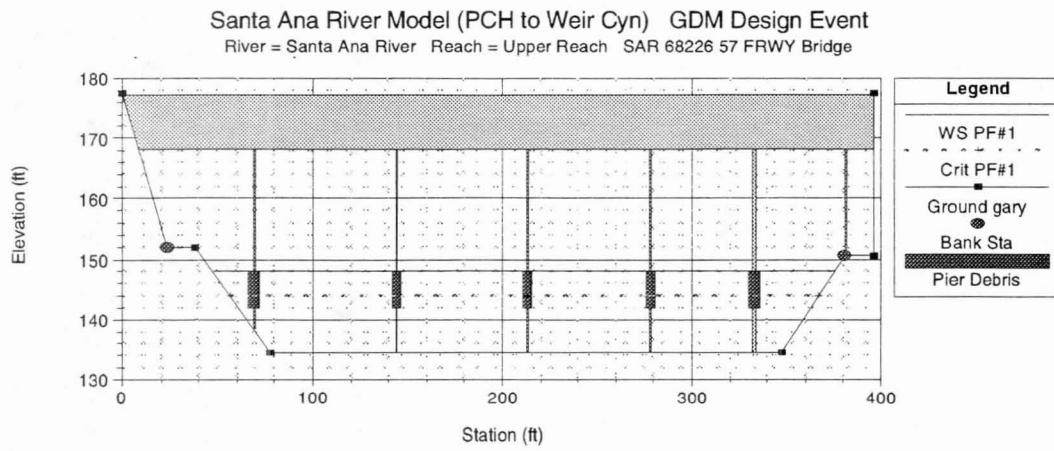


Figure 5.15 Example Bridge Plot With Pier Debris

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## CHAPTER 6

# Modeling Culverts

HEC-RAS computes energy losses, caused by structures such as culverts, in three parts. The first part consists of losses that occur in the reach immediately downstream from the structure, where an expansion of flow takes place. The second part consists of losses that occur as flow travels into, through, and out of the culvert. The last part consists of losses that occur in the reach immediately upstream from the structure, where the flow is contracting towards the opening of the culvert.

HEC-RAS has the ability to model single culverts; multiple identical culverts; and multiple non-identical culverts.

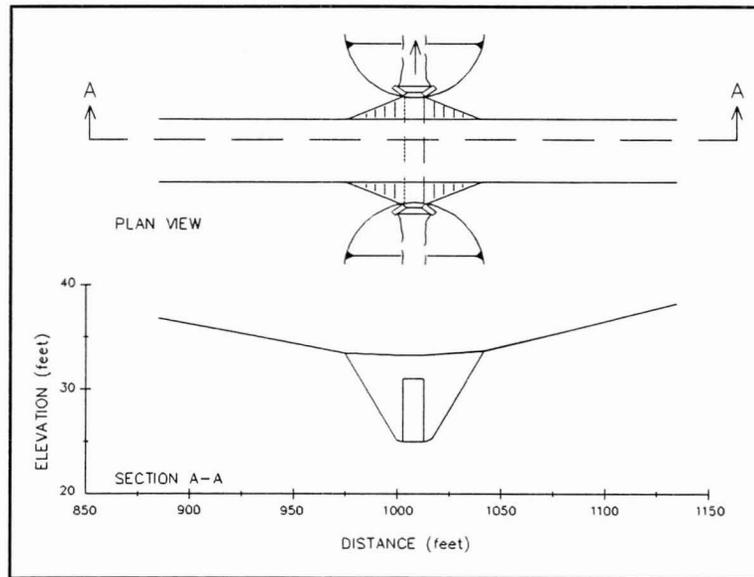
This chapter discusses how culverts are modeled within HEC-RAS. Discussions include: general modeling guidelines; how the hydraulic computations through the culvert are performed; and what data are required and how to select the various coefficients.

### Contents

- General Modeling Guidelines
- Culvert Hydraulics
- Culvert Data and Coefficients

## General Modeling Guidelines

The culvert routines in HEC-RAS are similar to the bridge routines, except that the Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA, 1985) standard equations for culvert hydraulics are used to compute inlet control losses at the structure. Figure 6.1 illustrates a typical box culvert road crossing. As shown, the culvert is similar to a bridge in many ways. The walls and roof of the culvert correspond to the abutments and low chord of the bridge, respectively.

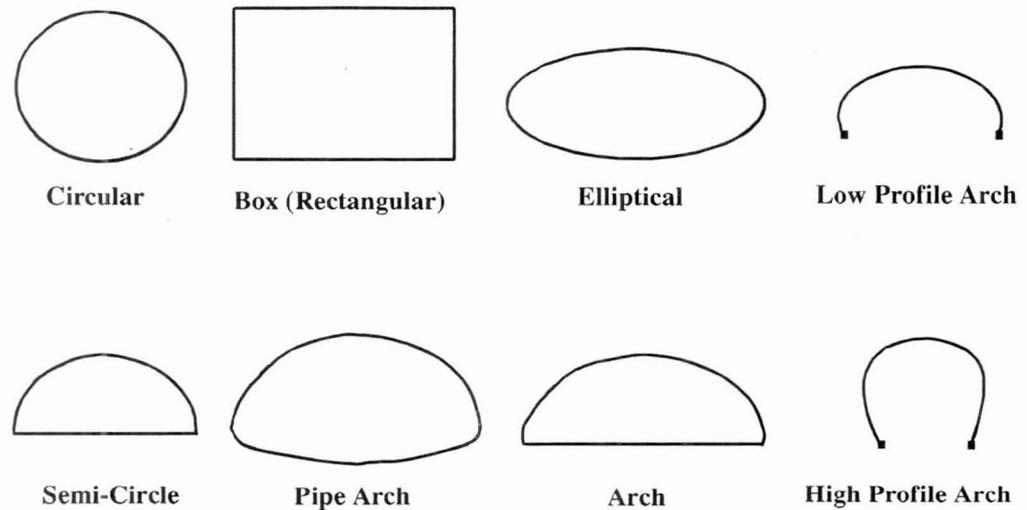


**Figure 6.1 Typical Culvert Road Crossing**

Because of the similarities between culverts and other types of bridges, culverts are modeled in a similar manner to bridges. The layout of cross sections, the use of the ineffective areas, the selection of loss coefficients, and most other aspects of bridge analysis apply to culverts as well.

### Types of Culverts

HEC-RAS has the ability to model eight of the most commonly used culvert shapes. These shapes include: circular; box (rectangular); arch; pipe arch; low profile arch; high profile arch; elliptical (horizontal and vertical); and semi-circular culverts (Figure 6.2). The program has the ability to model up to ten different culvert types (any change in shape, slope, roughness, or chart and scale number requires the user to enter a new culvert type) at any given culvert crossing. For a given culvert type, the number of identical barrels is limited to 25.

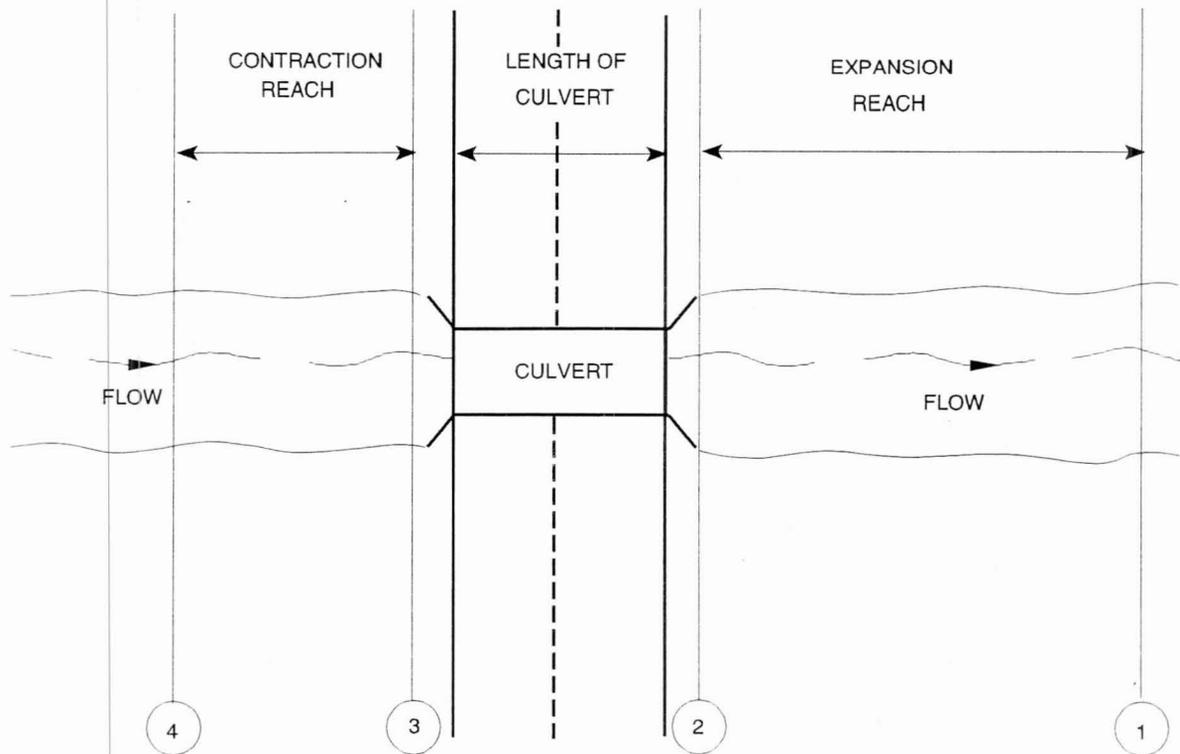


**Figure 6.2 Commonly used culvert shapes**

### Cross Section Locations

The culvert routines in HEC-RAS require the same cross sections as the bridge routines. Four cross sections are required for a complete culvert model. This total includes one cross section sufficiently downstream from the culvert such that flow is not affected by the culvert, one at the downstream end of the culvert, one at the upstream end of the culvert, and one cross section located far enough upstream that the culvert again has no effect on the flow. Note, the cross sections at the two ends of the culvert represent the channel outside of the culvert. Separate culvert data will be used to create cross sections inside of the culvert. Figure 6.3 illustrates the cross sections required for a culvert model. The cross sections are labeled 1, 2, 3, and 4 for the purpose of discussion within this chapter. Whenever the user is computing a water surface profile through a culvert (or any other hydraulic structure), additional cross sections should always be included both upstream and downstream of the structure. This will prevent any user entered boundary conditions from effecting the hydraulic results through the culvert.

**Cross Section 1 of Culvert Model.** Cross Section 1 for a culvert model should be located at a point where flow has fully expanded from its constricted top width caused by the culvert constriction. The cross section spacing downstream of the culvert can be based on the criterion stated under the bridge modeling chapter (See Chapter 5, "Modeling Bridges" for a more complete discussion of cross section locations). The entire area of Cross Section 1 is usually considered to be effective in conveying flow.

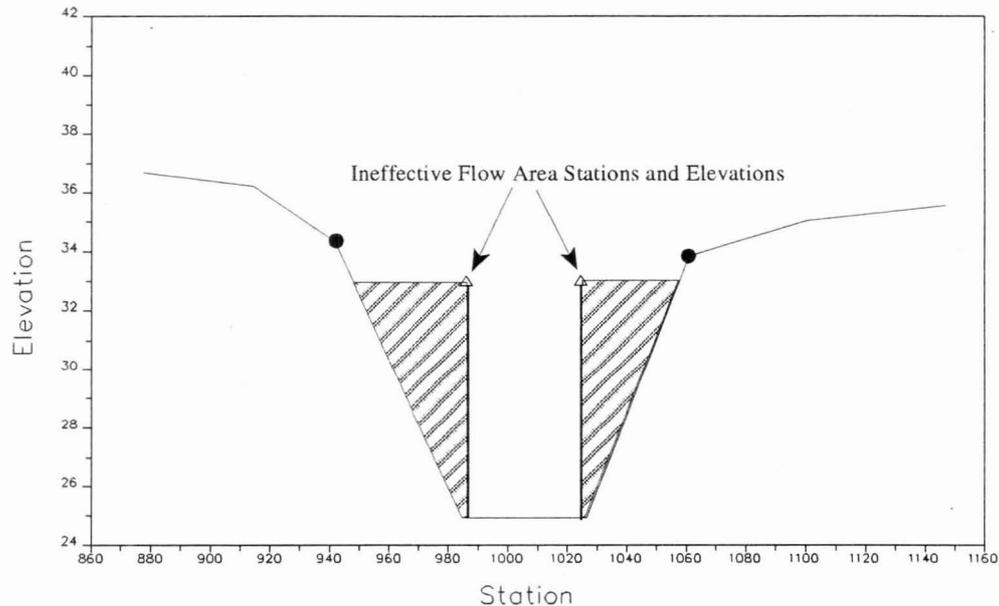


**Figure 6.3 Cross Section Layout for Culvert Method**

**Cross Section 2 of Culvert Model.** Cross Section 2 of a culvert model is located a short distance downstream from the culvert exit. It does not include any of the culvert structure or embankments, but represents the physical shape of the channel just downstream of the culvert. The shape and location of this cross section is entered separately from the Bridge and Culvert editor in the user interface (cross section editor).

The HEC-RAS ineffective area option is used to restrict the effective flow area of Cross Section 2 to the flow area around or near the edges of the culverts, until flow overtops the roadway. The ineffective flow areas are used to represent the correct amount of active flow area just downstream of the culvert. Because the flow will begin to expand as it exits the culvert, the active flow area at Section 2 is generally wider than the width of the culvert opening. The width of the active flow area will depend upon how far downstream Cross Section 2 is from the culvert exit. In general, a reasonable assumption would be to assume a 1:1 expansion rate over this short distance. With this assumption, if Cross Section 2 were 5 feet from the culvert exit, then the active flow area at Section 2 should be 10 feet wider than the culvert opening (5 feet on each side of the culvert) Figure 6.4 illustrates Cross Section 2 of a typical culvert model with a box culvert. As indicated, the cross section data does not define the culvert shape for the culvert model. On Figure 6.4, the channel bank locations are indicated by small circles and the stations and elevations of the ineffective flow areas are indicated by triangles.

Cross Sections 1 and 2 are located so as to create a channel reach downstream of the culvert in which the HEC-RAS program can accurately compute the friction losses and expansion losses downstream of the culvert.

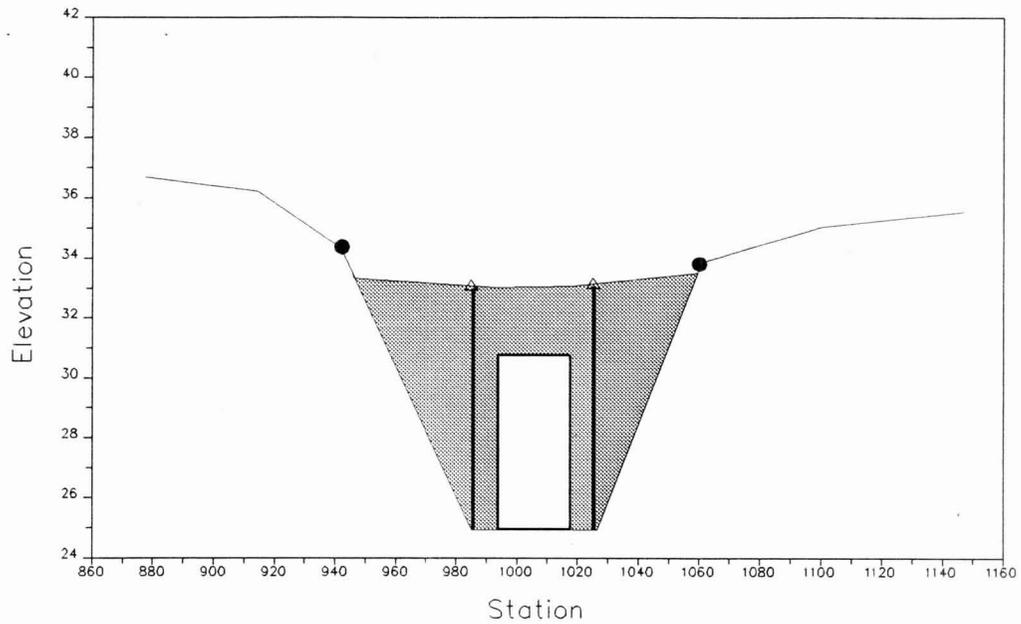


**Figure 6.4 Cross Section 2 of Culvert Model**

**Cross Section 3 of Culvert Model.** Cross Section 3 of a culvert model is located a short distance upstream of the culvert entrance, and represents the physical configuration of the upstream channel. The culvert method uses a combination of a bridge deck, Cross Sections 2 and 3, and culvert data, to describe the culvert or culverts and the roadway embankment. The culvert data, which is used to describe the roadway embankment and culvert openings, is located at a river station between Cross Sections 2 and 3.

The HEC-RAS ineffective area option is used to restrict the effective flow area of Cross Section 3 until the flow overtops the roadway. The ineffective flow area is used to represent the correct amount of active flow area just upstream of the culvert. Because the flow is contracting rapidly as it enters the culvert, the active flow area at Section 3 is generally wider than the width of the culvert opening. The width of the active flow area will depend upon how far upstream Cross Section 3 is placed from the culvert entrance. In general, a reasonable assumption would be to assume a 1:1 contraction rate over this short distance. With this assumption, if Cross Section 3 were 5 feet from the culvert entrance, then the active flow area at Section 3 should be 10 feet wider than the culvert opening (5 feet on each side of the culvert). Figure 6.5 illustrates Cross Section 3 of a typical culvert model for a box culvert, including the roadway profile defined by the bridge deck/roadway editor, and the culvert shape defined in the culvert editor. As indicated, the ground profile does not define

the culvert shape for the culvert model. On Figure 6.5, the channel bank locations are indicated by small circles and the stations and elevations of ineffective area control are indicated by triangles.



**Figure 6.5 Cross Section 3 of the Culvert Model**

**Cross Section 4 of Culvert Model.** The final cross section in the culvert model is located at a point where flow has not yet begun to contract from its unrestrained top width upstream of the culvert to its constricted top width near the culvert. This distance is normally determined assuming a one to one contraction of flow. In other words, the average rate at which flow can contract to pass through the culvert opening is assumed to be one foot laterally for every one foot traveled in the downstream direction. More detailed information on the placement of cross sections can be found in Chapter 5, "Modeling Bridges." The entire area of Cross Section 4 is usually considered to be effective in conveying flow.

## Expansion and Contraction Coefficients

User-defined coefficients are required to compute head losses due to the contraction and expansion of flows upstream and downstream of a culvert. These losses are computed by multiplying an expansion or contraction coefficient by the absolute difference in velocity head between two cross sections.

If the velocity head increases in the downstream direction, a contraction coefficient is applied. When the velocity head decreases in the downstream direction, an expansion coefficient is used. Recommended values for the expansion and contraction coefficients have been given in Chapter 3 of this manual (table 3.2). As indicated by the tabulated values, the expansion of flow causes more energy loss than the contraction. Also, energy losses increase with the abruptness of the transition. For culverts with abrupt flow transitions, the contraction and expansion loss coefficients should be increased to account for additional energy losses.

## Limitations of the Culvert Routines in HEC-RAS

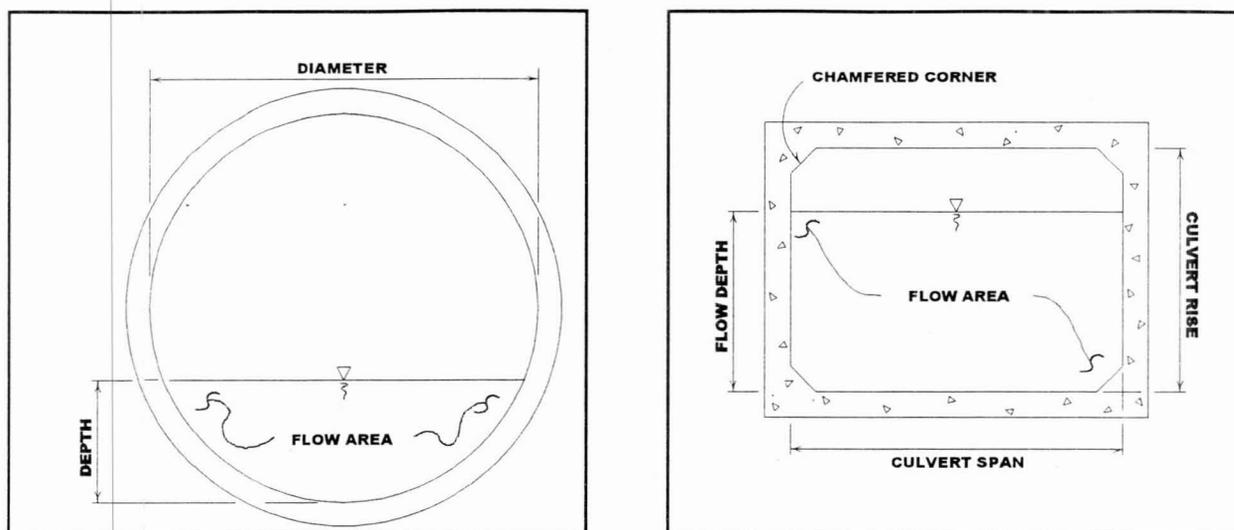
The HEC-RAS routines are limited to relatively short lengths of culverts that are considered to be constant in shape, flow rate, bottom slope, and roughness throughout the length of each culvert.

# Culvert Hydraulics

This section introduces the basic concepts of culvert hydraulics which are used in the HEC-RAS culvert routines.

## Introduction to Culvert Terminology

A **culvert** is a relatively short length of closed conduit which connects two open channel segments or bodies of water. Two of the most common types of culverts are: **circular pipe culverts**, which are circular in cross section, and **box culverts**, which are rectangular in cross section. Figure 6.6 shows an illustration of circular pipe and box culverts. In addition to box and pipe culverts, HEC-RAS has the ability to model arch; pipe arch; low profile arch; high profile arch; elliptical; and semi-circular culvert shapes.



**Figure 6.6** Cross section of a circular pipe and box culvert, respectively

Culverts are made up of an **entrance** where water flows into the culvert, a **barrel**, which is the closed conduit portion of the culvert, and an **exit**, where the water flows out of the culvert (see Figure 6.7). The total flow capacity of a culvert depends upon the characteristics of the entrance as well as the culvert barrel and exit.

The **Tailwater** at a culvert is the depth of water on the exit or downstream side of the culvert, as measured from the downstream invert of the culvert (shown as **TW** on Figure 6.7). The **invert** is the lowest point on the inside of the culvert at a particular cross section. The tailwater depth depends on the flow rate and hydraulic conditions downstream of the culvert.

**Headwater** (**HW** on Figure 6.7) is the depth from the culvert inlet invert to the energy grade line, for the cross section just upstream of the culvert (Section 3). The Headwater represents the amount of energy head required to pass a given flow through the culvert.

The **Upstream Water Surface** ( $WS_U$  on Figure 6.7) is the depth of water on the entrance or upstream side of the culvert (Section 3), as measured from the upstream invert of Cross Section 3.

The **Total Energy** at any location is equal to the elevation of the invert plus the specific energy (depth of water + velocity head) at that location. All of the culvert computations within HEC-RAS compute the total energy for the upstream end of the culvert. The upstream water surface ( $WS_U$ ) is then obtained by placing that energy into the upstream cross section and computing the water surface that corresponds to that energy for the given flow rate.

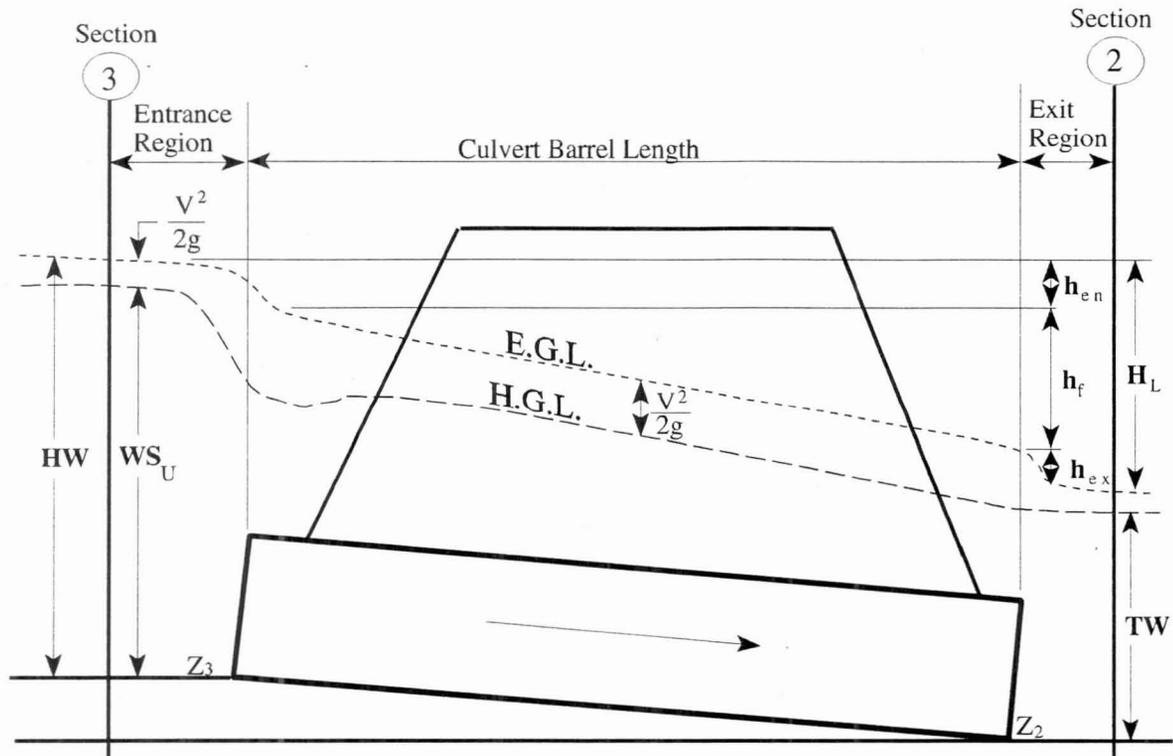
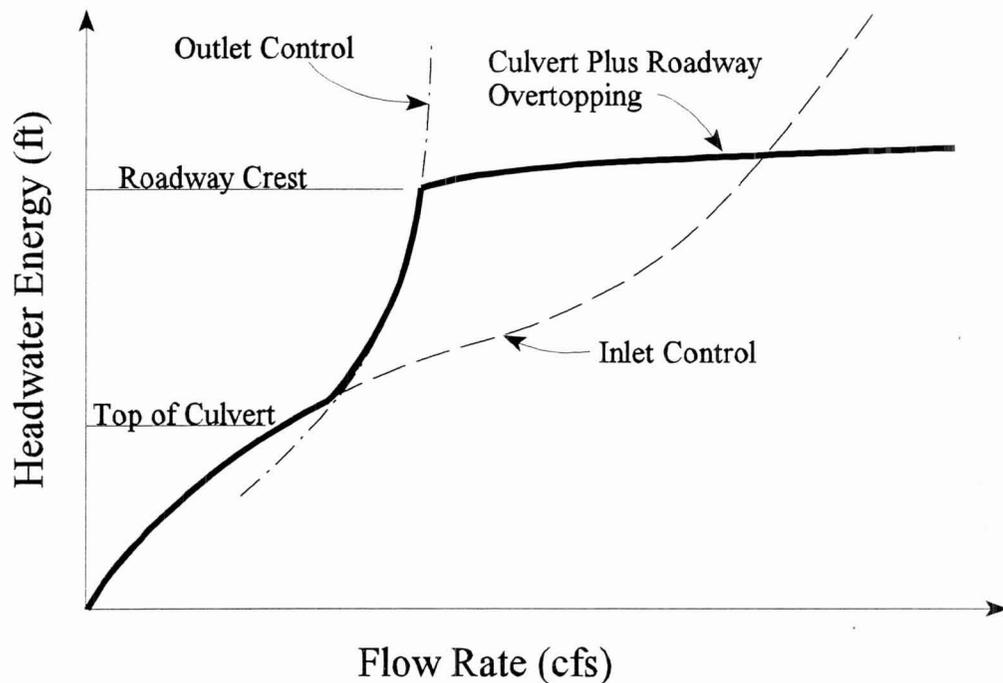


Figure 6.7 Full flowing culvert with energy and hydraulic grade lines

### Flow Analysis for Culverts

The analysis of flow in culverts is quite complicated. It is common to use the concepts of “inlet control” and “outlet control” to simplify the analysis. **Inlet control** flow occurs when the flow capacity of the culvert entrance is less than the flow capacity of the culvert barrel. The control section of a culvert operating under inlet control is located just inside the entrance of the culvert. The water surface passes through critical depth at or near this location, and the flow regime immediately downstream is supercritical. For inlet control, the required upstream energy is computed by assuming that the culvert inlet acts as a sluice gate or as a weir. Therefore, the inlet control capacity depends primarily on the geometry of the culvert entrance. **Outlet control** flow occurs when the culvert flow capacity is limited by downstream conditions (high tailwater) or by the flow carrying capacity of the culvert barrel. The HEC-RAS culvert routines compute the upstream energy required to produce a given flow rate through the culvert for inlet control conditions and for outlet control conditions (Figure 6.8). In general, the higher upstream energy “controls” and

determines the type of flow in the culvert for a given flow rate and tailwater condition. For outlet control, the required upstream energy is computed by performing an energy balance from the downstream section to the upstream section. The HEC-RAS culvert routines consider entrance losses, friction losses in the culvert barrel, and exit losses at the outlet in computing the outlet control headwater of the culvert.



**Figure 6.8 Culvert performance curve with roadway overtopping**

During the computations, if the inlet control answer comes out higher than the outlet control answer, the program will perform some additional computations to evaluate if the inlet control answer can actually persist through the culvert without pressurizing the culvert barrel. The assumption of inlet control is that the flow passes through critical depth near the culvert inlet and transitions into supercritical flow. If the flow persists as low flow through the length of the culvert barrel, then inlet control is assumed to be valid. If the flow goes through a hydraulic jump inside the barrel, and fully develops the entire area of the culvert, it is assumed that this condition will cause the pipe to pressurize over the entire length of the culvert barrel and thus act more like an orifice type of flow. If this occurs, then the outlet control answer (under the assumption of a full flowing barrel) is used instead of the inlet control answer.

## Computing Inlet Control Headwater

For inlet control conditions, the capacity of the culvert is limited by the capacity of the culvert opening, rather than by conditions farther downstream.

Extensive laboratory tests by the National Bureau of Standards, the Bureau of Public Roads, and other entities resulted in a series of equations which describe the inlet control headwater under various conditions. These equations form the basis of the FHWA inlet control nomographs shown in the "Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts" publication [FHWA, 1985]. The FHWA inlet control equations are used by the HEC-RAS culvert routines in computing the upstream energy. The inlet control equations were developed for submerged and unsubmerged inlet conditions. These equations are:

### Unsubmerged Inlet:

$$\frac{HW_i}{D} = \frac{H_c}{D} + K \left[ \frac{Q}{AD^{0.5}} \right]^M - 0.5S \quad (6-1)$$

$$\frac{HW_i}{D} = K \left[ \frac{Q}{AD^{0.5}} \right]^M \quad (6-2)$$

### Submerged Inlet:

$$\frac{HW_i}{D} = c \left[ \frac{Q}{AD^{0.5}} \right]^2 + Y - 0.5S \quad (6-3)$$

where: $Hw_i$	=	Headwater energy depth above the invert of the culvert inlet, feet
$D$	=	Interior height of the culvert barrel, feet
$H_c$	=	Specific head at critical depth ( $d_c + V_c^2/2g$ ), feet
$Q$	=	Discharge through the culvert, cfs.
$A$	=	Full cross sectional area of the culvert barrel, feet <sup>2</sup>
$S$	=	Culvert barrel slope, feet/feet
$K, M, c, Y$	=	Equation constants, which vary depending on culvert shape and entrance conditions

Note that there are two forms of the unsubmerged inlet equation. The first form (equation 6-1) is more correct from a theoretical standpoint, but form two (equation 6-2) is easier to apply and is the only documented form of equation for some of the culvert types. Both forms of the equations are used in the HEC-RAS software, depending on the type of culvert.

The nomographs in the FHWA report are considered to be accurate to within about 10 percent in determining the required inlet control headwater [FHWA, 1985]. The nomographs were computed assuming a culvert slope of 0.02 feet per foot (2 percent). For different culvert slopes, the nomographs are less accurate because inlet control headwater changes with slope. However, the culvert routines in HEC-RAS considers the slope in computing the inlet control energy. Therefore, the culvert routines in HEC-RAS should be more accurate than the nomographs, especially for slopes other than 0.02 feet per foot.

### Computing Outlet Control Headwater

For outlet control flow, the required upstream energy to pass the given flow must be computed considering several conditions within the culvert and downstream of the culvert. Figure 6.9 illustrates the logic of the outlet control computations. HEC-RAS use's Bernoulli's equation in order to compute the change in energy through the culvert under outlet control conditions. The outlet control computations are energy based. The equation used by the program is the following:

$$Z_3 + Y_3 + \frac{\alpha_3 V_3^2}{2g} = Z_2 + Y_2 + \frac{\alpha_2 V_2^2}{2g} + H_L \quad (6-4)$$

where: $Z_3$	=	Upstream invert elevation of the culvert
$Y_3$	=	The depth of water above the upstream culvert inlet
$V_3$	=	The average velocity upstream of the culvert
$\alpha_3$	=	The velocity weighting coefficient upstream of the culvert
$g$	=	The acceleration of gravity
$Z_2$	=	Downstream invert elevation of the culvert
$Y_2$	=	The depth of water above the downstream culvert inlet
$V_2$	=	The average velocity downstream of the culvert
$\alpha_2$	=	The velocity weighting coefficient downstream of the culvert
$H_L$	=	The total energy loss through the culvert (from section 2 to 3)

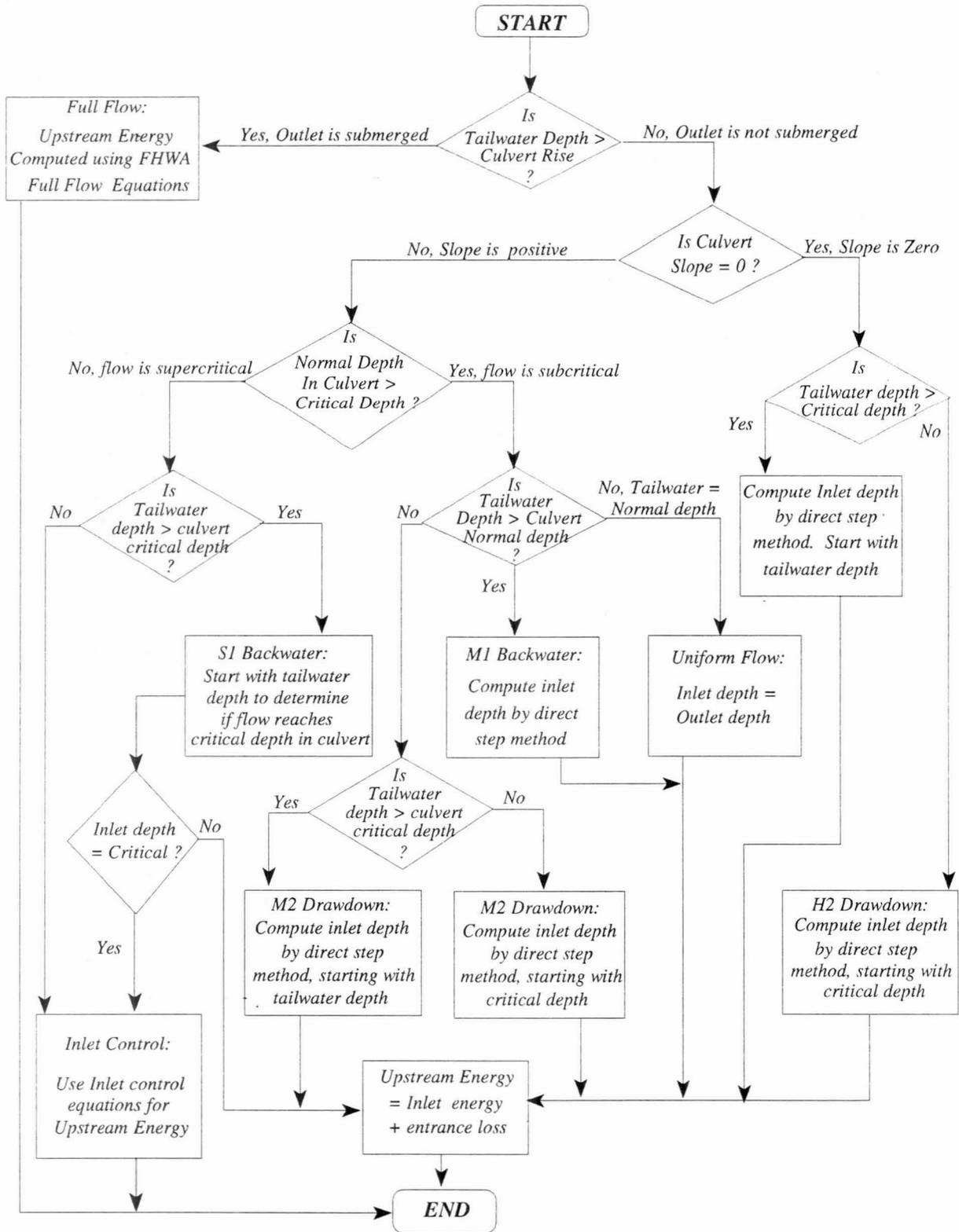


Figure 6.9 Flow Chart for Outlet Control Computations

## FHWA Full Flow Equations

For culverts flowing full, the total **head loss**, or energy loss, through the culvert is measured in feet (or meters). The head loss,  $H_L$ , is computed using the following formula:

$$H_L = h_{en} + h_f + h_{ex} \quad (6-5)$$

where:  $h_{en}$  = entrance loss (feet or meters)

$h_f$  = friction loss (feet or meters)

$h_{ex}$  = exit loss (feet or meters)

The friction loss in the culvert is computed using Manning's formula, which is expressed as follows:

$$h_f = L \left( \frac{Qn}{1.486AR^{2/3}} \right)^2 \quad (6-6)$$

where:  $h_f$  = friction loss (feet)

$L$  = culvert length (feet)

$Q$  = flow rate in the culvert (cfs)

$n$  = Manning's roughness coefficient

$A$  = area of flow (square feet)

$R$  = hydraulic radius (feet)

The entrance energy loss is computed as a coefficient times the velocity head inside the culvert at the upstream end. The exit energy loss is computed as a coefficient times the change in velocity head from just inside the culvert, at the downstream end, to outside of the culvert at the downstream end. The exit and entrance loss coefficients are described in the next section of this chapter.

## Direct Step Water Surface Profile Computations

For culverts flowing partially full, the water surface profile in the culvert is computed using the direct step method. This method is very efficient, because no iterations are required to determine the flow depth for each step. The water surface profile is computed for small increments of depth (usually between 0.01 and 0.05 feet). If the flow depth equals the height of the culvert before the profile reaches the upstream end of the culvert, the friction loss through the remainder of the culvert is computed assuming full flow.

The first step in the direct step method is to compute the exit loss and establish a starting water surface inside the culvert. If the tailwater depth is below critical depth inside the culvert, then the starting condition inside the culvert is assumed to be critical depth. If the tailwater depth is greater than critical depth in the culvert, then an energy balance is performed from the downstream cross section to inside of the culvert. This energy balance evaluates the change in energy by the following equation.

$$Z_C + Y_C + \frac{\alpha_C V_C^2}{2g} = Z_2 + Y_2 + \frac{\alpha_2 V_2^2}{2g} + h_{ex} \quad (6-7)$$

- where:  $Z_C$  = Elevation of the culvert invert at the downstream end
- $Y_C$  = Depth of flow inside culvert at downstream end
- $V_C$  = Velocity inside culvert at downstream end
- $Z_2$  = Invert elevation of the cross section downstream of culvert (Cross Section 2 from Figure 6.7)
- $Y_2$  = Depth of water at Cross Section 2
- $V_2$  = Average velocity of flow at Section 2

Once a water surface is computed inside the culvert at the downstream end, the next step is to perform the direct step backwater calculations through the culvert. The direct step backwater calculations will continue until a water surface and energy are obtained inside the culvert at the upstream end. The final step is to add an entrance loss to the computed energy to obtain the upstream energy outside of the culvert at Section 3 (Figure 6.7). The water surface outside the culvert is then obtained by computing the water surface at Section 3 that corresponds to the calculated energy for the given flow rate.

## Normal Depth of Flow in the Culvert

**Normal depth** is the depth at which uniform flow will occur in an open channel. In other words, for a uniform channel of infinite length, carrying a constant flow rate, flow in the channel would be at a constant depth at all points along the channel, and this would be the normal depth.

Normal depth often represents a good approximation of the actual depth of flow within a channel segment. The program computes normal depth using an iterative approach to arrive at a value which satisfies Manning's equation:

$$Q = \frac{1.486}{n} AR^{2/3} S^{1/2} \quad (6-8)$$

- where:  $Q$  = flow rate in the channel (cfs)
- $n$  = Manning's roughness coefficient
- $A$  = area of flow (square feet)
- $R$  = hydraulic radius (feet)
- $S$  = slope of energy grade line (feet per foot)

If the normal depth is greater than the culvert rise (from invert to top of the culvert), the program sets the normal depth equal to the culvert rise.

## Critical Depth of Flow in the Culvert

**Critical depth** occurs when the flow in a channel has a minimum specific energy. **Specific energy** refers to the sum of the depth of flow and the velocity head. Critical depth depends on the channel shape and flow rate.

The depth of flow at the culvert outlet is assumed to be equal to critical depth for culverts operating under outlet control with low tailwater. Critical depth may also influence the inlet control headwater for unsubmerged conditions.

The culvert routines compute critical depth in the culvert by an iterative procedure, which arrives at a value satisfying the following equation:

$$\frac{Q^2}{g} = \frac{A^3}{T} \quad (6-9)$$

where: $Q$	=	flow rate in the channel (cfs)
$g$	=	acceleration due to gravity (32.2 ft/sec <sup>2</sup> )
$A$	=	cross-sectional area of flow (square feet)
$T$	=	top width of flow (feet)

Critical depth for box culverts can be solved directly with the following equation [AISI, 1980]:

$$y_c = \sqrt[3]{\frac{q^2}{g}} \quad (6-10)$$

where: $y_c$	=	critical depth (feet)
$q$	=	unit discharge per linear foot of width (cfs/ft)
$g$	=	acceleration due to gravity (32.2 ft/sec <sup>2</sup> )

## Horizontal and Adverse Culvert Slopes

The culvert routines also allow for horizontal and adverse culvert slopes. The primary difference is that normal depth is not computed for a horizontal or adverse culvert. Outlet control is either computed by the direct step method for an unsubmerged outlet or the full flow equation for a submerged outlet.

## Weir Flow

The first solution through the culvert is under the assumption that all of the flow is going through the culvert barrels. Once a final upstream energy is obtained, the program checks to see if the energy elevation is greater than the minimum elevation for weir flow to occur. If the computed energy is less than the minimum elevation for weir flow, then the solution is final. If the computed energy is greater than the minimum elevation for weir flow, the program performs an iterative procedure to determine the amount of flow over the weir and flow through the culverts. During this iterative procedure, the program recalculates both inlet and outlet control culvert solutions for each estimate of the culvert flow. In general the higher of the two is used for the culvert portion of the solution, unless the program feels that inlet control can not be maintained. The program will continue to iterate until it finds a flow split that produces the same upstream energy (within the error tolerance) for both weir and culvert flow.

## Supercritical and Mixed Flow Regime Inside of Culvert

The culvert routines allow for supercritical and mixed flow regimes inside the culvert barrel. During outlet control computations, the program first makes a subcritical flow pass through the culvert, from downstream to upstream. If the culvert barrel is on a steep slope, the program may default to critical depth inside of the culvert barrel. If this occurs, a supercritical forewater calculation is made from upstream to downstream, starting with the assumption of critical depth at the culvert inlet. During the forewater calculations, the program is continually checking the specific force of the flow, and comparing it to the specific force of the flow from the subcritical flow pass. If the specific force of the subcritical flow is larger than the supercritical answer, the program assumes that a hydraulic jump will occur at that location. Otherwise, a supercritical flow profile is calculated all the way through and out of the culvert barrel.

## Culvert Data and Coefficients

This section describes the basic data that are required for each culvert. Discussions include how to estimate the various coefficients that are required in order to perform inlet control, outlet control, and weir flow analyses. The culvert data are entered on the Culvert Data Editor in the user interface. Discussions about the culvert data editor can be found in Chapter 6 of the HEC-RAS User's Manual.

### Culvert Shape and Size

The shape of the culvert is defined by picking one of the eight available shapes. These shapes include: circular; box (rectangular); arch; pipe arch; elliptical; high profile arch; low profile arch; and semi-circular. The size of the culvert is defined by entering a rise and span. The rise refers to the maximum inside height of the culvert, while the span represents the maximum inside width. Both the circular and semi-circular culverts are defined by entering a diameter.

The inside height (rise) of a culvert opening is important not only in determining the total flow area of the culvert, but also in determining whether the headwater and tailwater elevations are adequate to submerge the inlet or outlet of the culvert.

Most box culverts have **chamfered** corners on the inside, as indicated in Figure 6.6. The chamfers are ignored by the culvert routines in computing the cross-sectional area of the culvert opening. Some manufacturers' literature contains the true cross-sectional area for each size of box culvert, considering the reduction in area caused by the chamfered corners. If you wish to consider

the loss in area due to the chamfers, then you should reduce the span of the culvert. You should not reduce the rise of the culvert, because the program uses the culvert rise to determine the submergence of the culvert entrance and outlet.

### **Culvert Length**

The culvert length is measured in feet (or meters) along the center-line of the culvert. The culvert length is used to determine the friction loss in the culvert barrel and the slope of the culvert.

### **Number of Identical Barrels**

The user can specify up to 25 identical barrels. To use the identical barrel option, all of the culverts must be identical; they must have the same cross-sectional shape and size, chart and scale number, length, entrance and exit loss coefficients, upstream and downstream invert elevations, and roughness coefficients. If more than one barrel is specified, the program automatically divides the flow rate equally among the culvert barrels and then analyzes only a single culvert barrel. The hydraulics of each barrel is assumed to be exactly the same as the one analyzed.

### **Manning's Roughness Coefficient**

The Manning's roughness coefficient must be entered for each culvert type. HEC-RAS uses Manning's equation to compute friction losses in the culvert barrel, as described in the section entitled "Culvert Hydraulics" of this chapter. Suggested values for Manning's n-value are listed in Table 6.1 and Table 6.2, and in many hydraulics reference books. Roughness coefficients should be adjusted according to individual judgment of the culvert condition.

**Table 6.1**  
**Manning's 'n' for Closed Conduits Flowing Partly Full**

Type of Channel and Description	Minimum	Normal	Maximum
<b>Brass, smooth:</b>	<b>0.009</b>	<b>0.010</b>	<b>0.013</b>
<b>Steel:</b>			
Lockbar and welded	0.010	0.012	0.014
Riveted and spiral	0.013	0.016	0.017
<b>Cast Iron:</b>			
Coated	0.010	0.013	0.014
Uncoated	0.011	0.014	0.016
<b>Wrought Iron:</b>			
Black	0.012	0.014	0.015
Galvanized	0.013	0.016	0.017
<b>Corrugated Metal:</b>			
Subdrain	0.017	0.019	0.021
Storm Drain	0.021	0.024	0.030
<b>Lucite:</b>	<b>0.008</b>	<b>0.009</b>	<b>0.010</b>
<b>Glass:</b>	<b>0.009</b>	<b>0.010</b>	<b>0.013</b>
<b>Cement:</b>			
Neat, surface	0.010	0.011	0.013
Mortar	0.011	0.013	0.015
<b>Concrete:</b>			
Culvert, straight and free of debris	0.010	0.011	0.013
Culvert with bends, connections, and some debris	0.011	0.013	0.014
Finished	0.011	0.012	0.014
Sewer with manholes, inlet, etc., straight	0.013	0.015	0.017
Unfinished, steel form	0.012	0.013	0.014
Unfinished, smooth wood form	0.012	0.014	0.016
Unfinished, rough wood form	0.015	0.017	0.020
<b>Wood:</b>			
Stave	0.010	0.012	0.014
Laminated, treated	0.015	0.017	0.020
<b>Clay:</b>			
Common drainage tile	0.011	0.013	0.017
Vitrified sewer	0.011	0.014	0.017
Vitrified sewer with manholes, inlet, etc.	0.013	0.015	0.017
Vitrified Subdrain with open joint	0.014	0.016	0.018
<b>Brickwork:</b>			
Glazed	0.011	0.013	0.015
Lined with cement mortar	0.012	0.015	0.017
Sanitary sewers coated with sewage slime with bends and connections	0.012	0.013	0.016
Paved invert, sewer, smooth bottom	0.016	0.019	0.020
Rubble masonry, cemented	0.018	0.025	0.030

[Chow, 1959]

**Table 6.2**  
**Manning's 'n' for Corrugated Metal Pipe**

Type of Pipe and Diameter	Unpaved	25% Paved	Fully Paved
<b>Annular 2.67 x ½ in. (all diameters)</b>	<b>0.024</b>	<b>0.021</b>	<b>0.021</b>
<b>Helical 1.50 x ¼ in.:</b>			
8 inch diameter	0.012		
10 inch diameter	0.014		
<b>Helical 2.67 x ½ in.:</b>			
12 inch diameter	0.011		
18 inch diameter	0.014		
24 inch diameter	0.016	0.015	0.012
36 inch diameter	0.019	0.017	0.012
48 inch diameter	0.020	0.020	0.012
60 inch diameter	0.021	0.019	0.012
Annular 3 x 1 in. (all diameters)	0.027	0.023	0.012
<b>Helical 3 x 1 in.:</b>			
48 inch diameter	0.023	0.020	0.012
54 inch diameter	0.023	0.020	0.012
60 inch diameter	0.024	0.021	0.012
66 inch diameter	0.025	0.022	0.012
72 inch diameter	0.026	0.022	0.012
78 inch & larger	0.027	0.023	0.012
<b>Corrugations 6 x 2 in.:</b>			
60 inch diameter	0.033	0.028	
72 inch diameter	0.032	0.027	
120 inch diameter	0.030	0.026	
180 inch diameter	0.028	0.024	

[AISI, 1980]

### Entrance Loss Coefficient

Entrance losses are computed as a function of the **velocity head** inside the culvert at the upstream end. The entrance loss for the culvert is computed as:

$$h_{en} = k_{en} \frac{V_{en}^2}{2g} \quad (6-11)$$

where:  $h_{en}$  = Energy loss due to the entrance

$k_{en}$  = Entrance loss coefficient

$V_{en}$  = Flow velocity inside the culvert at the entrance

$g$  = Acceleration due to gravity

The velocity head is multiplied by the **entrance loss coefficient** to estimate the amount of energy lost as flow enters the culvert. A higher value for the coefficient gives a higher head loss. Entrance loss coefficients are shown in Tables 6.3 and 6.4. These coefficients were taken from the Federal Highway Administration's "Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts" manual (FHWA, 1985). Table 6.3 indicates that values of the entrance loss coefficient range from 0.2 to about 0.9 for pipe-arch and pipe culverts. As shown in Table 6.4, entrance losses can vary from about 0.2 to about 0.7 times the velocity head for box culverts. For a sharp-edged culvert entrance with no rounding, 0.5 is recommended. For a well-rounded entrance, 0.2 is appropriate.

**Table 6.3**  
**Entrance Loss Coefficient for Pipe Culverts**

Type of Structure and Design of Entrance	Coefficient, $k_{en}$
<b>Concrete Pipe Projecting from Fill (no headwall):</b>	
Socket end of pipe	0.2
Square cut end of pipe	0.5
<b>Concrete Pipe with Headwall or Headwall and Wingwalls:</b>	
Socket end of pipe (grooved end)	0.2
Square cut end of pipe	0.5
Rounded entrance, with rounding radius = 1/12 of diameter	0.2
<b>Concrete Pipe:</b>	
Mitered to conform to fill slope	0.7
End section conformed to fill slope	0.5
Beveled edges, 33.7 or 45 degree bevels	0.2
Side slope tapered inlet	0.2
<b>Corrugated Metal Pipe or Pipe-Arch:</b>	
Projected from fill (no headwall)	0.9
Headwall or headwall and wingwalls square edge	0.5
Mitered to conform to fill slope	0.7
End section conformed to fill slope	0.5
Beveled edges, 33.7 or 45 degree bevels	0.2
Side slope tapered inlet	0.2

**Table 6.4**  
**Entrance Loss Coefficient for Reinforced Concrete Box Culverts**

Type of Structure and Design of Entrance	Coefficient, $k_{en}$
<b>Headwall Parallel to Embankment (no wingwalls):</b>	
Square-edged on three edges	0.5
Three edges rounded to radius of 1/12 barrel dimension	0.2
<b>Wingwalls at 30 to 75 degrees to Barrel:</b>	
Square-edge at crown	0.4
Top corner rounded to radius of 1/12 barrel dimension	0.2
<b>Wingwalls at 10 to 25 degrees to Barrel:</b>	
Square-edge at crown	0.5
<b>Wingwalls parallel (extension of sides):</b>	
Square-edge at crown	0.7
Side or slope tapered inlet	0.2

### Exit Loss Coefficient

Exit losses are computed as a coefficient times the change in velocity head from just inside the culvert, at the downstream end, to the cross section just downstream of the culvert. The equation for computing exit losses is as follows:

$$h_{ex} = k_{ex} \left( \frac{\alpha_{ex} V_{ex}^2}{2g} - \frac{\alpha_2 V_2^2}{2g} \right) \quad (6-12)$$

where:  $h_{ex}$  = Energy loss due to exit

$k_{ex}$  = Exit loss coefficient

$V_{ex}$  = Velocity inside of culvert at exit

$V_2$  = Velocity outside of culvert at downstream cross section

For a sudden expansion of flow, such as in a typical culvert, the exit loss coefficient ( $k_{ex}$ ) is normally set to 1.0 (FHWA, 1985). In general, exit loss coefficients can vary between 0.3 and 1.0. The exit loss coefficient should be reduced as the transition becomes less abrupt.

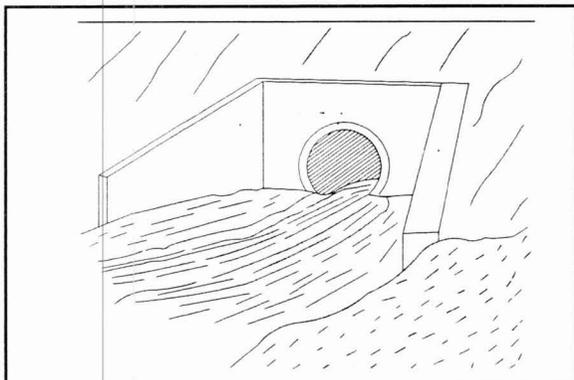
## FHWA Chart and Scale Numbers

The FHWA chart and scale numbers are required input data. The FHWA chart number and scale number refer to a series of nomographs published by the Bureau of Public Roads (now called the Federal Highway Administration) in 1965 [BPR, 1965], which allowed the inlet control headwater to be computed for different types of culverts operating under a wide range of flow conditions. These nomographs and others constructed using the original methods were republished [FHWA, 1985]. The tables in this chapter are copies of the information from the 1985 FHWA publication.

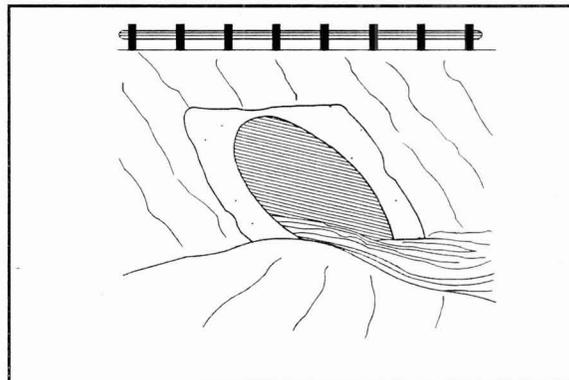
Each of the FHWA charts has from two to four separate scales representing different culvert entrance designs. The appropriate FHWA chart number and scale number should be chosen according to the type of culvert and culvert entrance. Table 6.5 may be used for guidance in selecting the FHWA chart number and scale number.

Chart numbers 1, 2, and 3 apply only to pipe culverts. Similarly, chart numbers 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, and 13 apply only to box culverts. The HEC-RAS program checks the chart number to assure that it is appropriate for the type of culvert being analyzed. HEC-RAS also checks the value of the Scale Number to assure that it is available for the given chart number. For example, a scale number of 4 would be available for chart 11, but not for chart 12.

Figures 6.10 through 6.19 can be used as guidance in determining which chart and scale numbers to select for various types of culvert inlets.



**Figure 6.10**  
Culvert Inlet with Headwall and Wingwalls



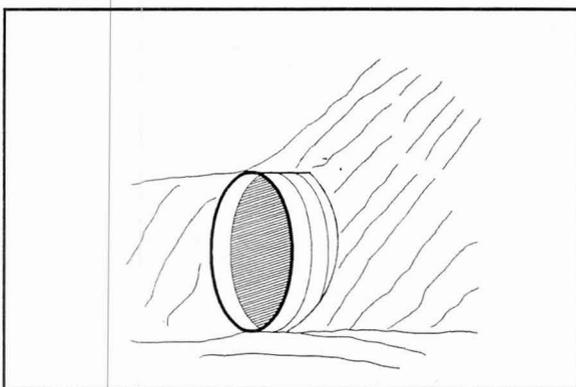
**Figure 6.11**  
Culvert Inlet Mitered to Conform to Slope

**Table 6.5**  
**FHWA Chart and Scale Numbers for Culverts**

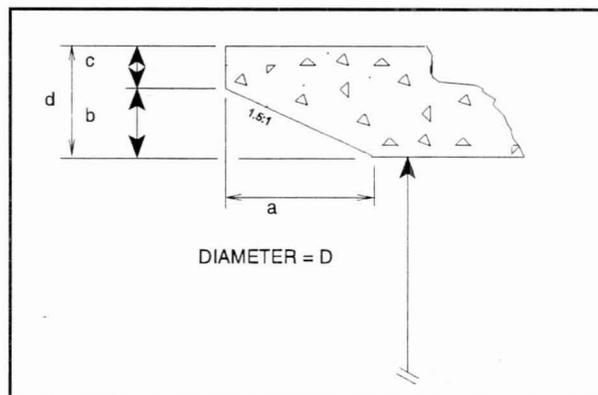
Chart Number	Scale Number	Description
<b>1</b>		<b>Concrete Pipe Culvert</b>
	1	Square edge entrance with headwall (See Figure 6.10)
	2	Groove end entrance with headwall (See Figure 6.10)
	3	Groove end entrance, pipe projecting from fill (See Figure 6.12)
<b>2</b>		<b>Corrugated Metal Pipe Culvert</b>
	1	Headwall (See Figure 6.10)
	2	Mitered to conform to slope (See Figure 6.11)
	3	Pipe projecting from fill (See Figure 6.12)
<b>3</b>		<b>Concrete Pipe Culvert; Beveled Ring Entrance (See Figure 6.13)</b>
	1(A)	Small bevel: $b/D = 0.042$ ; $a/D = 0.063$ ; $c/D = 0.042$ ; $d/D = 0.083$
	2(B)	Large bevel: $b/D = 0.083$ ; $a/D = 0.125$ ; $c/D = 0.042$ ; $d/D = 0.125$
<b>8</b>		<b>Box Culvert with Flared Wingwalls (See Figure 6.14)</b>
	1	Wingwalls flared 30 to 75 degrees
	2	Wingwalls flared 90 or 15 degrees
	3	Wingwalls flared 0 degrees (sides extended straight)
<b>9</b>		<b>Box Culvert with Flared Wingwalls and Inlet Top Edge Bevel (See Figure 6.15)</b>
	1	Wingwall flared 45 degrees; inlet top edge bevel = $0.43D$
	2	Wingwall flared 18 to 33.7 degrees; inlet top edge bevel = $0.083D$
<b>10</b>		<b>Box Culvert; 90-degree Headwall; Chamfered or Beveled Inlet Edges (See Figure 6.16)</b>
	1	Inlet edges chamfered 3/4-inch
	2	Inlet edges beveled 1/2-in/ft at 45 degrees (1:1)
	3	Inlet edges beveled 1-in/ft at 33.7 degrees (1:1.5)
<b>11</b>		<b>Box Culvert; Skewed Headwall; Chamfered or Beveled Inlet Edges (See Figure 6.17)</b>
	1	Headwall skewed 45 degrees; inlet edges chamfered 3/4-inch
	2	Headwall skewed 30 degrees; inlet edges chamfered 3/4-inch
	3	Headwall skewed 15 degrees; inlet edges chamfered 3/4-inch
	4	Headwall skewed 10 to 45 degrees; inlet edges beveled
<b>12</b>		<b>Box Culvert; Non-Offset Flared Wingwalls; 3/4-inch Chamfer at Top of Inlet (See Figure 6.18)</b>
	1	Wingwalls flared 45 degrees (1:1); inlet not skewed
	2	Wingwalls flared 18.4 degrees (3:1); inlet not skewed
	3	Wingwalls flared 18.4 degrees (3:1); inlet skewed 30 degrees
<b>13</b>		<b>Box Culvert; Offset Flared Wingwalls; Beveled Edge at Top of Inlet (See Figure 6.19)</b>
	1	Wingwalls flared 45 degrees (1:1); inlet top edge bevel = $0.042D$
	2	Wingwalls flared 33.7 degrees (1.5:1); inlet top edge bevel = $0.083D$
	3	Wingwalls flared 18.4 degrees (3:1); inlet top edge bevel = $0.083D$
<b>16-19</b>		<b>Corrugated Metal Box Culvert</b>
	1	90 degree headwall
	2	Thick wall Projecting
	3	Thin wall projecting
<b>29</b>		<b>Horizontal Ellipse; Concrete</b>
	1	Square edge with headwall
	2	Grooved end with headwall
	3	Grooved end projecting
<b>30</b>		<b>Vertical Ellipse; Concrete</b>
	1	Square edge with headwall
	2	Grooved end with headwall
	3	Grooved end projecting
<b>34</b>		<b>Pipe Arch; 18" Corner Radius; Corrugated Metal</b>
	1	90 Degree headwall
	2	Mitered to slope
	3	Projecting

**Table 6.5 (Continued)**  
**FHWA Chart and Scale Numbers for Culverts**

Chart Number	Scale Number	Description
35		Pipe Arch; 18" Corner Radius; Corrugated Metal
	1	Projecting
	2	No bevels
	3	33.7 degree bevels
36		Pipe Arch; 31" Corner Radius; Corrugated Metal
	1	Projecting
	2	No bevels
	3	33.7 degree bevels
41-43		Arch; low-profile arch; high-profile arch; semi circle; Corrugated Metal
	1	90 degree headwall
	2	Mitered to slope
	3	Thin wall projecting
55		Circular Culvert
	1	Smooth tapered inlet throat
	2	Rough tapered inlet throat
56		Elliptical Inlet Face
	1	Tapered inlet; Beveled edges
	2	Tapered inlet; Square edges
	3	Tapered inlet; Thin edge projecting
57		Rectangular
	1	Tapered inlet throat
58		Rectangular Concrete
	1	Side tapered; Less favorable edges
	2	Side tapered; More favorable edges
59		Rectangular Concrete
	1	Slope tapered; Less favorable edges
	2	Slope tapered; More favorable edges



**Figure 6.12**  
**Culvert Inlet Projecting from Fill**



**Figure 6.13**  
**Culvert Inlet with Beveled Ring Entrance**

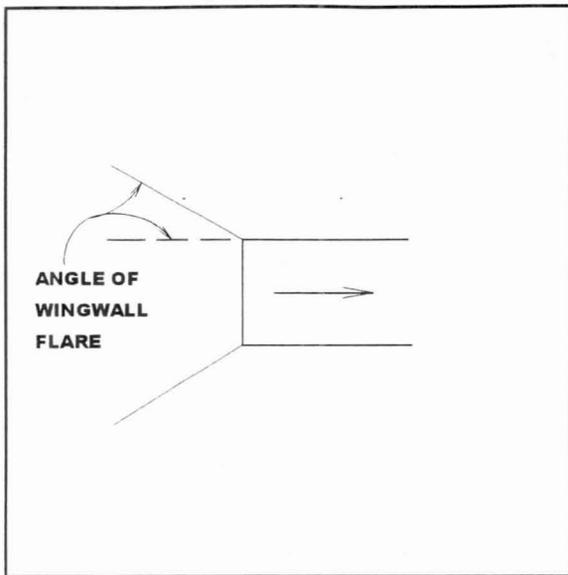


Figure 6.14  
Flared Wingwalls (Chart 8)

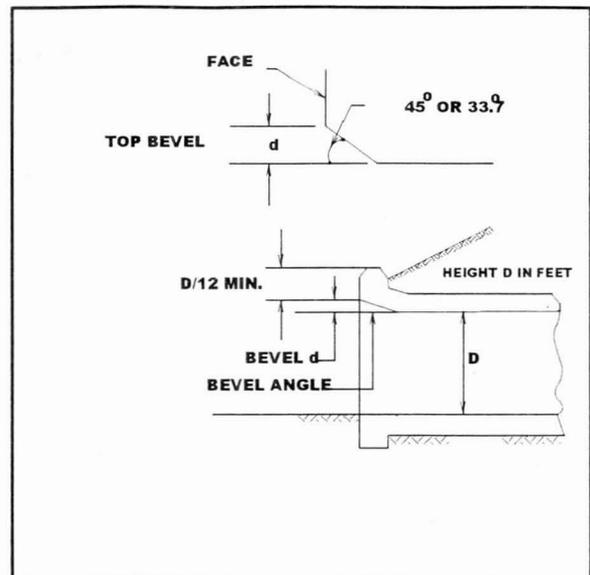


Figure 6.15  
Inlet Top Edge Bevel (Chart 9)

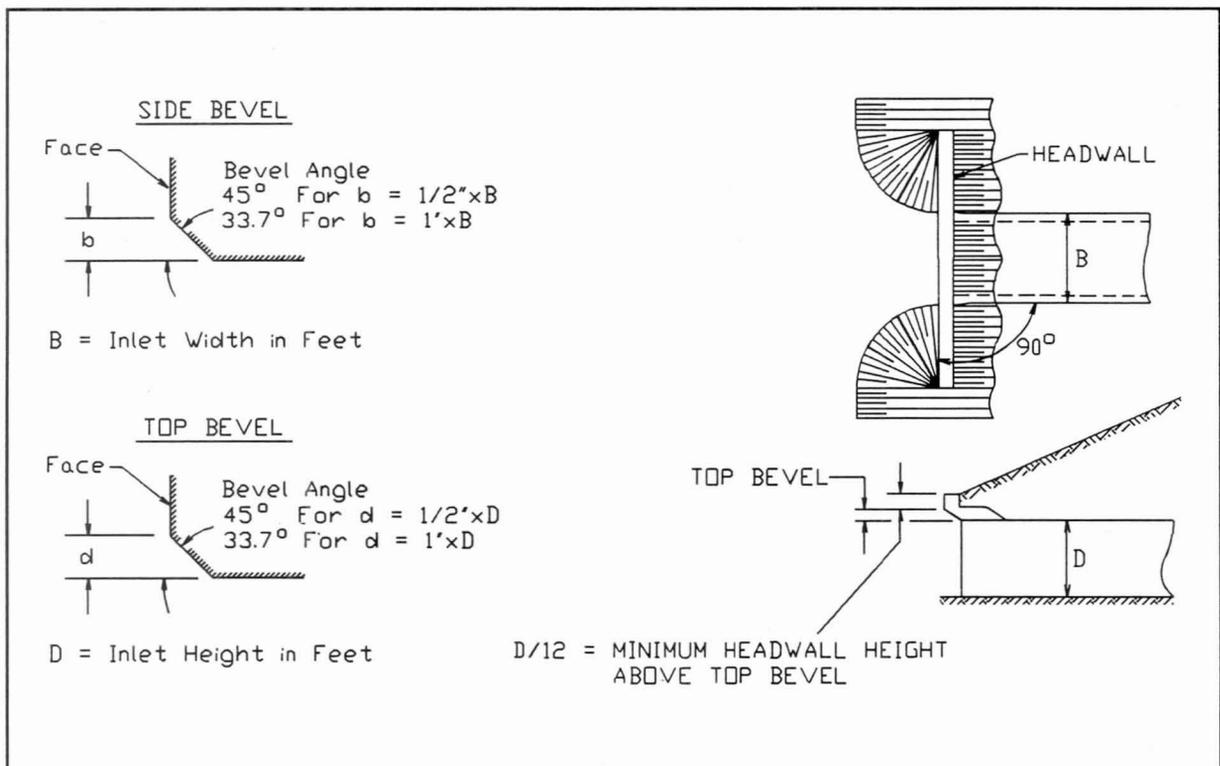


Figure 6.16  
Inlet Side and Top Edge Bevel with Ninety Degree Headwall (Chart 10)

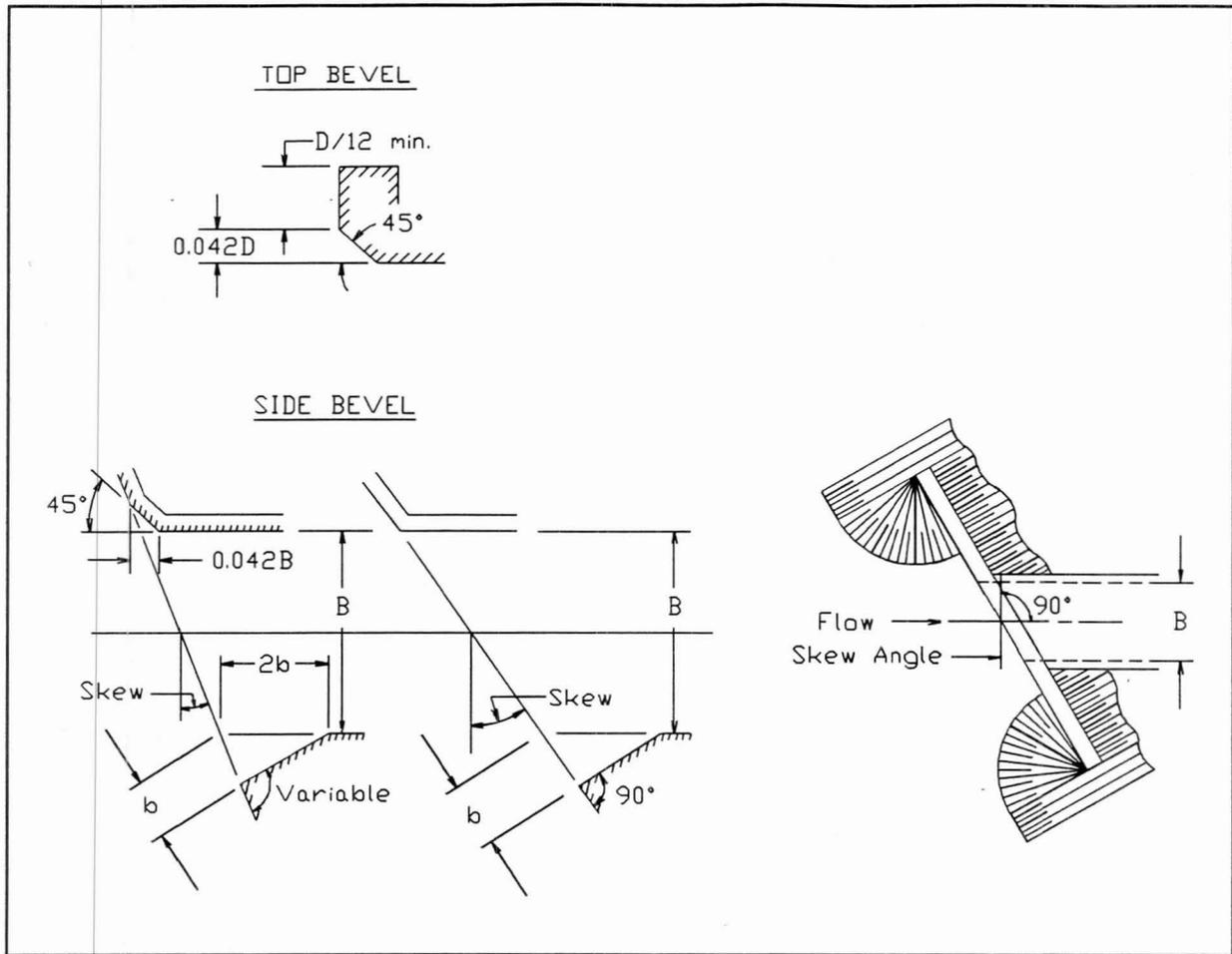


Figure 6.17  
Inlet Side and Top Edge Bevel with Skewed Headwall (Chart 11)

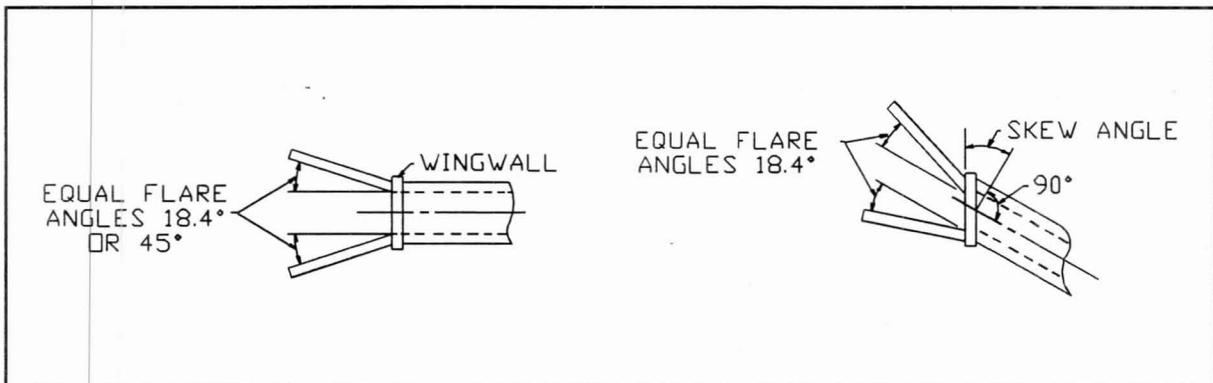


Figure 6.18  
Non-Offset Flared Wingwalls (Chart 12)

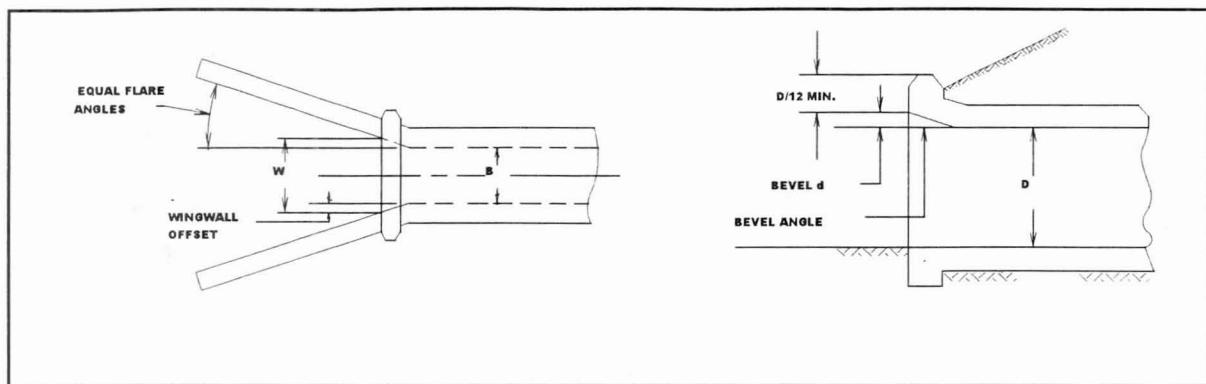


Figure 6.19  
Offset Flared Wingwalls (Chart 13)

### Culvert Invert Elevations

The culvert flow-line slope is the average drop in elevation per foot of length along the culvert. For example, if the culvert flow-line drops 1 foot in a length of 100 feet, then the culvert flow-line slope is 0.01 feet per foot. Culvert flow-line slopes are sometimes expressed in percent. A slope of 0.01 feet per foot is the same as a one percent slope.

The culvert slope is computed from the upstream invert elevation, the downstream invert elevation, and the culvert length. The following equation is used to compute the culvert slope:

$$S = \frac{ELCHU - ELCHD}{\sqrt{CULVLN^2 - (ELCHU - ELCHD)^2}} \quad (6-13)$$

where:  $ELCHU$  = Elevation of the culvert invert upstream  
 $ELCHD$  = Elevation of the culvert invert downstream  
 $CULVLN$  = Length of the culvert

The slope of the culvert is used by the program to compute the normal depth of flow in the culvert under outlet control conditions.

## Weir Flow Coefficient

Weir flow over a roadway is computed in the culvert routines using exactly the same methods used in the HEC-RAS bridge routines. The standard weir equation is used:

$$Q = CLH^{1.5} \quad (6-14)$$

where:  $Q$  = flow rate  
 $C$  = weir flow coefficient  
 $L$  = weir length  
 $H$  = weir energy head

For flow over a typical bridge deck, a weir coefficient of 2.6 is recommended. A weir coefficient of 3.0 is recommended for flow over elevated roadway approach embankments. More detailed information on weir discharge coefficients and how weirs are modeled in HEC-RAS may be found in Chapter 5 of this manual, "Modeling Bridges." Also, information on how to enter a bridge deck and weir coefficients can be found in Chapter 6 of the HEC-RAS User's Manual, "Editing and Entering Geometric Data."

## CHAPTER 7

# Modeling Multiple Bridge and/or Culvert Openings

The HEC-RAS program has the ability to model multiple bridge and/or culvert openings at a single location. A common example of this type of situation is a bridge opening over the main stream and a relief bridge (or group of culverts) in the overbank area. The HEC-RAS program is capable of modeling up to seven openings at any one location.

### Contents

- General Modeling Guidelines
- Multiple Opening Approach
- Divided Flow Approach

## General Modeling Guidelines

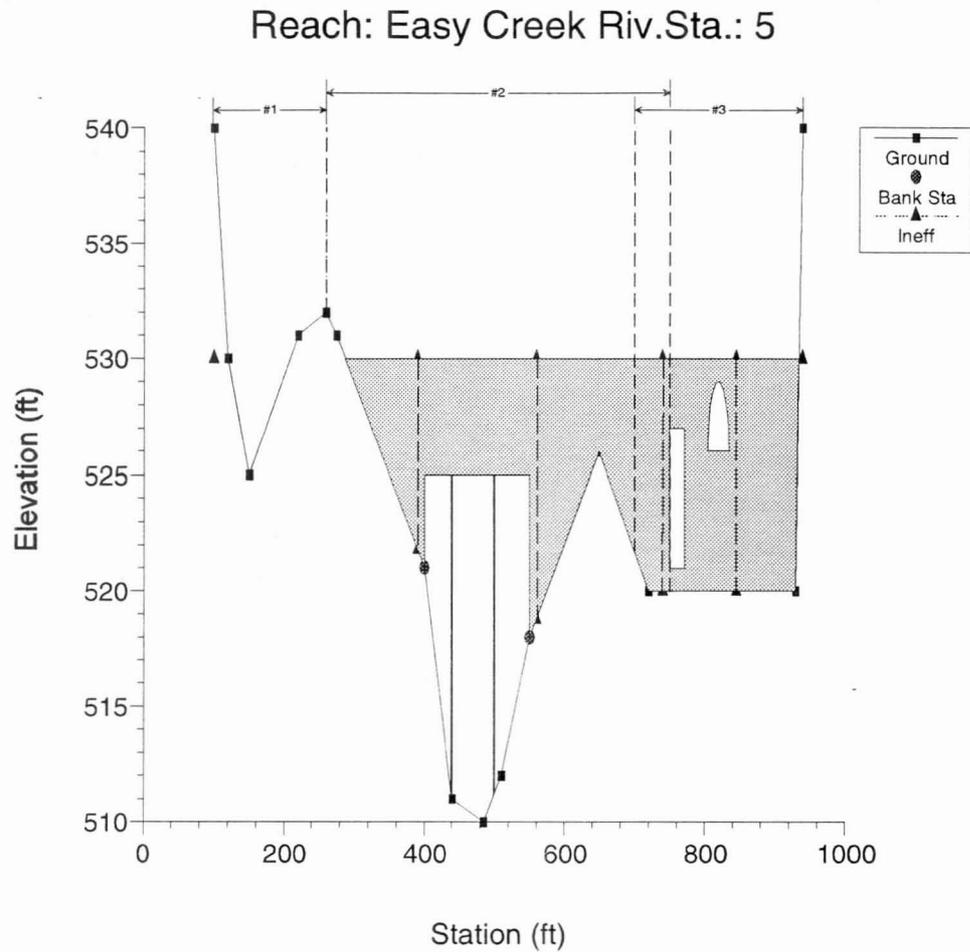
Occasionally you may need to model a river crossing that cannot be modeled adequately as a single bridge opening or culvert group. This often occurs in wide floodplain areas where there is a bridge opening over the main river channel, and a relief bridge or group of culverts in the overbank areas. There are two ways you can model this type of problem within HEC-RAS. The first method is to use the multiple opening capability in HEC-RAS, which is discussed in detail in the following section. A second method is to model the two openings as divided flow. This method would require the user to define the flow path for each opening as a separate reach. This option is discussed in the last section of this chapter.

## Multiple Opening Approach

The multiple opening features in HEC-RAS allow users to model complex bridge and/or culvert crossings within a one dimensional flow framework. HEC-RAS has the ability to model three types of openings: Bridges; Culvert Groups (a group of culverts is considered to be a single opening); and Conveyance Areas (an area where water will flow as open channel flow, other than a bridge or culvert opening). Up to seven openings can be defined at any one river crossing. The HEC-RAS multiple opening methodology is limited to subcritical flow profiles. The program can also be run in mixed flow regime mode, but only a subcritical profile will be calculated in the area of the multiple opening. An example of a multiple opening is shown in Figure 7.1.

As shown in Figure 7.1, the example river crossing has been defined as three openings, labeled as #1, #2, and #3. Opening #1 represents a Conveyance Area, opening #2 is a Bridge opening, and opening #3 is a Culvert Group.

The approach used in HEC-RAS is to evaluate each opening as a separate entity. An iterative solution is applied, in which an initial flow distribution between openings is assumed. The water surface profile and energy gradient are calculated through each opening. The computed upstream energies for each opening are compared to see if they are within a specified tolerance (the difference between the opening with the highest energy and the opening with the lowest energy must be less than the tolerance). If the difference in energies is not less than the tolerance, the program makes a new estimate of the flow distribution through the openings and repeats the process. This iterative technique continues until either a solution that is within the tolerance is achieved, or a predefined maximum number of iterations is reached (the default maximum is 30).



**Figure 7.1 Example Multiple Opening River Crossing**

The distribution of flow requires the establishment of flow boundaries both upstream and downstream of the openings. The flow boundaries represent the point at which flow separates between openings. These flow boundaries are referred to as "Stagnation Points" (the term "stagnation points" will be used from this point on when referring to the flow separation boundaries). A plan view of a multiple opening is shown in Figure 7.2.

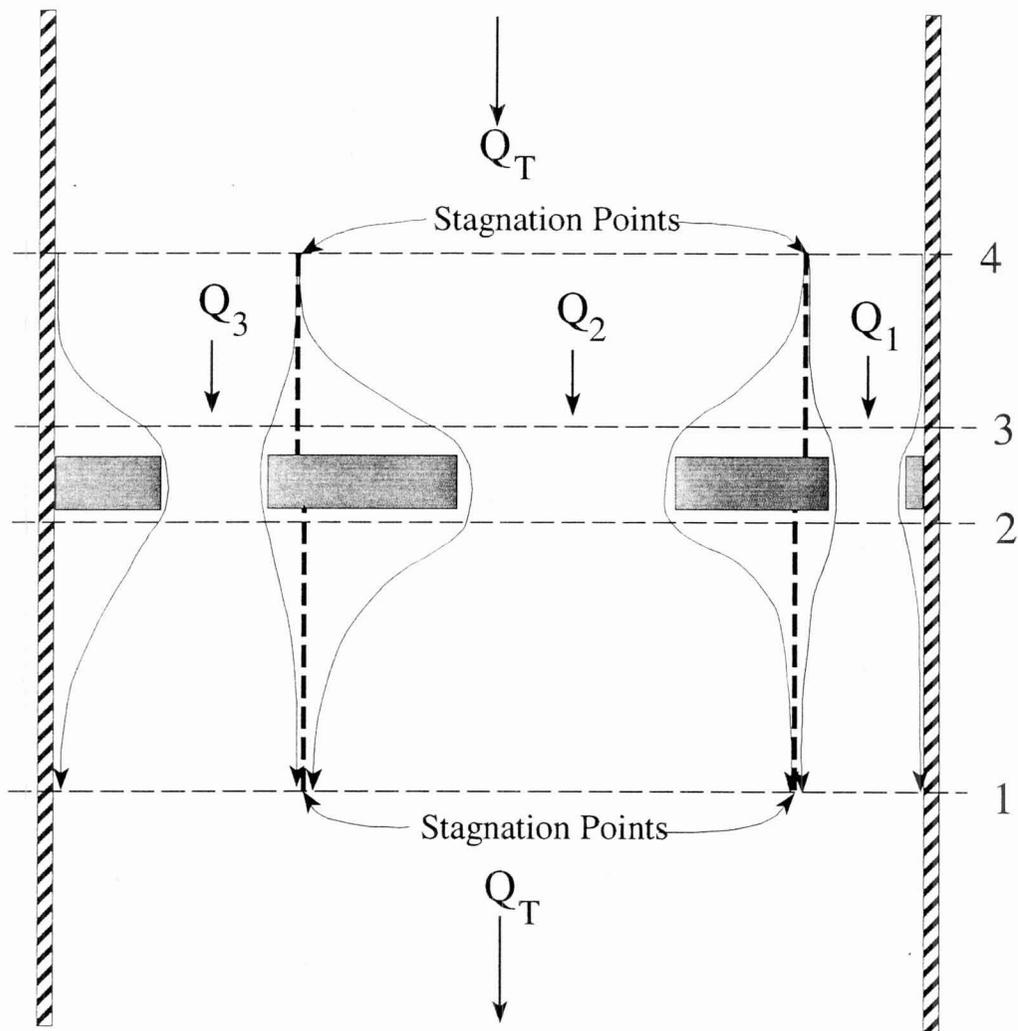


Figure 7.2 Plan view of a Multiple Opening Problem

### Locating the Stagnation Points

The user has the option of fixing the stagnation point locations or allowing the program to solve for them within user defined limits. In general, it is better to let the program solve for the stagnation points, because it provides the best flow distribution and computed water surfaces. Also, allowing the stagnation points to migrate can be important when evaluating several different flow profiles in the same model. Conversely though, if the range in which the stagnation points are allowed to migrate is very large, the program may have difficulties in converging to a solution. Whenever this occurs, the user should either reduce the range over which the stagnation points can migrate or fix their location.

Within HEC-RAS, stagnation points are allowed to migrate between any bridge openings and/or culvert groups. However, if the user defines a conveyance area opening, the stagnation point between this type of opening and any other must be a fixed location. Also, conveyance area openings are limited to the left and right ends of the cross section.

## Computational Procedure for Multiple Openings

HEC-RAS uses an iterative procedure for solving the multiple opening problem. The following approach is used when performing a multiple opening computation:

1. The program makes a first guess at the upstream water surface by setting it equal to the computed energy on the downstream side of the river crossing.
2. The assumed water surface is projected onto the upstream side of the bridge. A flow distribution is computed based on the percent of flow area in each opening.
3. Once a flow distribution is estimated, the stagnation points are calculated based on the upstream cross section. The assumed water surface is put into the upstream section. The hydraulic properties are calculated based on the assumed water surface and flow distribution. Stagnation points are located by apportioning the conveyance in the upstream cross section, so that the percentage of conveyance for each section is equal to the percentage of flow allocated to each opening.
4. The stagnation points in the downstream cross section (section just downstream of the river crossing) are located in the same manner.
5. Once a flow distribution is assumed, and the upstream and downstream stagnation points are set, the program calculates the water surface profiles through each opening, using the assumed flow.
6. After the program has computed the upstream energy for each opening, a comparison is made between the energies to see if a balance has been achieved (i.e., the difference between the highest and lowest computed energy is less than a predefined tolerance). If the energies are not within the tolerance, the program computes an average energy by using a flow weighting for each opening.
7. The average energy computed in step 6 is used to estimate the new flow distribution. This estimate of the flow distribution is based on adjusting the flow in each opening proportional to the percentage that the computed energy for that opening is from the weighted average

energy. An opening with a computed energy higher than the weighted mean will have its flow reduced, while an opening with a computed energy that is lower than the weighted mean will have its flow increased. Once the flow for all the openings is adjusted, a continuity check is made to ensure that the sum of the flows in all the openings is equal to the total flow. If this is not true, the flow in each opening is adjusted to ensure that the sum of flows is equal to the total flow.

8. Steps 3 through 7 continue until either a balance in energy is reached or the program gets to the fifth iteration. If the program gets to the fifth iteration, then the program switches to a different iterating method. In the second iteration method, the program formulates a flow versus upstream energy curve for each opening. The rating curve is based on the first four iterations. The rating curves are combined to get a total flow versus energy curve for the entire crossing. A new upstream energy guess is based on entering this curve with the total flow and interpolating an energy. Once a new energy is estimated, the program goes back to the individual opening curves with this energy and interpolates a flow for each opening. With this new flow distribution the program computes the water surface and energy profiles for each opening. If all the energies are within the tolerance, the calculation procedure is finished. If it is not within the tolerance the rating curves are updated with the new computed points, and the process continues. This iteration procedure continues until either a solution within the tolerance is achieved, or the program reaches the maximum number of iterations. The tolerance for balancing the energies between openings is 5 times the normal cross section water surface tolerance (0.05 feet or 0.015 meters). The default number of iterations for the multiple opening solutions scheme is 1.5 times the normal cross section maximum (the default is 30).
9. Once a solution is achieved, the program places the mean computed energy into the upstream cross section and computes a corresponding water surface for the entire cross section. In general, this water surface will differ from the water surfaces computed from the individual openings. This mean energy and water surface are reported as the final solution at the upstream section. User's can obtain the results of the computed energies and water surfaces for each opening through the cross section specific output table, as well as the multiple opening profile type of table.

### **Limitations of the Multiple Opening Approach**

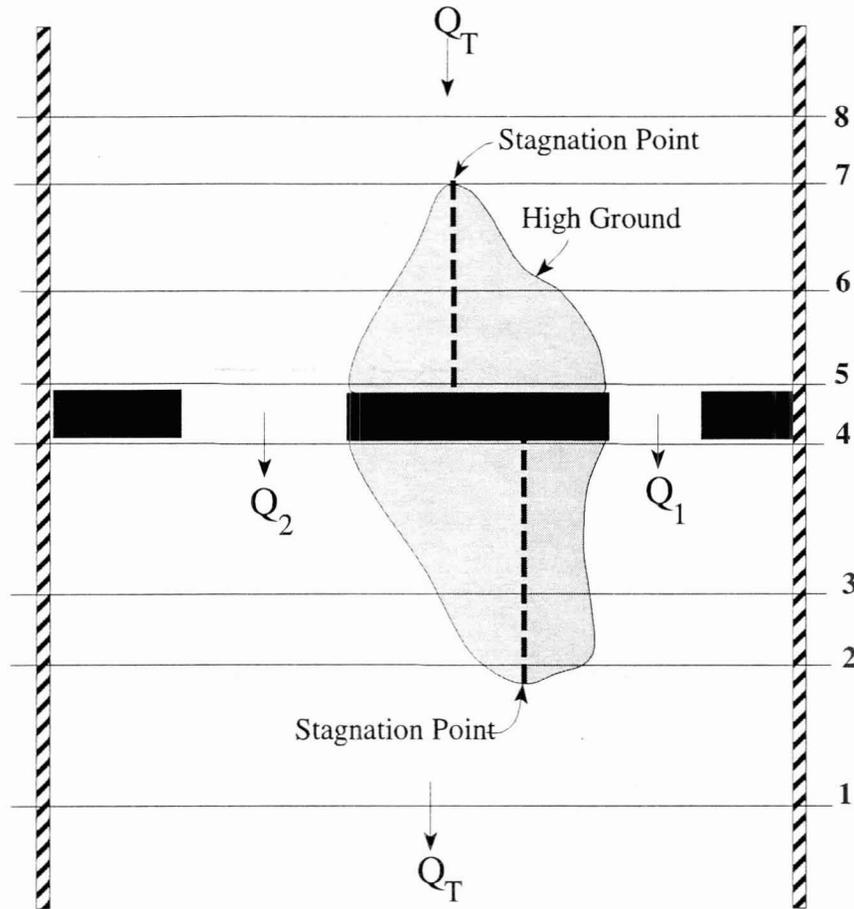
The multiple opening method within HEC-RAS is a one-dimensional flow approach to a complex hydraulic problem. The methodology has the following limitations: the energy grade line is assumed to be constant upstream and downstream of the multiple opening crossing; the stagnation points are not

allowed to migrate past the edge of an adjacent opening; and the stagnation points between a conveyance area and any other type of opening must be fixed (i.e. can not float). The model is limited to a maximum of seven openings. There can only be up to two conveyance type openings, and these openings must be located at the far left and right ends of the cross sections. Given these limitations, if you have a multiple opening crossing in which the water surface and energy vary significantly between openings, then this methodology may not be the most appropriate approach. An alternative to the multiple opening approach is the divided flow approach. This method is discussed below.

## Divided Flow Approach

An alternative approach for solving a multiple opening problem is to model the flow paths of each opening as a separate river reach. This approach is more time consuming, and requires the user to have a greater understanding of how the flow will separate between openings. The benefit of using this approach is that varying water surfaces and energies can be obtained between openings. An example of a divided flow application is shown in Figure 7.3.

In the example shown in Figure 7.3, high ground exist between the two openings (both upstream and downstream). Under low flow conditions, there are two separate and distinct channels. Under high flow conditions the ground between the openings may be submerged, and the water surface continuous across both openings. To model this as a divided flow the user must create two separate river reaches around the high ground and through the openings. Cross sections 2 through 8 must be divided at what the user believes is the appropriate stagnation points for each cross section. This can be accomplished in several ways. The cross sections could be physically split into two, or the user could use the same cross sections in both reaches. If the same cross sections are used, the user must block out the area of each cross section (using the ineffective flow option) that is not part of the flow path for that particular reach. In other words, if you were modeling the left flow path, you would block out everything to the right of the stagnation points. For the reach that represents the right flow path, everything to the left of the stagnation points would be blocked out.



**Figure 7.3 Example of a Divided Flow Problem**

When modeling a divided flow, you must define how much flow is going through each reach. The current version of HEC-RAS does not optimize flow splits (this will be added in later versions). The user makes a first guess at the flow distribution, and then runs the model. The results at cross Section 8 are compared. If one branch has a higher energy than the other one at Section 8, then that branches flow should be reduced and the other increased by the same amount. The user should continue to do this until the energies from both branches at Section 8 are within a reasonable tolerance.

## CHAPTER 8

# Modeling Gated Spillways, Weirs and Drop Structures

The current version of HEC-RAS allows the user to model inline gated spillways overflow weirs and drop structures. Lateral gated spillways and weirs are not available in this version of the software, but will be included in a future version. HEC-RAS has the ability to model radial gates (often called tainter gates) or vertical lift gates (sluice gates). The spillway crest of the gates can be modeled as either an ogee shape or a broad crested weir shape. In addition to the gate openings, the user can also define a separate uncontrolled overflow weir.

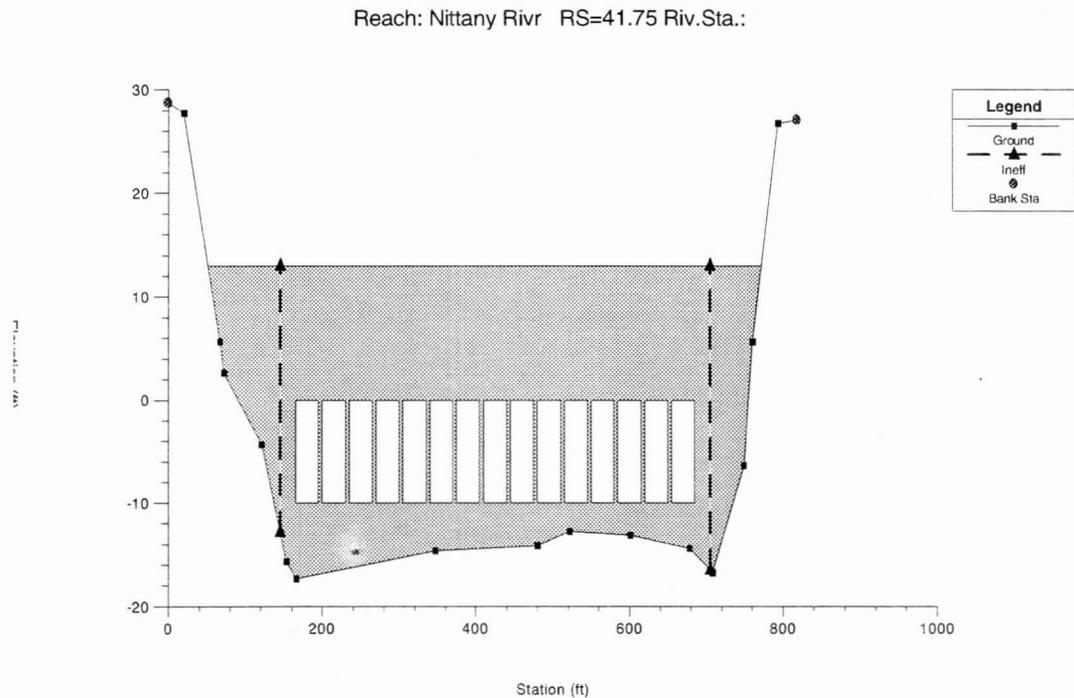
This chapter describes the general modeling guidelines for using the gated spillway and weir capability within HEC-RAS, as well as the hydraulic equations used. Information on modeling drop structures with HEC-RAS is also provided. For information on how to enter gated spillway and weir data, as well as viewing gated spillway and weir results, see Chapter 6 and Chapter 8 of the HEC-RAS User's Manual, respectively.

### Contents

- General Modeling Guidelines
- Hydraulic Computations Through Gated Spillways
- Uncontrolled Overflow Weirs
- Drop Structures

## General Modeling Guidelines

The gated spillway and weir option within HEC-RAS can be used to model inline (structures across the main stream) weirs, gated spillways, or a combination of both. An example of a dam with a gated spillway and overflow weir is shown in Figure 8.1.



**Figure 8.1 Example of Inline Gated Spillway and Weir.**

In the example shown in Figure 8.1 there are 15 identical gate openings and the entire top of the embankment is specified as an overflow weir.

Gated Spillways within HEC-RAS can be modeled as radial gates (often called tainter gates) or vertical lift gates (sluice gates). The equations used to model the gate openings can handle both submerged and unsubmerged conditions at the inlet and outlet of the gates. If the gates are opened far enough, such that unsubmerged conditions exist at the upstream end, the program automatically switches to a weir flow equation to calculate the hydraulics of the flow. The spillway crest through the gate openings can be specified as either an ogee crest shape or a broad crested weir. The program has the ability to calculate both free flowing and submerged weir flow through the gate openings. Figure 8.2 is a diagram of the two gate types with different spillway crests.



**Figure 8.2 Example Sluice and Radial Gates**

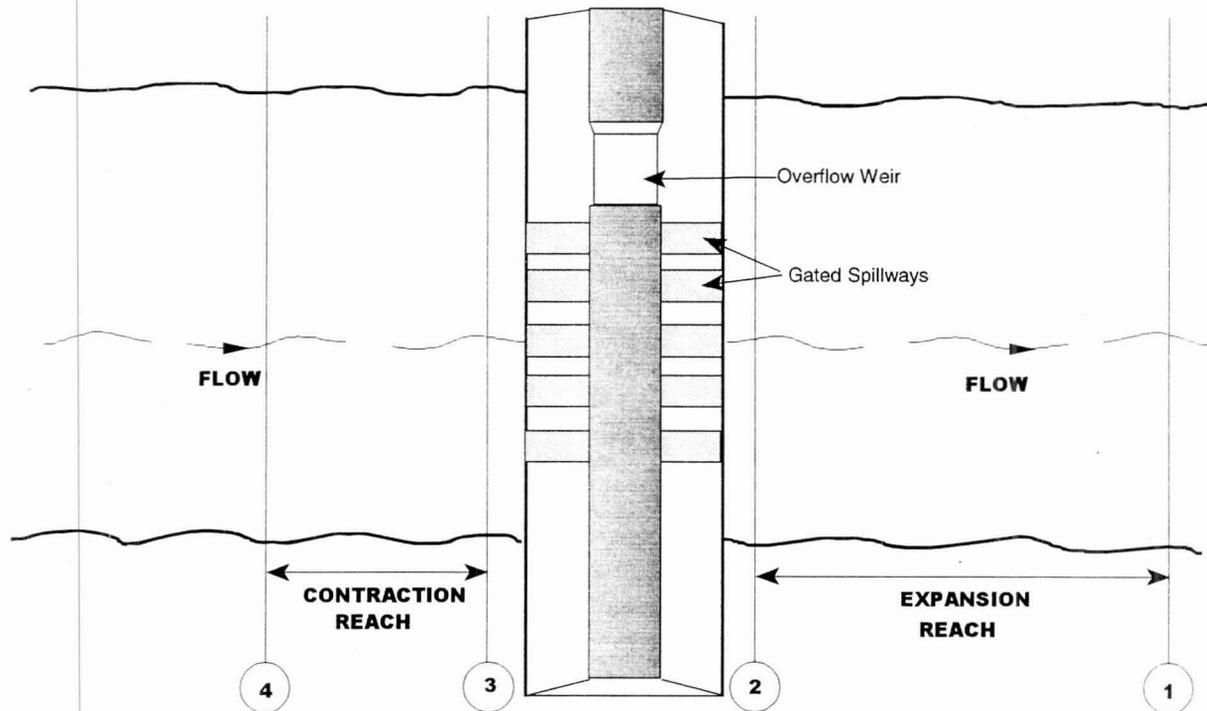
Up to 10 gate groups can be entered into the program at any one river crossing. Each gate group can have up to 25 identical gate openings. Identical gate openings must be the same gate type; size; elevation; and have identical gate coefficients. If anything about the gates is different, except their physical location across the stream, the gates must be entered as separate gate groups.

The overflow weir capability can be used by itself or in conjunction with the gated spillway option. The overflow weir is entered as a series of station and elevation points across the stream, which allows for complicated weir shapes. The user must specify if the weir is broad crested or an ogee shape. The software has the ability to account for submergence due to the downstream tailwater. Additionally, if the weir has an ogee shaped crest, the program can calculate the appropriate weir coefficient for a given design head. The weir coefficient will automatically be decreased or increased when the actual head is lower or higher than the design head.

### Cross Section Locations

The inline weir and gated spillway routines in HEC-RAS require the same cross sections as the bridge and culvert routines. Four cross sections in the vicinity of the hydraulic structure are required for a complete model, two upstream and two downstream. In general, there should always be additional cross sections downstream from any structure (bridge, culvert, weir, etc...), such that the user entered downstream boundary condition does not affect the hydraulics of flow through the structure. In order to simplify the discussion of cross sections around the inline weir and gated spillway structure, only the four cross sections in the vicinity will be discussed. These four cross sections include: one cross section sufficiently downstream such that the flow is fully expanded; one at the downstream end of the structure (representing the tailwater location); one at the upstream end of the structure (representing the

headwater location); and one cross section located far enough upstream at the point in which the flow begins to contract. Note, the cross sections that bound the structure represent the channel geometry outside of the embankment. Figure 8.3 illustrates the cross sections required for an inline weir and gated spillway model.



**Figure 8.3 Cross Section Layout for Inline Gated Spillways and Weirs**

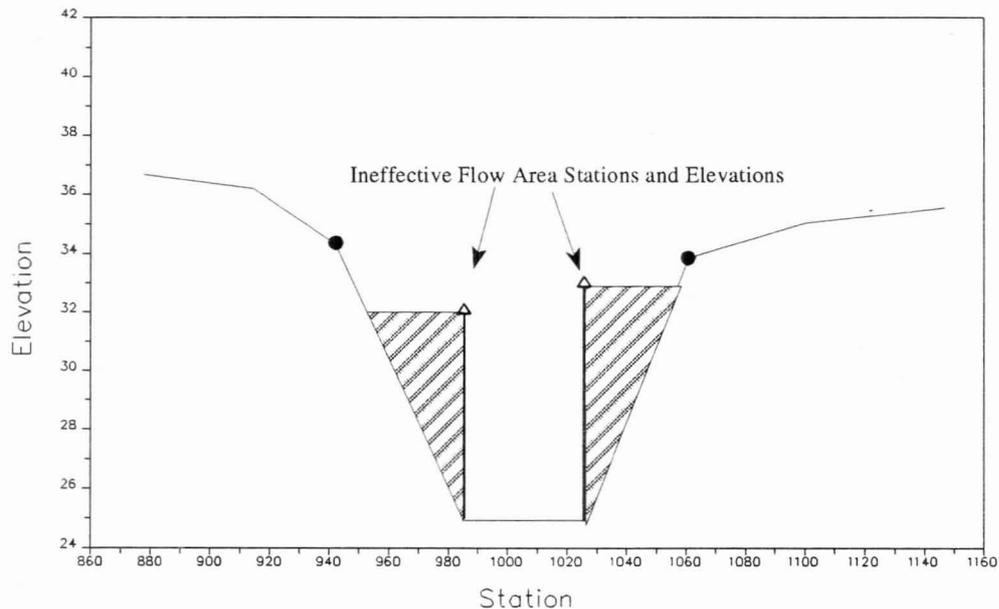
**Cross Section 1.** Cross Section 1 for a weir and/or gated spillway should be located at a point where flow has fully expanded from its constricted top width caused by the constriction. The entire area of Cross Section 1 is usually considered to be effective in conveying flow.

**Cross Section 2.** Cross Section 2 is located a short distance downstream from the structure. The computed water surface at this cross section will represent the tailwater elevation of the weir and the gated spillways. This cross section should not include any of the structure or embankment, but represents the physical shape of the channel just downstream of the structure. The shape and location of this cross section is entered separately from the Inline Weir and Gated Spillway data (from the cross section editor).

The HEC-RAS ineffective area option is used to restrict the effective flow area of Cross Section 2 to the flow area around or near the edges of the gated spillways, until flow overtops the overflow weir and/or embankment. The ineffective flow areas are used to represent the correct amount of active flow

area just downstream of the structure. Establishing the correct amount of effective flow area is very important in computing an accurate tailwater elevation at Cross Section 2. Because the flow will begin to expand as it exits the gated spillways, the active flow area at Section 2 is generally wider than the width of the gate openings. The width of the active flow area will depend upon how far downstream Cross Section 2 is from the structure. In general, a reasonable assumption would be to assume a 1:1 expansion rate over this short distance. Figure 8.4 illustrates Cross Section 2 of a typical inline weir and gated spillway model. On Figure 8.4, the channel bank locations are indicated by small circles and the stations and elevations of the ineffective flow areas are indicated by triangles.

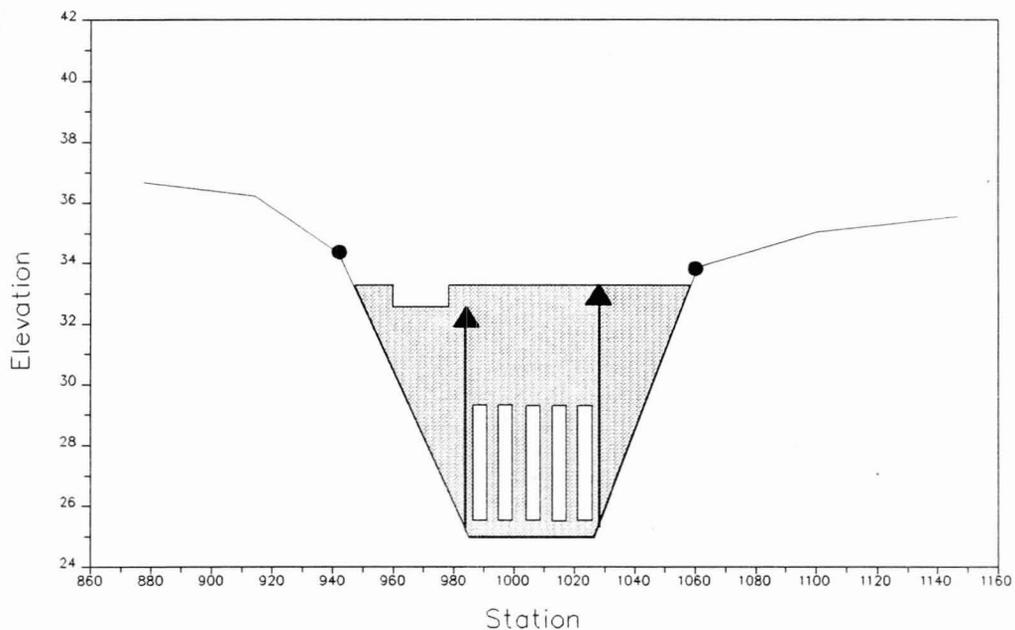
Cross Sections 1 and 2 are located so as to create a channel reach downstream of the structure in which the HEC-RAS program can accurately compute the friction losses and expansion losses that occur as the flow fully expands.



**Figure 8.4** Cross Section 2 of Inline Gated Spillway and Weir Model

**Cross Section 3.** Cross Section 3 of an inline weir and gated spillway model is located a short distance upstream of the embankment, and represents the physical configuration of the upstream channel. The water surface computed at this cross section represents the upstream headwater for the overflow weir and the gated spillways. The software uses a combination of the deck/road embankment data, Cross Section 3, and the gated spillway data, to describe the hydraulic structure and the roadway embankment. The inline weir and gated spillway data is located at a river station between Cross Section 2 and Cross Section 3.

The HEC-RAS ineffective area option is used to restrict the effective flow area of Cross Section 3 until the flow overtops the roadway. The ineffective flow area is used to represent the correct amount of active flow area just upstream of the structure. Because the flow is contracting rapidly as it enters the gate openings, the active flow area at Section 3 is generally wider than the width of the gates. The width of the active flow area will depend upon how far upstream Cross Section 3 is placed from the structure. In general, a reasonable assumption would be to assume a 1:1 contraction rate over this short distance. Figure 8.5 illustrates Cross Section 3 for a typical model, including the embankment profile and the gated spillways. On Figure 8.5, the channel bank locations are indicated by small circles and the stations and elevations of ineffective area are indicated by triangles.



**Figure 8.5 Cross Section 3 of Inline Gated Spillway and Weir**

**Cross Section 4.** The final cross section in the inline weir and gated spillway model is located at a point where flow has not yet begun to contract from its unrestrained top width upstream of the structure. This distance is normally determined assuming a one to one contraction of flow. In other words, the average rate at which flow can contract to pass through the gate openings is assumed to be one foot laterally for every one foot traveled in the downstream direction. The entire area of Cross Section 4 is usually considered to be effective in conveying flow.

## Expansion and Contraction Coefficients

User-defined coefficients are required to compute head losses due to the contraction and expansion of flows upstream and downstream of an inline weir and gated spillway structure. These losses are computed by multiplying an expansion or contraction coefficient by the absolute difference in velocity head between two cross sections.

If the velocity head increases in the downstream direction, a contraction coefficient is applied. When the velocity head decreases in the downstream direction, an expansion coefficient is used. Recommended values for the expansion and contraction coefficients have been given in Chapter 3 of this manual (table 3.2). As indicated by the tabulated values, the expansion of flow causes more energy loss than the contraction. Also, energy losses increase with the abruptness of the transition.

## Hydraulic Computations Through Gated Spillways

As mentioned previously, the program is capable of modeling both radial gates (often called tainter gates) and vertical lift gates (sluice gates). The equations used to model the gate openings can handle both submerged and unsubmerged conditions at the inlet and the outlet of the gates. When the gates are opened to an elevation greater than the upstream water surface elevation, the program automatically switches to modeling the flow through the gates as weir flow. When the upstream water surface is greater than or equal to 1.25 times the height of the gate opening (with respect to the gates spillway crest), the gate flow equations are applied. When the upstream water surface is between 1.0 and 1.25 times the gate opening, the flow is in a zone of transition between weir flow and gate flow. The program computes the upstream head with both equations and then calculates a linear weighted average of the two values (this is an iterative process to obtain the final headwater elevation for a flow in the transition range). When the upstream water surface is equal to or less than 1.0 times the gate opening, then the flow through the gate opening is calculated as weir flow.

## Radial Gates

An example radial gate with an ogee spillway crest is shown in Figure 8.6.

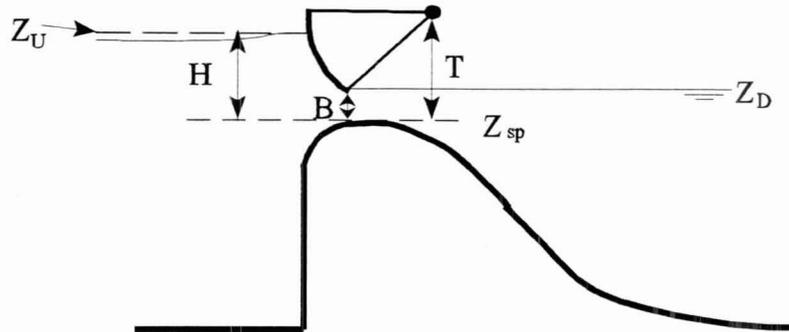


Figure 8.6 Example Radial Gate with an Ogee Spillway Crest

The flow through the gate is considered to be “Free Flow” when the downstream tailwater elevation ( $Z_D$ ) is not high enough to cause an increase in the upstream headwater elevation for a given flow rate. The equation used for a Radial gate under free flow conditions is as follows:

$$Q = C\sqrt{2g} W T^{TE} B^{BE} H^{HE} \quad (8-1)$$

where: Q	=	Flow rate in cfs
C	=	Discharge coefficient (typically ranges from 0.6 - 0.8)
W	=	Width of the gated spillway in feet
T	=	Trunnion height (from spillway crest to trunnion pivot point)
TE	=	Trunnion height exponent, typically about 0.16
B	=	Height of gate opening in feet
BE	=	Gate opening exponent, typically about 0.72
H	=	Upstream Energy Head above the spillway crest $Z_U - Z_{sp}$
HE	=	Head exponent, typically about 0.62
$Z_U$	=	Elevation of the upstream energy grade line
$Z_D$	=	Elevation of the downstream water surface
$Z_{sp}$	=	Elevation of the spillway crest through the gate

When the downstream tailwater increases to the point at which the gate is no longer flowing freely (downstream submergence is causing a greater upstream headwater for a given flow), the program switches to the following form of the equation:

$$Q = C\sqrt{2g} W T^{TE} B^{BE} (3H)^{HE} \quad (8-2)$$

where:  $H = Z_U - Z_D$

Submergence begins to occur when the tailwater depth divided by the headwater energy depth above the spillway, is greater than 0.67. Equation 8-2 is used to transition between free flow and fully submerged flow. This transition is set up so the program will gradually change to the fully submerged Orifice equation when the gates reach a submergence of 0.80. The fully submerged Orifice equation is shown below:

$$Q = CA\sqrt{2gH} \quad (8-3)$$

where:  $A =$  Area of the gate opening.

$H = Z_U - Z_D$

### Sluice Gate

An example sluice gate with a broad crest is shown in Figure 8.7.

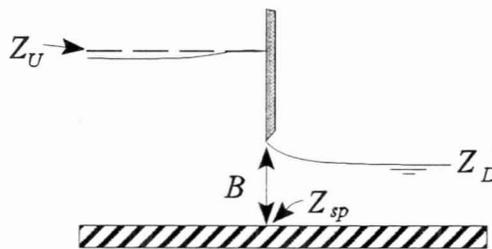


Figure 8.7 Example Sluice Gate with Broad Crested Spillway

The equation for a free flowing sluice gate is as follows:

$$Q = C W B \sqrt{2gH} \quad (8-4)$$

where: H = Upstream energy head above the spillway crest ( $Z_U - Z_{sp}$ )  
 C = Coefficient of discharge, typically 0.5 to 0.7

When the downstream tailwater increases to the point at which the gate is no longer flowing freely (downstream submergence is causing a greater upstream headwater for a given flow), the program switches to the following form of the equation:

$$Q = C W B \sqrt{2g^3H} \quad (8-5)$$

where: H =  $Z_U - Z_D$

Submergence begins to occur when the tailwater depth above the spillway divided by the headwater energy above the spillway, is greater than 0.67. Equation 8-5 is used to transition between free flow and fully submerged flow. This transition is set up so the program will gradually change to the fully submerged Orifice equation (Equation 8-3) when the gates reach a submergence of 0.80.

## Low Flow Through The Gates

When the upstream water surface is equal to or less than the top of the gate opening, the program calculates the flow through the gates as weir flow. An example of low flow through a gated structure is shown in Figure 8.8.

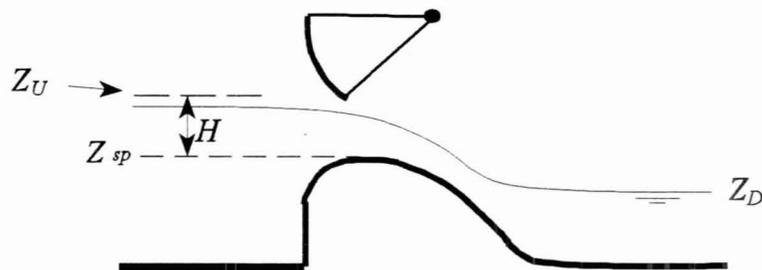


Figure 8.8 Example Radial Gate Under Low Flow Conditions

The standard weir equation used for this calculation is shown below:

$$Q = CLH^{3/2} \quad (8-6)$$

where: C = Weir flow coefficient, typical values will range from 2.6 to 4.0 depending upon the shape of the spillway crest (i.e., broad crested or ogee shaped).  
 L = Length of the spillway crest.  
 H = Upstream energy head above the spillway crest.

The user can specify either a broad crested or ogee weir shape for the spillway crest of the gate. If the crest of the spillway is ogee shaped, the weir coefficient will be automatically adjusted when the upstream energy head is higher or lower than a user specified design head. The adjustment is based on the curve shown in Figure 8.9 (Bureau of Reclamation, 1977). The curve provides ratios for the discharge coefficient, based on the ratio of the actual head to the design head of the spillway. In Figure 8.9,  $H_e$  is the upstream energy head;  $H_o$  is the design head;  $C_o$  is the coefficient of discharge at the design head; and C is the coefficient of discharge for an energy head other than the design head.

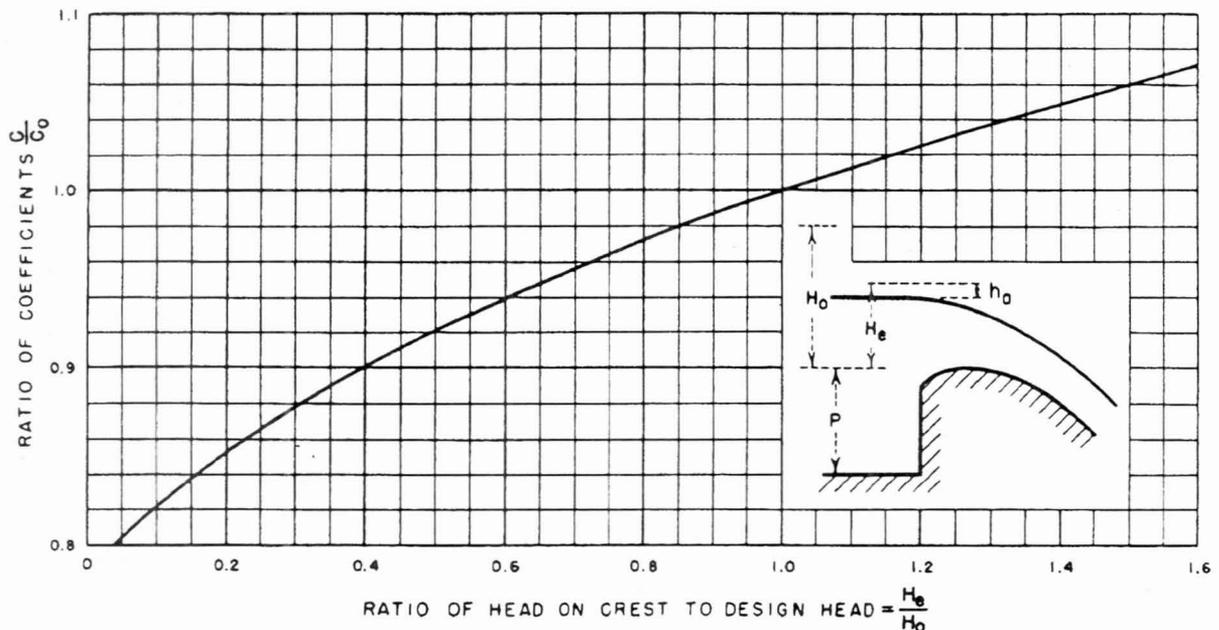


Figure 8.9 Weir Flow Coefficient for Other Than Design Head

The program automatically accounts for submergence on the weir when the tailwater is high enough to slow down the flow. Submergence is defined as the depth of water above the weir on the downstream side divided by the headwater energy depth of water above the weir on the upstream side. As the degree of submergence increases, the program reduces the weir flow coefficient. Submergence corrections are based on a trapezoidal (broad crested) or ogee shaped weir.

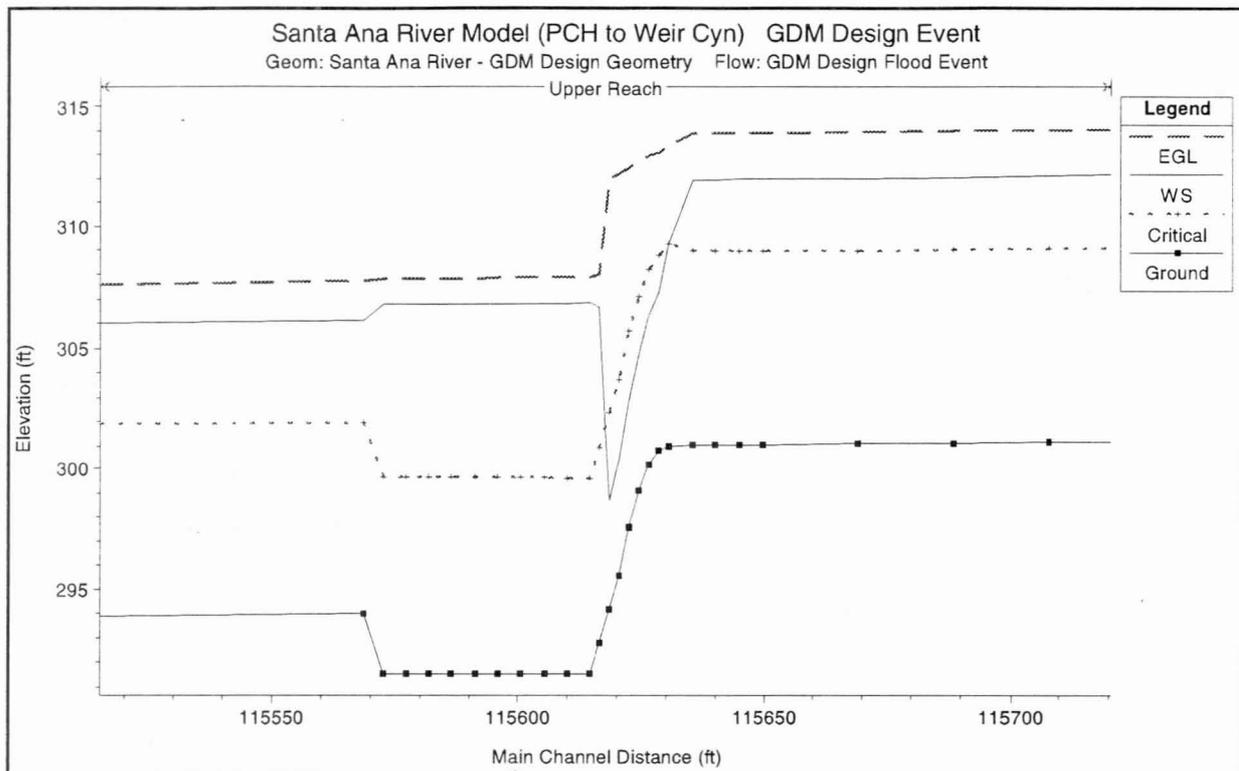
## Uncontrolled Overflow Weirs

In addition to the gate openings, the user can define an uncontrolled overflow weir at the same river crossing. The weir could represent an emergency spillway or the entire top of the structure and embankment. Weir flow is computed using the standard weir equation (equation 8-6). The uncontrolled overflow weir can be specified as either a broad crested or ogee shaped weir. If the weir is ogee shaped, the program will allow for fluctuations in the discharge coefficient to account for upstream energy heads that are either higher or lower than the design head (figure 8.9). The program will automatically account for any submergence of the downstream tailwater on the weir, and reduce the flow over the weir. The modeler is referred to Chapter 5 of the Hydraulic Reference Manual for additional discussions concerning uncontrolled overflow weirs, including submergence criteria and selection of weir coefficients.

## Drop Structures

Drop structures can be modeled with the inline weir option or as a series of cross sections. If you are just interested in getting the water surface upstream and downstream of the drop structure, then the inline weir option would probably be the most appropriate (as described in the previous section of this chapter). However, if you want to compute a more detailed profile upstream of and through the drop, then you will need to model it as a series of cross sections.

When modeling a drop structure as a series of cross sections, the most important thing is to have enough cross sections at the correct locations. Cross sections need to be closely spaced where the water surface and velocity is changing rapidly (i.e. just upstream and downstream of the drop). An example of a drop structure is shown in Figure 8.10



**Figure 8.10 Drop Structure Modeled With Cross Sections**

As shown in Figure 8.10, the spacing between cross sections should decrease as you get closer to the drop structure (cross sections are located at each square shown on the ground profile). Additionally, if the drop itself is on a slope, then additional cross sections should be placed along the sloping drop in order to model the transition from subcritical to supercritical flow. Several cross sections should also be placed in the stilling basin (location of energy dissipaters) in order to correctly locate where the hydraulic jump will occur (i.e. the hydraulic jump could occur on the slope of the drop, or it may occur inside of the stilling basin). Manning's  $n$  values should be increased inside of the stilling basin to represent the increased roughness do to the energy dissipater blocks.

In order to evaluate this method of modeling drop structures, a comparison was made between a physical model study and an HEC-RAS model of the drop structure. During the design phase of improvements to the Santa Ana river, the Waterways Experiment Station (WES) was contracted to study the drop structures and make recommendations. The results of this study were reported in General Design for Replacement of or Modifications to the Lower Santa Ana River Drop Structures, Orange County, California (Technical Report HL-94-4, April 1994, USACE). Over 50 different designs were tested in 1:25 scale

flume models and 1:40 scale full width models. The designs evaluated existing structures, modifying original structures and replacing them with entirely new designs. The drop structure design used in the Santa Ana River is similar to one referred to as Type 10 in the report. A HEC-RAS model was developed to model the Type 10 drop structure and the model results were compared to the flume results.

The geometry for the HEC-RAS model was developed from the following design diagram in the WES report.

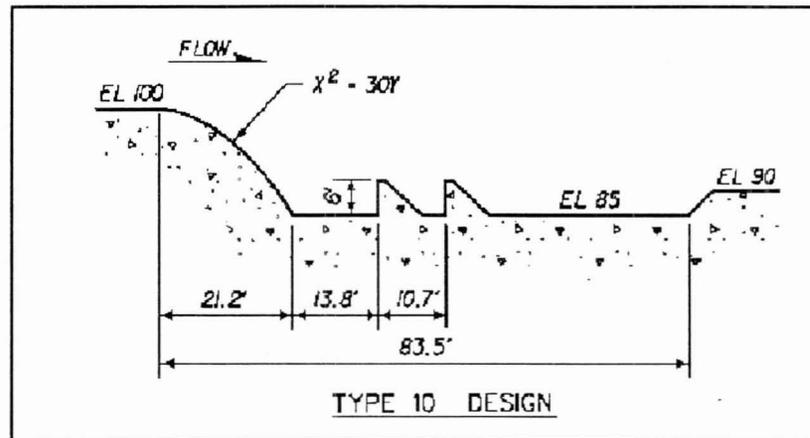


Figure 8.11. WES Report Plate 13.

The total reach in the model was 350 feet, 150 upstream of the crest of the drop structure and 200 feet below the crest. The cross sections were rectangular, with the following spacing used in the HEC-RAS model:

<u>Location</u>	<u>Reach Lengths</u>
Upstream of Drop structure:	10 feet
Over the drop:	2 feet
Inside the stilling basin:	10 feet
Downstream of Structure:	10 feet

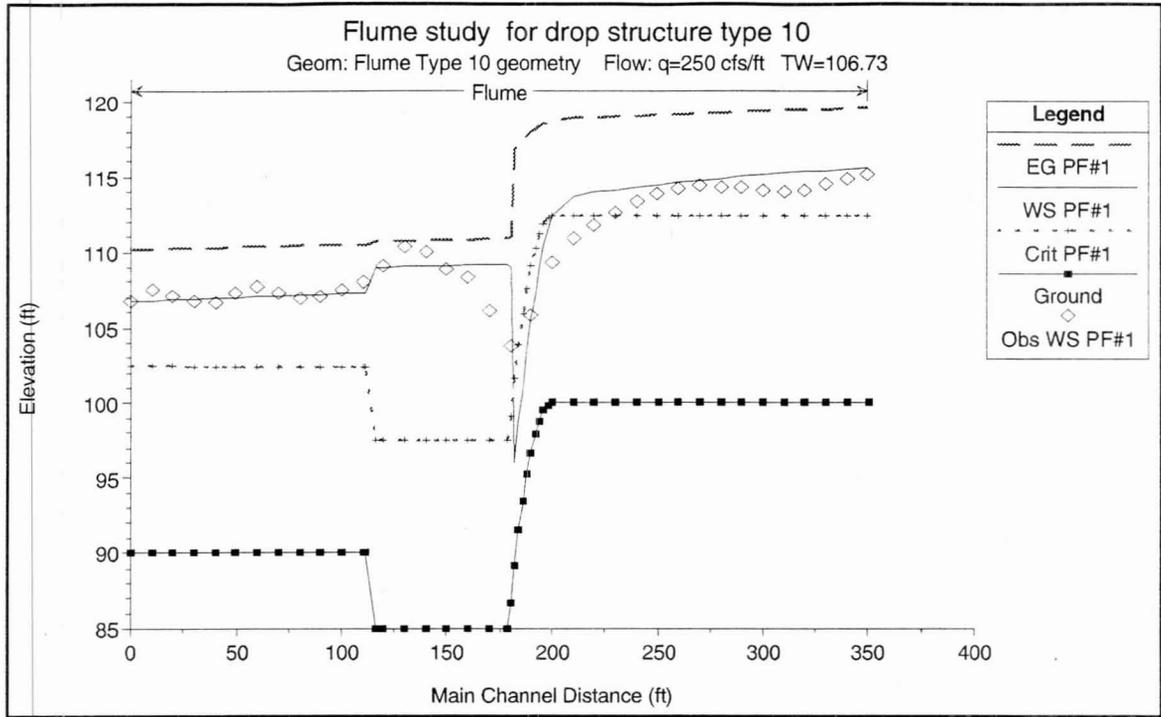
The expansion and contraction coefficients were set to 0.3 and 0.1 respectively. Two Manning's n values were used in the HEC-RAS model of the flume. Inside the stilling basin where the bottom elevation was 85 feet, the Manning's n values were set to 0.05. In all other cross sections the Manning's n values

were set to 0.03. The higher  $n$  value was used in the stilling basin to account for the additional energy loss due to the rows of baffles that exist in the flume but were not added into the cross sections data of HEC-RAS.

The original data from the flume experiments were obtained from the Waterways Experiment Station, and entered in HEC-RAS as observed data. The results of the HEC-RAS model are compared in profile to the observed water surface elevations in the flume study in Figure 8.12. These results show that HEC-RAS was able to adequately model the drop structures, both upstream and downstream of the crest.

Some differences occur right at the crest and through the hydraulic jump. The differences at the crest are due to the fact that the energy equation will always show the flow passing through critical depth at the top of the crest. Whereas, in the field it has been shown that the flow passes through critical depth at a distance upstream of 3-4 times critical depth. However, as shown in Figure 8.12, a short distance upstream of the crest the HEC-RAS program converges to the same depth as the observed data. Correctly obtaining the maximum upstream water surface is the most important part of modeling the drop structure.

Downstream of the drop, the flow is supercritical and then goes through a hydraulic jump. The flume data shows the jump occurring over a distance of 50 to 60 feet with a lot of turbulence. The HEC-RAS model cannot predict how long of a distance it will take for the jump to occur, but it can predict where the jump will begin. The HEC-RAS model will always show the jump occurring between two adjacent cross sections. The HEC-RAS model shows the higher water surface inside of the stilling basin and then going down below the stilling basin. The model shows all of this as a fairly smooth transition, whereas it is actually a turbulent transition with the water surface bouncing up and down. In general, the results from the HEC-RAS model are very good at predicting the stages upstream, inside, and downstream of the drop structure.



**Figure 8.12. Comparison Between Flume Data and HEC-RAS For a Drop Structure**

## CHAPTER 9

# Floodplain Encroachment Calculations

The evaluation of the impact of floodplain encroachments on water surface profiles can be of substantial interest to planners, land developers, and engineers. It is also a significant aspect of flood insurance studies. HEC-RAS contains five optional methods for specifying floodplain encroachments. This chapter describes the computational detail of each of the five encroachment methods, as well as special considerations for encroachments at bridges, culverts, and multiple openings. Discussions are also provided on a general modeling approach for performing an encroachment analysis.

For information on how to enter encroachment data, how to perform the encroachment calculations, and viewing encroachment results, see Chapter 9 of the HEC-RAS user's manual.

### Contents

- Introduction
- Encroachment Methods
- Bridge, Culvert, and Multiple Opening Encroachments
- General Modeling Guidelines

## Introduction

The HEC-RAS floodway procedure is based on calculating a natural profile (existing conditions geometry) as the first profile in a multiple profile run. Other profiles in a run, are calculated using various encroachment options, as desired. Before performing an encroachment analysis, the user should have developed a model of the existing river system. This model should be calibrated to the fullest extent that is possible. Verification that the model is adequately modeling the river system is an extremely important step before attempting to perform an encroachment analysis.

## Encroachment Methods

HEC-RAS contains five optional methods for specifying floodplain encroachments. Each method is illustrated in the following paragraphs.

### Encroachment Method 1

With encroachment method 1 the user specifies the exact locations of the encroachment stations for each individual cross section. The encroachment stations can also be specified differently for each profile. An example of encroachment method 1 is shown in Figure 9.1.

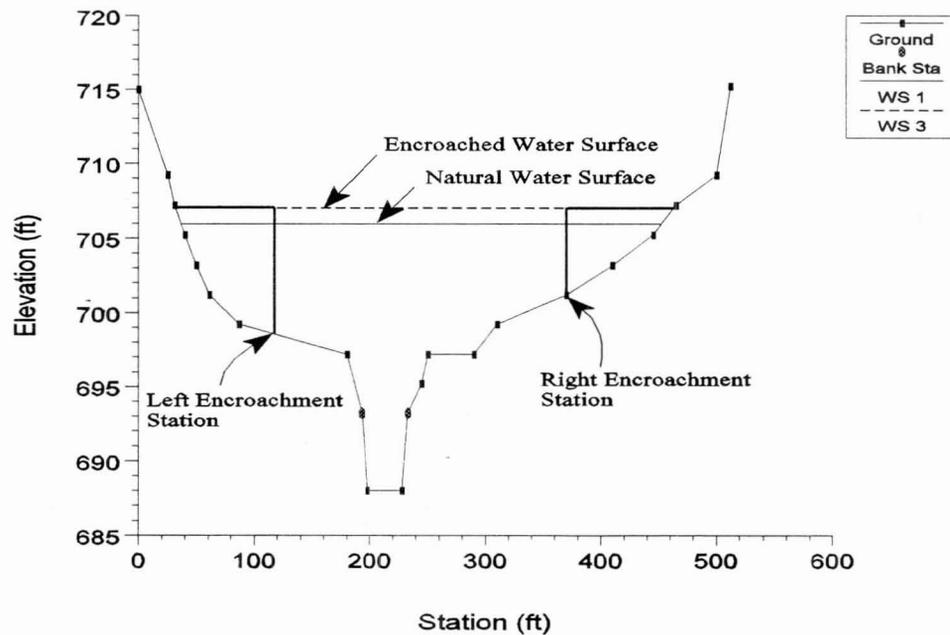


Figure 9.1 Example of Encroachment Method 1

## Encroachment Method 2

Method 2 utilizes a fixed top width. The top width can be specified separately for each cross section. The left and right encroachment stations are made equal distance from the centerline of the channel, which is halfway between the left and right bank stations. If the user specified top width would end up with an encroachment inside the channel, the program sets that encroachment (left and/or right) to the channel bank station. An example of encroachment method 2 is shown in Figure 9.2.

HEC-RAS also allows the user to establish a left and right offset. The left and right offset is used to establish a buffer zone around the main channel for further limiting the amount of the encroachments. For example, if a user established a right offset of 5 feet and a left offset of 10 feet, the model will limit all encroachments to 5 feet from the right bank station and 10 feet from the left bank station. If a user entered top width would end up inside of an offset, the program will set the encroachment at the offset stationing.

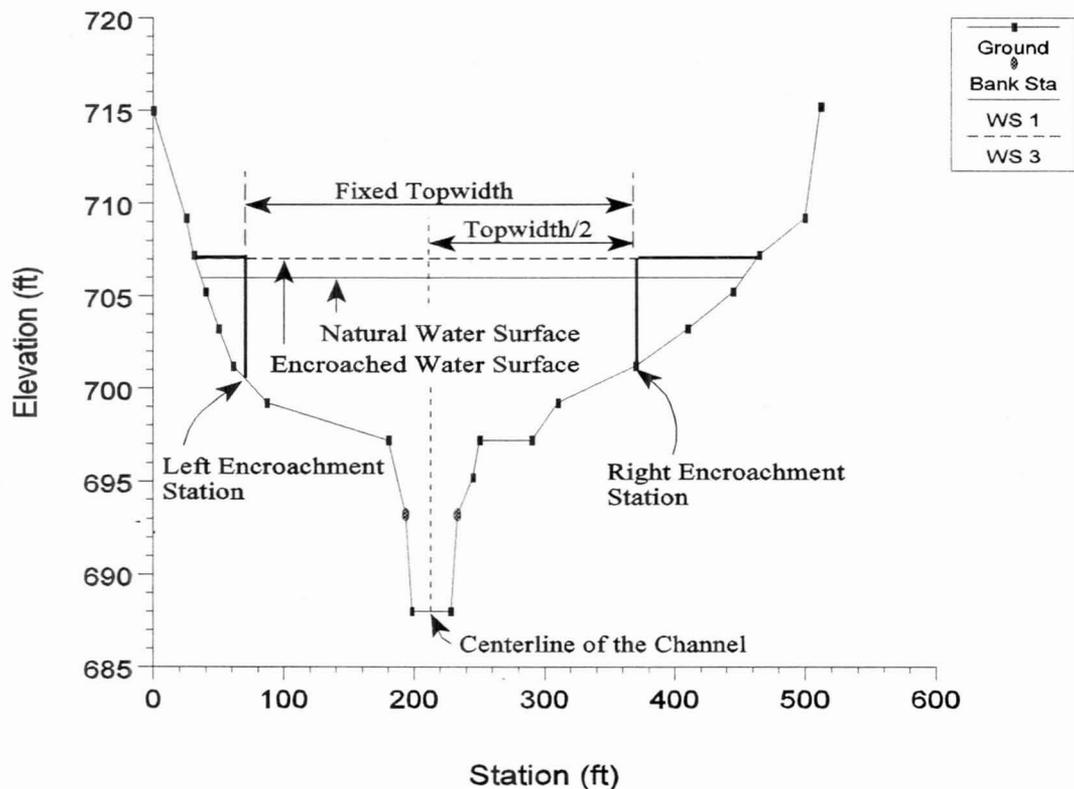


Figure 9.2 Example of Encroachment Method 2

### Encroachment Method 3

Method 3 calculates encroachment stations for a specified percent reduction in the conveyance (%K Reduction) of the natural profile for each cross section. One-half of the conveyance is eliminated on each side of the cross section (if possible). The computed encroachments can not infringe on the main channel or any user specified encroachment offsets. If one-half of the conveyance exceeds either overbank conveyance, the program will attempt to make up the difference on the other side. If the percent reduction in cross section conveyance cannot be accommodated by both overbank areas combined, the encroachment stations are made equal to the stations of left and right channel banks (or the offset stations, if specified). An example of encroachment method 3 is shown in Figure 9.3.

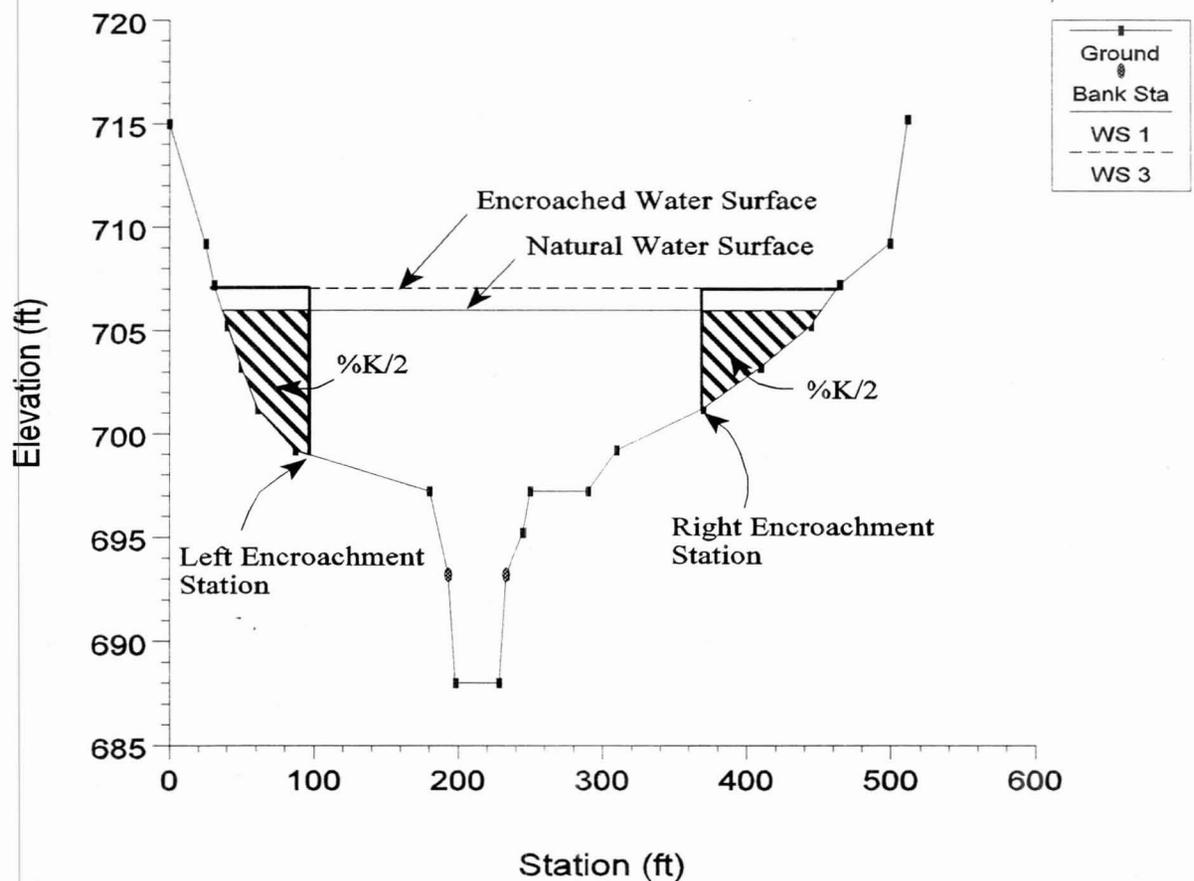


Figure 9.3 Example of Encroachment Method 3

Encroachment Method 3 requires that the first profile (of a multiple profile run) must be a natural (unencroached) profile. Subsequent profiles (profiles 2-15) of a multiple profile run may be utilized for Method 3 encroachments. The percentage of reduction in conveyance can be changed for any cross section. A value of 10 percent for the second profile would indicate that 10 percent of the conveyance based on the natural profile (first profile) will be eliminated - 5 percent from each overbank. Equal conveyance reduction is the default.

An alternate scheme to **equal** conveyance reduction is conveyance reduction in **proportion** to the distribution of natural overbank conveyance. For instance, if the natural cross section had twice as much conveyance in the left overbank as in the right overbank, a 10 percent conveyance reduction value would reduce 6.7 percent from the left overbank and 3.3 percent from the right overbank.

### Encroachment Method 4

Method 4 computes encroachment stations so that conveyance within the encroached cross section (at some higher elevation) is equal to the conveyance of the natural cross section at the natural water level. This higher elevation is specified as a fixed amount (target increase) above the natural (e.g., 100 year) profile. The encroachment stations are determined so that an equal loss of conveyance (at the higher elevation) occurs on each overbank, if possible. If half of the loss cannot be obtained in one overbank, the difference will be made up, if possible, in the other overbank, except that encroachments will not be allowed to fall within the main channel.

A target increase of 1.0 indicates that a 1 foot rise will be used to determine the encroachments based on equal conveyance. An alternate scheme to **equal** conveyance reduction is to reduce conveyance in **proportion** to the distribution of natural overbank conveyance. See Method 3 for an explanation of this. A key difference between Method 4 and Method 3 is that the reduction in conveyance is based on the higher water surface (target water surface) for Method 4, while Method 3 uses the lower water surface (natural water surface). An example of a Method 4 encroachment is shown in Figure 9.4.

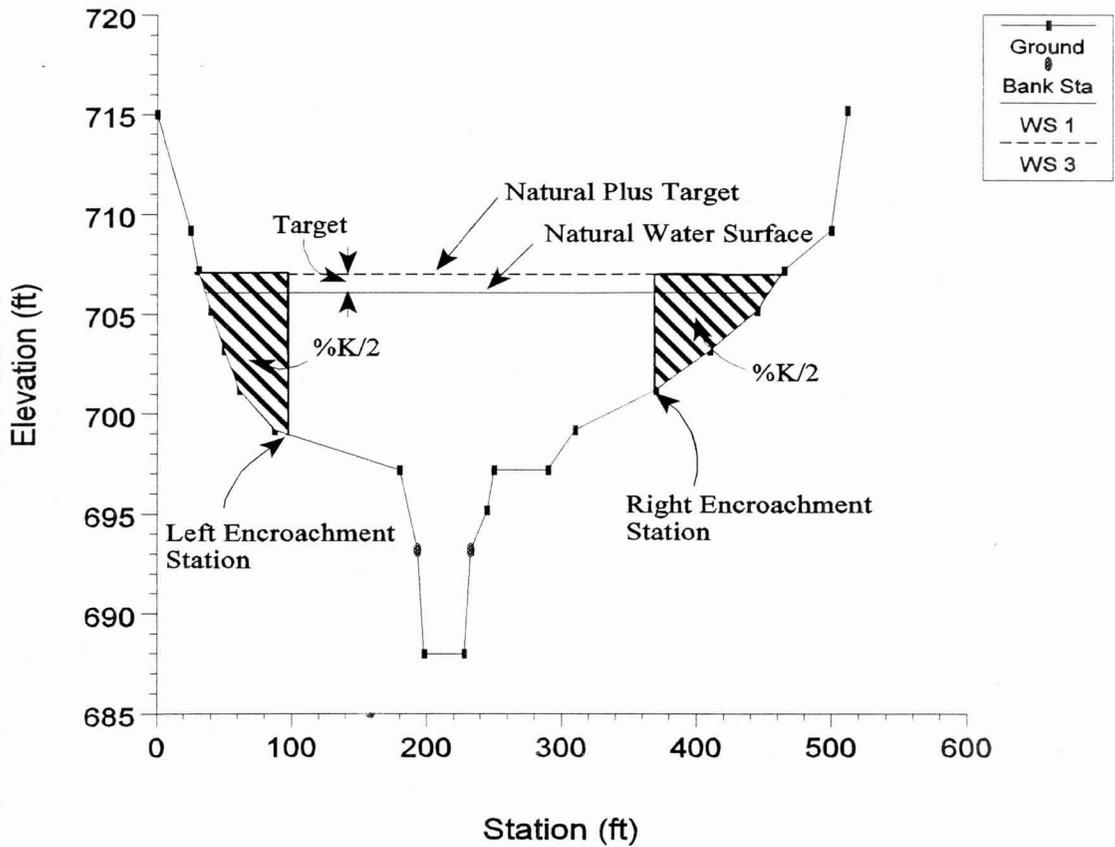


Figure 9.4 Example of Encroachment Method 4

### Encroachment Method 5

Method 5 operates much like Method 4 except that an optimization scheme is used to obtain the target difference in water surface elevation between natural and encroached conditions. A maximum of 20 trials is allowed in attempting a solution. Equal conveyance reduction is attempted in each overbank, unless this is not possible (i.e., the encroachment goes all the way into the bank station before the target is met). The input data for method 5 consists of a target water surface increase and a target energy increase. The program objective is to match the target water surface without exceeding the target energy. If this is not possible, the program will then try to find the encroachments that match the target energy. If no target energy is entered, the program will keep encroaching until the water surface target is met. If only a target energy is entered, the program will keep encroaching until the target energy is met. If neither of the criteria is met after 20 trials, the program will take the best answer from all the trials and use it as the final result. The target water surface

and energy can be changed at any cross section, like Methods 1 through 4. An example of method 5 is shown in Figure 9.5.

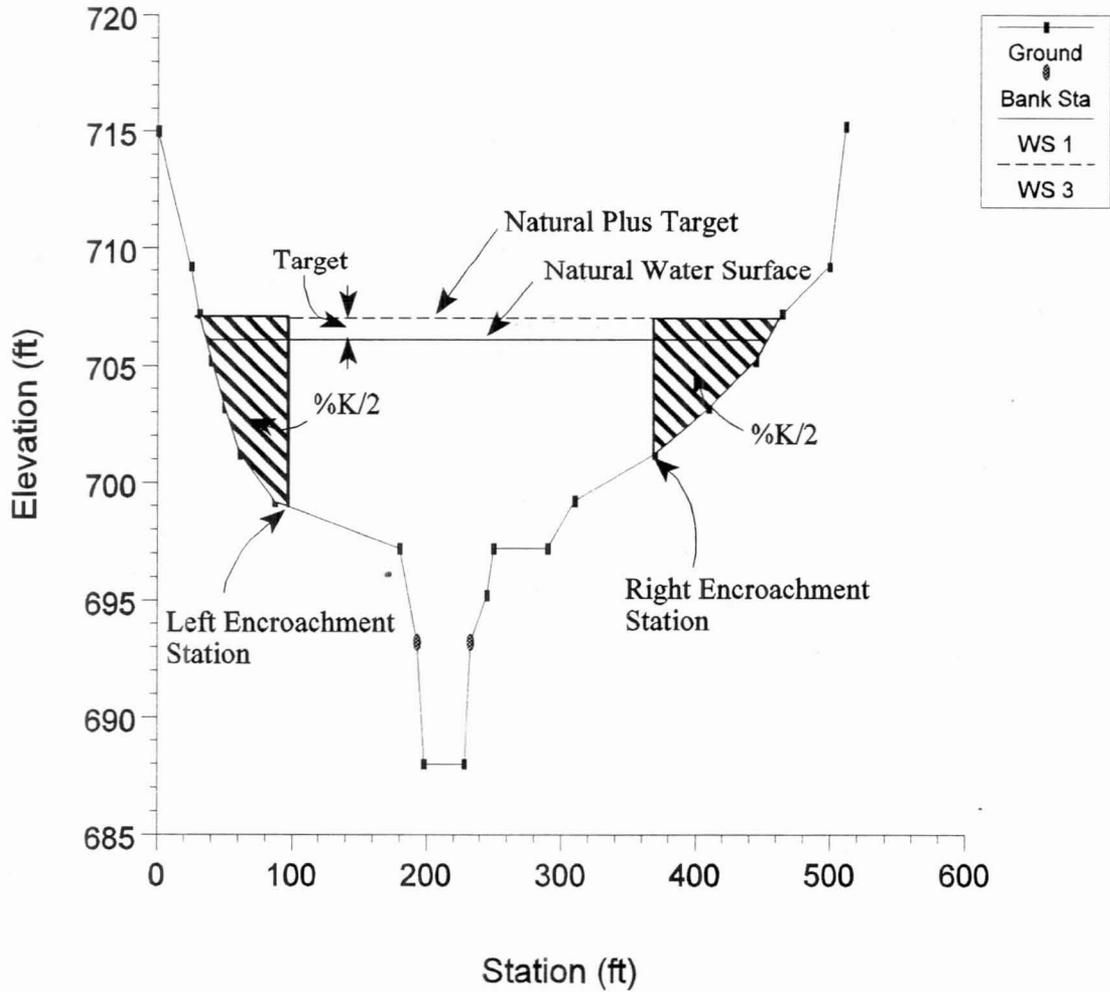


Figure 9.5 Example of Encroachment Method 5

## Bridge, Culvert, and Multiple Opening Encroachments

In general, the default methodology for encroachments at bridges, culverts, and multiple openings, is to use the downstream computed encroachments through the structure, and at the cross section just upstream of the structure (the program does this automatically). There are a few exceptions to this rule.

First, when using Method 1, the user can enter separate encroachment stations downstream of the structure, inside the structure, and upstream of the structure. Only one set of encroachments can be entered for inside of the structure.

Second, for encroachment methods 2 through 5, the program will allow for separate encroachment calculations at a bridge, when using the energy based bridge computation method. For all other bridge computation methods (Momentum, Yarnell, WSPRO, Pressure Flow, Pressure and Weir Flow, and Low Flow and Weir Flow) the program will use the computed downstream encroachments through the bridge and at the cross section just upstream.

At a culvert crossing or a multiple opening, when using encroachment methods 2 through 5, the program will always use the computed downstream encroachments through the structure and just upstream of the structure. The only way to override this is to use Method 1 encroachments.

Also, encroachments can be turned off at any bridge, culvert, or multiple opening.

## General Modeling Guidelines

The HEC-RAS floodway procedure is based on calculating a natural profile (no encroachments) as the first profile of a multiple profile run. Subsequent profiles are calculated with the various encroachment options available in the program.

In general, when performing a floodway analysis, encroachment methods 4 and 5 are normally used to get a first cut at the encroachment stations. Recognizing that the initial floodway computations may provide changes in water surface elevations greater, or less, than the "target" increase, initial computer runs are usually made with several "target" values. The initial computer results should then be analyzed for increases in water surface elevations, changes in velocities, changes in top width, and other parameters. Also, plotting the results with the X-Y-Z perspective plot, or onto a topographic map, is recommended. From these initial results, new estimates can be made and tried.

The increase in water surface elevation will frequently exceed the "target" used to compute the conveyance reduction and encroachment stations for the section. That is why several target increase values are generally used in the initial floodway computations.

After a few initial runs, the encroachment stations should become more defined. Because portions of several computed profiles may be used, additional runs with method 4 or 5 should be made with varying targets along the stream. The final computer runs are usually made with encroachment

Method 1 defining the specific encroachment stations at each cross section. Additional runs are often made with Method 1, allowing the user to adjust encroachment stations at specific cross sections to further define the floodway.

While the floodway analysis generally focuses on the change in water surface elevation, it is important to remember that the floodway must be consistent with local development plans and provide reasonable hydraulic transitions through the study reach. Sometimes the computed floodway solution, which provides computed water surfaces at or near the target maximum, may be unreasonable when transferred to the map of the actual study reach. If this occurs, the user may need to change some of the encroachment stations, based on the visual inspection of the topographic map. The floodway computations should be re-run with the new encroachment stations to ensure that the target maximum is not exceeded.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## CHAPTER 10

# Estimating Scour at Bridges

The computation of scour at bridges within HEC-RAS is based upon the methods outlined in Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 18 (HEC No. 18, FHWA, 1995). Before performing a scour analysis with the HEC-RAS software, the engineer should thoroughly review the procedures outlined in that report. This chapter presents the methods and equations for computing contraction scour and local scour at piers and abutments. Most of the material in this chapter was taken directly from the HEC No. 18 publication (FHWA, 1995).

For information on how to enter bridge scour data into HEC-RAS, to perform the bridge scour computations, and to view the bridge scour results, see Chapter 11 of the HEC-RAS user's manual.

### Contents

- General Modeling Guidelines
- Computing Contraction Scour
- Computing Local Scour at Piers
- Computing Local Scour at Abutments
- Total Scour Depths at Bridge Piers and Abutments

## General Modeling Guidelines

In order to perform a bridge scour analysis, the user must first develop a hydraulic model of the river reach containing the bridge to be analyzed. This model should include several cross sections downstream from the bridge, such that any user defined downstream boundary condition does not affect the hydraulic results inside and just upstream of the bridge. The model should also include several cross sections upstream of the bridge, in order to evaluate the long term effects of the bridge on the water surface profile upstream.

The hydraulic modeling of the bridge should be based on the procedures outlined in Chapter 5 of this manual. If observed data are available, the model should be calibrated to the fullest extent possible. Once the hydraulic model has been calibrated (if observed data are available), the modeler can enter the design events to be used for the scour analysis. In general, the design event for a scour analysis is usually the 100 year (1 percent chance) event. In addition to this event, it is recommended that a 500 year (0.2 percent chance) event also be used to evaluate the bridge foundation under a super-flood condition.

After performing the water surface profile calculations for the design events, the bridge scour can then be evaluated. The total scour at a highway crossing is comprised of three components: long-term aggradation or degradation; contraction scour; and local scour at piers and abutments. The scour computations in the HEC-RAS software allow the user to compute contraction scour and local scour at piers and abutments. The current version of the HEC-RAS software does not allow the user to evaluate long-term aggradation and degradation. Long term aggradation and degradation should be evaluated before performing the bridge scour analysis. Procedures for performing this type of analysis are outlined in the HEC No. 18 report, and are beyond the scope of this discussion. The remaining discussions in this chapter are limited to the computation of contraction scour and local pier and abutment scour.

## Computing Contraction Scour

Contraction scour occurs when the flow area of a stream is reduced by a natural contraction or a bridge constricting the flow. At a bridge crossing, many factors can contribute to the occurrence of contraction scour. These factors may include: the main channel naturally contracts as it approaches the bridge opening; the road embankments at the approach to the bridge cause all or a portion of the overbank flow to be forced into the main channel; the bridge abutments are projecting into the main channel; the bridge piers are blocking a significant portion of the flow area; and a drop in the downstream tailwater which causes increased velocities inside the bridge. There are two forms of contraction scour that can occur depending on how much bed material is

already being transported upstream of the bridge contraction reach. The two types of contraction scour are called live-bed contraction scour and clear-water contraction scour. Live-bed contraction scour occurs when bed material is already being transported into the contracted bridge section from upstream of the approach section (before the contraction reach). Clear-water contraction scour occurs when the bed material sediment transport in the uncontracted approach section is negligible or less than the carrying capacity of the flow.

### Contraction Scour Conditions

Four conditions (cases) of contraction scour are commonly encountered:

**Case 1.** Involves overbank flow on a floodplain being forced back to the main channel by the approaches to the bridge. Case 1 conditions include:

- a. The river channel width becomes narrower either due to the bridge abutments projecting into the channel or the bridge being located at a narrowing reach of the river.
- b. No contraction of the main channel, but the overbank flow area is completely obstructed by the road embankments.
- c. Abutments are set back away from the main channel.

**Case 2.** Flow is confined to the main channel (i.e., there is no overbank flow). The normal river channel width becomes narrower due to the bridge itself or the bridge site is located at a narrowing reach of the river.

**Case 3.** A relief bridge in the overbank area with little or no bed material transport in the overbank area (i.e., clear-water scour).

**Case 4.** A relief bridge over a secondary stream in the overbank area with bed material transport (similar to case one).

### Determination of Live-Bed or Clear-Water Contraction Scour

To determine if the flow upstream is transporting bed material (i.e., live-bed contraction scour), the program calculates the critical velocity for beginning of motion  $V_c$  (for the  $D_{50}$  size of bed material) and compares it with the mean velocity  $V$  of the flow in the main channel or overbank area upstream of the bridge at the approach section. If the critical velocity of the bed material is greater than the mean velocity at the approach section ( $V_c > V$ ), then clear-water contraction scour is assumed. If the critical velocity of the bed material is less than the mean velocity at the approach section ( $V_c < V$ ), then live-bed contraction scour is assumed. The user has the option of forcing the program to calculate contraction scour by the live-bed or clear-water contraction scour

equation, regardless of the results from the comparison. To calculate the critical velocity, the following equation by Laursen (1963) is used:

$$V_c = 10.95 y_1^{\frac{1}{6}} D_{50}^{\frac{1}{3}} \quad (10-1)$$

where:  $V_c$  = Critical velocity above which material of size  $D_{50}$  and smaller will be transported, ft/s (m/s)  
 $y_1$  = Average depth of flow in the main channel or overbank area at the approach section, ft (m)  
 $D_{50}$  = Bed material particle size in a mixture of which 50% are smaller, ft (m)

### Live-Bed Contraction Scour

The HEC No. 18 publication recommends using a modified version of Laursen's (1960) live-bed scour equation:

$$y_2 = y_1 \left[ \frac{Q_2}{Q_1} \right]^{\frac{6}{7}} \left[ \frac{W_1}{W_2} \right]^{k_1} \quad (10-2)$$

$$y_s = y_2 - y_0 \quad (10-3)$$

where:  $y_s$  = Average depth of contraction scour in feet (m).  
 $y_2$  = Average depth after scour in the contracted section, feet (m). This is taken as the section inside the bridge at the upstream end in HEC-RAS (section BU).  
 $y_1$  = Average depth in the main channel or floodplain at the approach section, feet (m).  
 $y_0$  = Average depth in the main channel or floodplain at the contracted section before scour, feet (m).  
 $Q_1$  = Flow in the main channel or floodplain at the approach section, which is transporting sediment, cfs ( $m^3/s$ ).  
 $Q_2$  = Flow in the main channel or floodplain at the contracted section, which is transporting sediment, cfs ( $m^3/s$ ).  
 $W_1$  = Bottom width in the main channel or floodplain at the approach section, feet (m). This is approximated as the top width of the active flow area in HEC-RAS.  
 $W_2$  = Bottom width of the main channel or floodplain at the contracted section less pier widths, feet (m). This is approximated as the top width of the active flow area.  
 $k_1$  = Exponent for mode of bed material transport.

$V_* / \omega$	$k_1$	Mode of Bed Material Transport
< 0.50	0.59	Mostly contact bed material discharge
0.50 to 2.0	0.64	Some suspended bed material discharge
> 2.0	0.69	Mostly suspended bed material discharge

$V_*$  =  $(g y_1 S_1)^{1/2}$ , shear velocity in the main channel or floodplain at the approach section, ft/s (m/s).

$\omega$  = Fall velocity of bed material based on  $D_{50}$ , ft/s (m/s).

$g$  = Acceleration of gravity, ft/s<sup>2</sup> (m/s<sup>2</sup>).

$S_1$  = Slope of the energy grade line at the approach section, ft/ft (m/m).

### Clear-Water Contraction Scour

The recommended clear-water contraction scour equation by the HEC No. 18 publication is an equation based on research from Laursen (1963):

$$y_2 = \left[ \frac{Q_2^2}{(C D_m^{2/3} W_2^2)} \right]^{3/7} \quad (10-4)$$

$$y_s = y_2 - y_0 \quad (10-5)$$

where  $D_m$  = Diameter of the smallest non-transportable particle in the bed material ( $1.25 D_{50}$ ) in the contracted section, feet (m).

$D_{50}$  = Median diameter of the bed material, feet (m).

$C$  = 120 for English units (40 for metric).

**Note:** If the bridge opening has overbank area, then a separate contraction scour computation is made for the main channel and each of the overbanks.

## Computing Local Scour at Piers

Pier scour occurs due to the acceleration of flow around the pier and the formation of flow vortices (known as the horseshoe vortex). The horseshoe vortex removes material from the base of the pier, creating a scour hole. As the depth of scour increases, the magnitude of the horseshoe vortex decreases, thereby reducing the rate at which material is removed from the scour hole. Eventually an equilibrium between bed material inflow and outflow is reached, and the scour hole ceases to grow.

The factors that affect the depth of local scour at a pier are: velocity of the flow just upstream of the pier; depth of flow; width of the pier; length of the pier if skewed to the flow; size and gradation of bed material; angle of attack of approach flow; shape of the pier; bed configuration; and the formation of ice jams and debris.

The HEC No. 18 report recommends the use of the Colorado State University (CSU) equation (Richardson, 1990) for the computation of pier scour under both live-bed and clear-water conditions. The CSU equation is the default equation in the HEC-RAS software. In addition to the CSU equation, an equation developed by Dr. David Froehlich (1991) has also been added as an alternative pier scour equation. The Froehlich equation is not recommended in the HEC No. 18 report, but has been shown to compare well with observed data.

### Computing Pier Scour With The CSU Equation

The CSU equation predicts maximum pier scour depths for both live-bed and clear-water pier scour. The equation is:

$$y_s = 2.0K_1K_2K_3K_4a^{0.65}y_1^{0.35}Fr_1^{0.43} \quad (10-6)$$

where:  $y_s$  = Depth of scour in feet (m)  
 $K_1$  = Correction factor for pier nose shape  
 $K_2$  = Correction factor for angle of attack of flow  
 $K_3$  = Correction factor for bed condition  
 $K_4$  = Correction factor for armoring of bed material  
 $a$  = Pier width in feet (m)  
 $y_1$  = Flow depth directly upstream of the pier in feet (m). This is taken from the flow distribution output for the cross section just upstream from the bridge.  
 $Fr_1$  = Froude Number directly upstream of the pier. This is taken from the flow distribution output for the cross section just upstream from the bridge.

**Note:** For round nose piers aligned with the flow, the maximum scour depth is limited as follows:

$$y_s \leq 2.4 \text{ times the pier width (a) for } Fr_1 \leq 0.8$$

$$y_s \leq 3.0 \text{ times the pier width (a) for } Fr_1 > 0.8$$

The correction factor for pier nose shape,  $K_1$ , is given in Table 10.1 below:

**Table 10.1**  
**Correction Factor,  $K_1$ , for Pier Nose Shape**

Shape of Pier Nose	$K_1$
(a) Square nose	1.1
(b) Round nose	1.0
(c) Circular cylinder	1.0
(d) Group of cylinders	1.0
(e) Sharp nose (triangular)	0.9

The correction factor for angle of attack of the flow,  $K_2$ , is calculated in the program with the following equation:

$$K_2 = (\cos\theta + \frac{L}{a} \sin\theta)^{0.65} \quad (10-7)$$

where:  $L$  = Length of the pier along the flow line, feet (m)  
 $\theta$  = Angle of attack of the flow, with respect to the pier

**Note:** If  $L/a$  is larger than 12, the program uses  $L/a = 12$  as a maximum in equation 10-7. If the angle of attack is greater than 5 degrees,  $K_2$  dominates and  $K_1$  should be set to 1.0 (the software does this automatically).

The correction factor for bed condition,  $K_3$ , is shown in table 10.2.

**Table 10.2**  
**Increase in Equilibrium Pier Scour Depth,  $K_3$ , For Bed Condition**

Bed Condition	Dune Height H feet	$K_3$
Clear-Water Scour	N/A	1.1
Plane Bed and Antidune Flow	N/A	1.1
Small Dunes	$10 > H \geq 2$	1.1
Medium Dunes	$30 > H \geq 10$	1.1 to 1.2
Large Dunes	$H \geq 30$	1.3

The correction factor  $K_4$  decreases scour depths for armoring of the scour hole for bed materials that have a  $D_{50}$  equal to or larger than 0.20 feet (0.06 m). The correction factor results from recent research by A. Molinas at CSU which showed that when the velocity ( $V_1$ ) is less than the critical velocity ( $V_{c90}$ ) of the  $D_{90}$  size of the bed material, and there is a gradation in sizes in the bed material, the  $D_{90}$  will limit the scour depth. The equation developed by J. S. Jones from analysis of the data is:

$$K_4 = [1 - 0.89(1 - V_R)^2]^{0.5} \quad (10-8)$$

where:

$$V_R = \left[ \frac{V_1 - V_i}{V_{c90} - V_i} \right] \quad (10-9)$$

$$V_i = 0.645 \left[ \frac{D_{50}}{a} \right]^{0.053} V_{c50} \quad (10-10)$$

- $V_R$  = Velocity ratio
- $V_1$  = Average velocity in the main channel or overbank area at the cross section just upstream of the bridge, ft/s (m/s)
- $V_i$  = Velocity when particles at a pier begin to move, ft/s (m/s)
- $V_{c90}$  = Critical velocity for  $D_{90}$  bed material size, ft/s (m/s)
- $V_{c50}$  = Critical velocity for  $D_{50}$  bed material size, ft/s (m/s)
- a = Pier width, ft (m)

$$V_c = 10.95 y^{1/6} D_c^{1/3} \quad (10-11)$$

$y$  = The depth of water just upstream of the pier, ft (m)  
 $D_c$  = Critical particle size for critical velocity  $V_c$ , ft (m)

Limiting  $K_4$  values and bed material size are given in Table 10.3.

**Table 10.3**  
Limits for Bed Material Size and  $K_4$  Values

Factor	Minimum Bed Material Size	Minimum $K_4$ Value	$V_R > 1.0$
$K_4$	$D_{50} \geq 0.2$ ft (0.06 m)	0.7	1.0

### Computing Pier Scour With The Froehlich Equation

A local pier scour equation developed by Dr. David Froehlich (Froehlich, 1991) has been added to the HEC-RAS software as an alternative to the CSU equation. This equation has been shown to compare well against observed data (FHWA, 1996). The equation is:

$$y_s = 0.32 \phi (a')^{0.62} y_1^{0.47} Fr_1^{0.22} D_{50}^{-0.09} + a \quad (10-12)$$

where:  $\phi$  = Correction factor for pier nose shape:  $\phi = 1.3$  for square nose piers;  $\phi = 1.0$  for rounded nose piers; and  $\phi = 0.7$  for sharp nose (triangular) piers.  
 $a'$  = Projected pier width with respect to the direction of the flow, feet (m)

**Note:** This form of Froehlich's equation is use to predict maximum pier scour for design purposes. The addition of one pier width ( $+ a$ ) is placed in the equation as a factor of safety. If the equation is to be used in an analysis mode (i.e. for predicting the scour of a particular event), Froehlich suggests dropping the addition of the pier width ( $+ a$ ). The HEC-RAS program always includes the addition of the pier width ( $+ a$ ) when computing pier scour. The pier scour from this equation is limited to a maximum in the same manner as the CSU equation. Maximum scour  $y_s \leq 2.4$  times the pier width ( $a$ ) for  $Fr_1 \leq 0.8$ , and  $y_s \leq 3.0$  times the pier width ( $a$ ) for  $Fr_1 > 0.8$ .

## Computing Local Scour at Abutments

Local scour occurs at abutments when the abutment obstructs the flow. The obstruction of the flow forms a horizontal vortex starting at the upstream end of the abutment and running along the toe of the abutment, and forms a vertical wake vortex at the downstream end of the abutment.

The HEC No. 18 report recommends two equations for the computation of live-bed abutment scour. When the wetted embankment length ( $L'$ ) divided by the approach flow depth ( $y_1$ ) is greater than 25, the HEC No. 18 report suggests using the HIRE equation (Richardson, 1990). When the wetted embankment length divided by the approach depth is less than or equal to 25, the HEC No. 18 report suggests using an equation by Froehlich (Froehlich, 1989).

### The HIRE Equation

The HIRE equation is based on field data of scour at the end of spurs in the Mississippi River (obtained by the USACE). The HIRE equation is:

$$y_s = 4 y_1 \left( \frac{K_1}{0.55} \right) K_2 Fr_1^{0.33} \quad (10-13)$$

- where:  $y_s$  = Scour depth in feet (m)  
 $y_1$  = Depth of flow at the toe of the abutment on the overbank or in the main channel, ft (m), taken at the cross section just upstream of the bridge.  
 $K_1$  = Correction factor for abutment shape, Table 10.4  
 $K_2$  = Correction factor for angle of attack ( $\theta$ ) of flow with abutment.  $\theta = 90^\circ$  when abutments are perpendicular to the flow,  $\theta < 90^\circ$  if embankment points downstream, and  $\theta > 90^\circ$  if embankment points upstream.  
 $Fr_1$  = Froude number based on velocity and depth adjacent and just upstream of the abutment toe

**Table 10.4**  
**Correction Factor for Abutment Shape,  $K_1$**

Description	$K_1$
Vertical-wall Abutment	1.00
Vertical-wall Abutment with wing walls	0.82
Spill-through Abutment	0.55

The correction factor,  $K_2$ , for angle of attack can be taken from Figure 10.1.

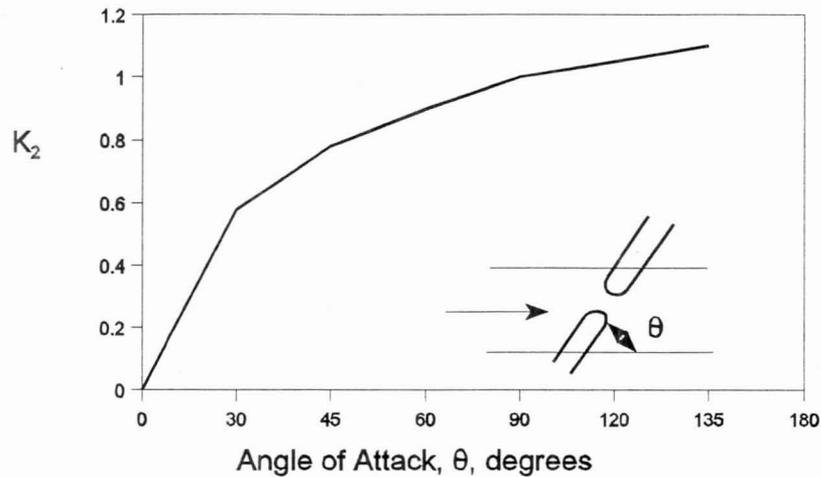


Figure 10.1 Correction Factor for Abutment Skew,  $K_2$

### Froehlich's Equation

Froehlich analyzed 170 live-bed scour measurements in laboratory flumes by regression analysis to obtain the following equation:

$$y_s = 2.27 K_1 K_2 (L')^{0.43} y_a^{0.57} Fr^{0.61} + y_a \quad (10-14)$$

- where:
- $y_s$  = Scour depth in feet (m)
  - $K_1$  = Correction factor for abutment shape, Table 10.4
  - $K_2$  = Correction factor for angle of attack ( $\theta$ ) of flow with abutment.  $\theta = 90^\circ$  when abutments are perpendicular to the flow,  $\theta < 90^\circ$  if embankment points downstream, and  $\theta > 90^\circ$  if embankment points upstream (Figure 10.1)
  - $L'$  = Length of abutment (embankment) projected normal to flow, ft (m)
  - $y_a$  = Average depth of flow on the floodplain at the approach section, ft (m)
  - $Fr$  = Froude number of the floodplain flow at the approach section,  $Fr = V_e / (gy_a)^{1/2}$
  - $V_e$  = Average velocity of the approach flow  $V_e = Q_e / A_e$  ft/s
  - $Q_e$  = Flow obstructed by the abutment and embankment at the approach section, cfs ( $m^3/s$ )
  - $A_e$  = Flow area of the approach section obstructed by the abutment and embankment,  $ft^2$  ( $m^2$ )

**Note:** The above form of the Froehlich equation is for design purposes. The addition of the average depth at the approach section,  $y_a$ , was added to the equation in order to envelope 98 percent of the data. If the equation is to be used in an analysis mode (i.e. for predicting the scour of a particular event), Froehlich suggests dropping the addition of the approach depth ( $+y_a$ ). The HEC-RAS program always calculates the abutment scour with the ( $+y_a$ ) included in the equation.

### Clear-Water Scour at Abutments

Clear-water scour can be calculated with equation 9-13 or 9-14 for live-bed scour because clear-water scour equations potentially decrease scour at abutments due to the presence of coarser material. This decrease is unsubstantiated by field data.

## Total Scour Depths Inside The Bridge

The total depth of scour is a combination of long-term bed elevation changes, contraction scour, and local scour at each individual pier and abutment. Once the scour is computed, the HEC-RAS software automatically plots the scour at the upstream bridge cross section. An example plot is shown in Figure 10.2 below.

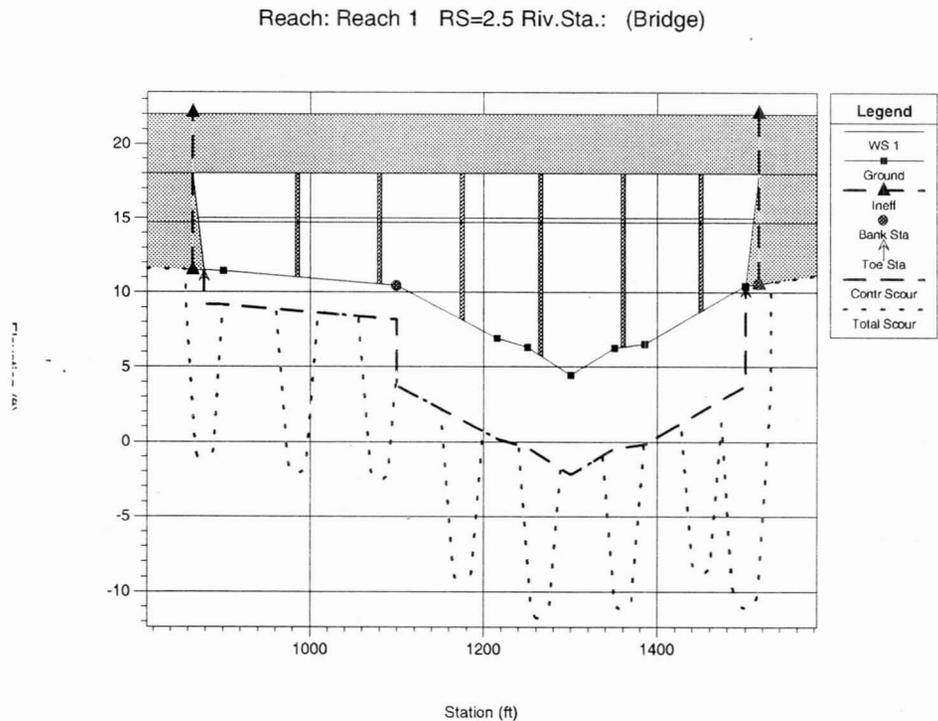


Figure 10.2 Graphic of Total Scour at The Bridge

As shown in figure 10.2, the program plots both contraction scour and total local scour. The contraction scour is plotted as a separate line below the existing conditions cross section data. The local pier and abutment scour are added to the contraction scour, and then plotted as total scour depths. The topwidth of the local scour hole around a pier is computed as  $2.0 y_s$  to each side of the pier. Therefore, the total topwidth of the scour hole at a pier is plotted as  $(4.0 y_s + a)$ . The topwidth of the local scour hole at abutments is plotted as  $2.0 y_s$  around each side of the abutment toe. Therefore, the total topwidth of the scour hole at abutments is plotted as  $4.0 y_s$ .

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## CHAPTER 11

# Modeling Ice-covered Rivers

HEC-RAS allows the user to model ice-covered channels at two levels. The first level is an ice cover with known geometry. In this case, the user specifies the ice cover thickness and roughness at each cross section. Different ice cover thicknesses and roughness can be specified for the main channel and for each overbank and both can vary along the channel. The second level is a wide-river ice jam. In this case, the ice jam thickness is determined at each section by balancing the forces on it. The ice jam can be confined to the main channel or can include both the main channel and the overbanks. The material properties of the wide-river jam can be selected by the user and can vary from cross section to cross section. The user can specify the hydraulic roughness of the ice jam or HEC-RAS will estimate the hydraulic roughness on the basis of empirical data.

This chapter describes the general guidelines for modeling ice-covered channels with HEC-RAS. It contains background material and the equations used. For information on how to enter ice cover data and to view results, see Chapter 6 and Chapter 8 of the HEC-RAS User's Manual.

### Contents

- Modeling Ice Covers with Known Geometry
- Modeling Wide-River Ice Jams

## Modeling Ice Covers with Known Geometry

Ice covers are common on rivers during the cold winter months and they form in a variety of ways. The actual ways in which an ice cover forms depend on the channel flow conditions and the amount and type of ice generated. In most cases, river ice covers float in hydrostatic equilibrium because they react both elastically and plastically (the plastic response is termed creep) to changes in water level. The thickness and roughness of ice covers can vary significantly along the channel and even across the channel. A stationary, floating ice cover creates an additional fixed boundary with an associated hydraulic roughness. An ice cover also makes a portion of the channel cross sectional area unavailable for flow. The net result is generally to reduce the channel conveyance, largely by increasing the wetted perimeter and reducing the hydraulic radius of a channel, but also by modifying the effective channel roughness and reducing the channel flow area.

The conveyance of a channel or any subdivision of an ice-covered channel,  $K_i$ , can be estimated using Manning's equation:

$$K_i = \frac{1.486}{n_c} A_i R_i^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad (11-1)$$

where

re:  $n_c$  = the composite roughness.  
 $A_i$  = the flow area beneath the ice cover.  
 $R_i$  = the hydraulic radius modified to account for the presence of ice.

The composite roughness of an ice-covered river channel can be estimated using the Belokon-Sabaneev formula as:

$$n_c = \left( \frac{n_b^{\frac{3}{2}} + n_i^{\frac{3}{2}}}{2} \right)^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad (11-2)$$

where:  $n_b$  = the bed Manning's roughness value.  
 $n_i$  = the ice Manning's roughness value.

The hydraulic radius of an ice-covered channel is found as:

$$R_i = \frac{A_i}{P_b + B_i} \quad (11-3)$$

where:  $P_b$  = the wetted perimeter associated with the channel bottom and side slopes  
 $B_i$  = the width of the underside of the ice cover

It is interesting to estimate the influence that an ice cover can have on the channel conveyance. For example, if a channel is roughly rectangular in shape and much wider than it is deep, then its hydraulic radius will be cut approximately in half by the presence of an ice cover. Assuming the flow area remains constant, we see that the addition of an ice cover, whose roughness is equivalent to the bed's, results in a reduction of conveyance of 37%.

Separate ice thickness and roughness can be entered for the main channel and each overbank, providing the user with the ability to have three separate ice thicknesses and ice roughness at each cross section. The ice thickness in the main channel and each overbank can also be set to zero. The ice cover geometry can change from section to section along the channel. The suggested range of Manning's  $n$  values for river ice covers is listed in Table 1.

The amount of a floating ice cover that is beneath the water surface is determined by the relative densities of ice and water. The ratio of the two densities is called the specific gravity of the ice. In general, the density of fresh water ice is about 1.78 slugs per cubic foot (the density of water is about 1.94 slugs per cubic foot), which corresponds to a specific gravity of 0.916. The actual density of a river ice cover will vary, depending on the amount of unfrozen water and the number and size of air bubbles incorporated into the ice. Accurate measurements of ice density are tedious, although possible. They generally tell us that the density of freshwater ice does not vary significantly from its nominal value of 0.916. In any case the user can specify a different density if necessary.

**Table 11.1**  
**Suggested Range of Manning's  $n$  Values for Ice Covered Rivers**

**The suggested range of Manning's  $n$  values for a single layer of ice**

Type of Ice	Condition	Manning's $n$ value
Sheet ice	Smooth	0.008 to 0.012
	Rippled ice	0.01 to 0.03
	Fragmented single layer	0.015 to 0.025
Frazil ice	New 1 to 3 ft thick	0.01 to 0.03
	3 to 5 ft thick	0.03 to 0.06
	Aged	0.01 to 0.02

The suggested range of Manning's n values for ice jams

Thickness ft	Manning's n value		
	Loose frazil	Frozen frazil	Sheet ice
0.3	-	-	0.015
1.0	0.01	0.013	0.04
1.7	0.01	0.02	0.05
2.3	0.02	0.03	0.06
3.3	0.03	0.04	0.08
5.0	0.03	0.06	0.09
6.5	0.04	0.07	0.09
10.0	0.05	0.08	0.10
16.5	0.06	0.09	-

## Modeling Wide-River Ice Jams

The wide river ice jam is probably the most common type of river ice jam. In this type, all stresses acting on the jam are ultimately transmitted to the channel banks. The stresses are estimated using the ice jam force balance equation:

$$\frac{d(\overline{\sigma_x t})}{dx} + \frac{2\tau_b t}{B} = \rho' g S_w t + \tau_i \quad (11-4)$$

where:  $\overline{\sigma_x}$  = the longitudinal stress (along stream direction)  
 $t$  = the accumulation thickness  
 $\tau_b$  = the shear resistance of the banks  
 $B$  = the accumulation width  
 $\rho'$  = the ice density  
 $g$  = the acceleration of gravity  
 $S_w$  = the water surface slope  
 $\tau_i$  = the shear stress applied to the underside of the ice  
 by the flowing water

This equation balances changes in the longitudinal stress in the ice cover and the stress acting on the banks with the two external forces acting on the jam: the gravitational force attributable to the slope of the water surface and the shear stress of the flowing water on the jam underside.

Two assumptions are implicit in this force balance equation: that  $\overline{\sigma_x}$ ,  $t$ , and  $\tau_i$  are constant across the width, and that none of the longitudinal stress is transferred to the channel banks through changes in stream width,

or horizontal bends in the plan form of the river. In addition, the stresses acting on the jam can be related to the mean vertical stress using the passive pressure concept from soil mechanics, and the mean vertical stress results only from the hydrostatics forces acting in the vertical direction. In the present case, we also assume that there is no cohesion between individual pieces of ice (reasonable assumption for ice jams formed during river ice breakup). A complete discussion of the granular approximation can be found elsewhere (Beltaos 1996).

In this light, the vertical stress,  $\bar{\sigma}_z$ , is:

$$\bar{\sigma}_z = \gamma_e t \quad (11-5a)$$

where:

$$\gamma_e = \frac{1}{2} \rho' g (1-s)(1-e) \quad (11-5b)$$

where:  $e$  = the ice jam porosity (assumed to be the same above and below the water surface)  
 $s$  = the specific gravity of ice

The longitudinal stress is then:

$$\bar{\sigma}_x = k_x \bar{\sigma}_z \quad (11-6a)$$

where:

$$k_x = \tan^2 \left( 45^\circ + \frac{\phi}{2} \right) \quad (11-6b)$$

$\phi$  = the angle of internal friction of the ice jam

The lateral stress perpendicular to the banks can also be related to the longitudinal stress as

$$\bar{\sigma}_y = k_1 \bar{\sigma}_x \quad (11-7)$$

where:  $k_1$  = the coefficient of lateral thrust

Finally, the shear stress acting on the bank can be related to the lateral stress:

$$\tau_b = k_o \bar{\sigma}_y \quad (11-8a)$$

where:

$$k_o = \tan \phi \quad (11-8b)$$

Using the above expressions, we can restate the ice jam force balance as:

$$\frac{dt}{dx} = \frac{1}{2k_x \gamma_e} \left[ \rho' g S_w + \frac{\tau_i}{t} \right] - \frac{k_o k_1 t}{B} = F \quad (11-9)$$

where:  $F$  = a shorthand description of the force balance equation

To evaluate the force balance equation, the under-ice shear stress must be estimated. The under-ice shear stress is:

$$\tau_i = \rho g R_{ic} S_f \quad (11-10)$$

where:  $R_{ic}$  = the hydraulic radius associated with the ice cover

$S_f$  = the friction slope of the flow

$R_{ic}$  can be estimated as:

$$R_{ic} = \left( \frac{n_i}{n_c} \right)^{1.5} R_i \quad (11-11)$$

The hydraulic roughness of an ice jam can be estimated using the empirical relationships derived from the data of Nezhikovsky (1964). For ice accumulations found in wide river ice jams that are greater than 1.5 ft thick, Manning's  $n$  value can be estimated as:

$$n_i = 0.0690 H^{-0.23} t_i^{0.40} \quad (11-12)$$

and for accumulations less than 1.5 ft thick

$$n_i = 0.0593 H^{-0.23} t_i^{0.77} \quad (11-13)$$

where:  $H$  = the total water depth  
 $t_i$  = the accumulation thickness

## Solution Procedure

The ice jam force balance equation is solved using an approach analogous to the standard step method. In this, the ice thickness at each cross section is found, starting from a known ice thickness at the upstream end of the ice jam. The ice thickness at the next downstream section is assumed and the value of  $F$  found. The ice jam thickness at this downstream cross section,  $t_{ds}$ , is then computed as:

$$t_{ds} = t_{us} + \overline{F}L \quad (11-14)$$

where:  $t_{us}$  = the thickness at the upstream section  
 $L$  = the distance between sections

and 
$$\overline{F} = \frac{(F_{us} + F_{ds})}{2}$$

The assumed value and computed value of  $t_{ds}$  are then compared. The new assumed value of the downstream ice jam thickness set equal to the old assumed value plus 33% of the difference between the assumed and computed value. This "local relaxation" is necessary to ensure that the ice jam calculations converge smoothly to a fixed value at each cross section. A maximum of 25 iterations is allowed for convergence. The above steps are repeated until the values converge to within 0.1 ft (0.03 m) or to a user defined tolerance.

After the ice thickness is calculated at a section, the following tests are made:

1. The ice thickness cannot completely block the river cross section. At least 1.0 ft must remain between the bottom of the ice and the minimum elevation in the channel available for flow.
2. The water velocity beneath the ice cover must be less than 5 fps (1.5 m/s) or a user defined maximum velocity. If the flow velocity beneath the ice jam at a section is greater than this, the ice thickness is reduced to produce a flow velocity of approximately 5 fps or the user defined maximum water velocity.
3. The ice jam thickness cannot be less than the thickness supplied by the user. If the calculated ice thickness is less than this value, it is set equal to the user supplied thickness.

It is necessary to solve the force balance equation and the energy equation (eq. 2-1) simultaneously for the wide river ice jam. However, difficulties arise because the energy equation is solved using the standard step

method, starting from the downstream end of the channel and proceeding upstream, while the force balance equation is solved starting from the upstream end and proceeding downstream. The energy equation can only be solved in the upstream direction because ice covers and wide river jams exist only under conditions of subcritical flow. To overcome this incompatibility and to solve both the energy and the ice jam force balance equations, the following solution scheme was adopted.

A first guess of the ice jam thickness is provided by the user to start this scheme. The energy equation is then solved using the standard step method starting at the downstream end. Next, the ice jam force balance equation is solved from the upstream to the downstream end of the channel. The energy equation and ice jam force balance equation are solved alternately until the ice jam thicknesses and water surface elevations converge to fixed values at each cross section. This is "global convergence."

Global convergence occurs when the water surface elevation at any cross section changes less than 0.06 ft, or a user supplied tolerance, and the ice jam thickness at any section changes less than 0.1 ft, or a user supplied tolerance, between successive solutions of the ice jam force balance equation. A total of 50 iterations (or a user defined maximum number) are allowed for convergence. Between iterations of the energy equation, the ice jam thickness at each section is allowed to vary by only 25% of the calculated change. This "global relaxation" is necessary to ensure that the entire water surface profile converges smoothly to a final profile.

## Appendix A References

- American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI), 1980. *Modern Sewer Design*, Washington D.C.
- Arcement, G. J., Jr., and V. R. Schneider, 1989. "Guide for Selecting Manning's Roughness Coefficient for Natural Channels and Floodplains," U.S. Geological Survey, Water Supply Paper 2339, 38 p., Washington D.C..
- Barkau, Robert L., 1992. *UNET, One-Dimensional Unsteady Flow Through a Full Network of Open Channels*, Computer Program, St. Louis, MO.
- Barnes, Harry H., Jr., 1967. "Roughness Characteristics of Natural Channels," U.S. Geological Survey, Water Supply Paper 1849, Washington D.C.
- Bradley, J.N., 1978. *Hydraulics of Bridge Waterways*, Hydraulic Design Series No. 1, Federal Highway Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, Second Edition, revised March 1978, Washington D.C.
- Bureau of Public Roads (BPR), 1965. *Hydraulic Charts for the Selection of Highway Culverts*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 5, U.S. Department of Commerce.
- Bureau of Reclamation, 1977. *Design of Small Dams*, Water Resources Technical Publication, Washington D.C..
- Chow, Ven Te, *Open Channel Flow*, McGraw - Hill Book Company, 1959
- Cowan, W.L., 1956. "Estimating Hydraulic Roughness Coefficients," *Agricultural Engineering*, Vol. 37, No. 7, pp 473-475.
- Fasken, G.B., 1963. "Guide for Selecting Roughness Coefficient n Values for Channels," Soil Conservation Service, US department of Agriculture, 45 p.
- Federal Emergency Management Agency, 1985. *Flood Insurance Study Guidelines and Specifications for Study Contractors*, FEMA 37, Washington D.C., September 1985.
- Federal Highway Administration, 1984. "Guide for Selecting Manning's Roughness Coefficients for Natural Channels and Flood Plains," Report No. FHWA-TS-84-204, McLean, Virginia.
- Federal Highway Administration, 1985. *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts*, Hydraulic Design Series No. 5, U.S. Department of Transportation, September 1985, Washington D.C..
- Federal Highway Administration, 1986. *Bridge Waterways Analysis Model: Research Report*, Report No. FHWA/RD-86/108, July 1986, Washington D.C..
- Federal Highway Administration, 1990. *User's Manual for WSPRO - A Computer Model for Water Surface Profile Computations*, Publication No. FHWA-IP-89-027, September 1990.

*References*

---

- Federal Highway Administration, 1995. *Evaluating Scour at Bridges*, Federal Highway Administration, HEC No. 18, Publication No. FHWA-IP-90-017, 3rd Edition, November 1995, Washington D.C.
- Federal Highway Administration, 1996. *Channel Scour at Bridges in the United States*, Publication No. FHWA-RD-95-184, August 1996, Washington D.C.
- Froehlich, D.C., 1989. *Local Scour at Bridge Abutments*, Proceedings of the 1989 National Conference on Hydraulic Engineering, ASCE, New Orleans, LA, pp. 13-18.
- Froehlich, D.C., 1991. *Analysis of Onsite Measurements of Scour at Piers*, Proceedings of the ASCE National Hydraulic Engineering Conference, Colorado Springs, CO.
- Hicks, D.M. and P.D. Mason, 1991. *Roughness Characteristics of New Zealand Rivers*, Water Resources Survey, DSIR Marine and Freshwater, New Zealand, June 1991.
- Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1986. "Accuracy of Computed Water Surface Profiles," Research Document 26, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis CA.
- Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1991. *HEC-2, Water Surface Profiles, User's Manual*, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis CA.
- Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1993. *UNET, One-Dimensional Unsteady Flow Through a Full Network of Open Channels, User's Manual*, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis, CA.
- Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1994. *HECDSS, User's Guide and Utility Programs Manual*, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis CA.
- Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1995. RD-41, A Comparison of the One-Dimensional Bridge Hydraulic Routines from: HEC-RAS, HEC-2, and WSPRO, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis CA., September 1995
- Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1995. RD-42, Flow Transitions in Bridge Backwater Analysis, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis CA., September 1995
- Jarrett, R.D., 1984. "Hydraulics of High Gradient Streams," A.S.C.E. Journal of Hydraulic Engineering, Vol. 110, No. 11, November 1984.
- King, H.W. and E.F. Brater 1963. *Handbook of Hydraulics*, Fifth Edition, McGraw Hill Book Company, New York.
- Laursen, E.M., 1960. *Scour at Bridge Crossings*, ASCE Journal of Hydraulic Engineering, Vol. 89, No. HY 3.
- Laursen, E.M., 1963. *An Analysis of Relief Bridges*, ASCE Journal of Hydraulic Engineering, Vol. 92, No. HY 3.

Lindsey, W.F., 1938. "Typical Drag Coefficients for Various Cylinders in Two Dimensional Flow," NACA Technical Report 619.

Limerinos, J.T., 1970. "Determination of the Manning Coefficient from Measured Bed Roughness in Natural Channels," U.S. Geological Survey, Water Supply Paper 1898-B, Washington D.C.

Microsoft Corporation, 1992. *Microsoft Windows 3.1*, User's Manual, Redmond WA.

Reed, J.R. and A.J. Wolfkill, 1976. "Evaluation of Friction Slope Models," River 76, Symposium on Inland Waterways for Navigation Flood Control and Water Diversions, Colorado State University, CO.

Richardson, E.V., D.B. Simons and P. Julien, 1990. *Highways in the River Environment*, FHWA-HI-90-016, Federal Highway Administration, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, D.C.

Shearman, J. O., 1990. User's Manual for WSPRO - A computer model for water surface profile computations, Federal Highway Administration, Publication No. FHWA-IP-89-027, 177 p.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, 1965. *Hydraulic Design of Spillways*, EM 1110-2-1603, Plate 33.

U.S. Geological Survey, 1953. Computation of Peak Discharge at Contractions, Geological Survey Circular No. 284, Washington, D.C.

U.S. Geological Survey, 1968. Measurement of Peak Discharge at Width Contractions By Indirect Methods, Water Resources Investigation, Book 3, Chapter A4, Washington, D.C.

Yarnell, D.L., 1934. "Bridge Piers as Channel Obstructions," Technical Bulletin 442, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington D.C.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## APPENDIX B

## Flow Transitions in Bridge Backwater Analysis

Bridges across floodplains may require special attention in one-dimensional hydraulic modeling if they cause severe contraction and expansion of the flow. The accurate prediction of the energy losses in the contraction reach upstream from the bridge and the expansion reach downstream from the bridge, using one-dimensional models, presents particular difficulty. Modeling these reaches requires the accurate evaluation of four parameters: the expansion reach length,  $L_e$ ; the contraction reach length,  $L_c$ ; the expansion coefficient,  $C_e$ ; and the contraction coefficient,  $C_c$ . Research was conducted at the Hydrologic Engineering Center to investigate these four parameters through the use of field data, two-dimensional hydraulic modeling, and one-dimensional modeling. The conclusions and recommendations from that study are reported in this appendix. For further information regarding this study, the reader should obtain a copy of Research Document 42 (HEC, 1995).

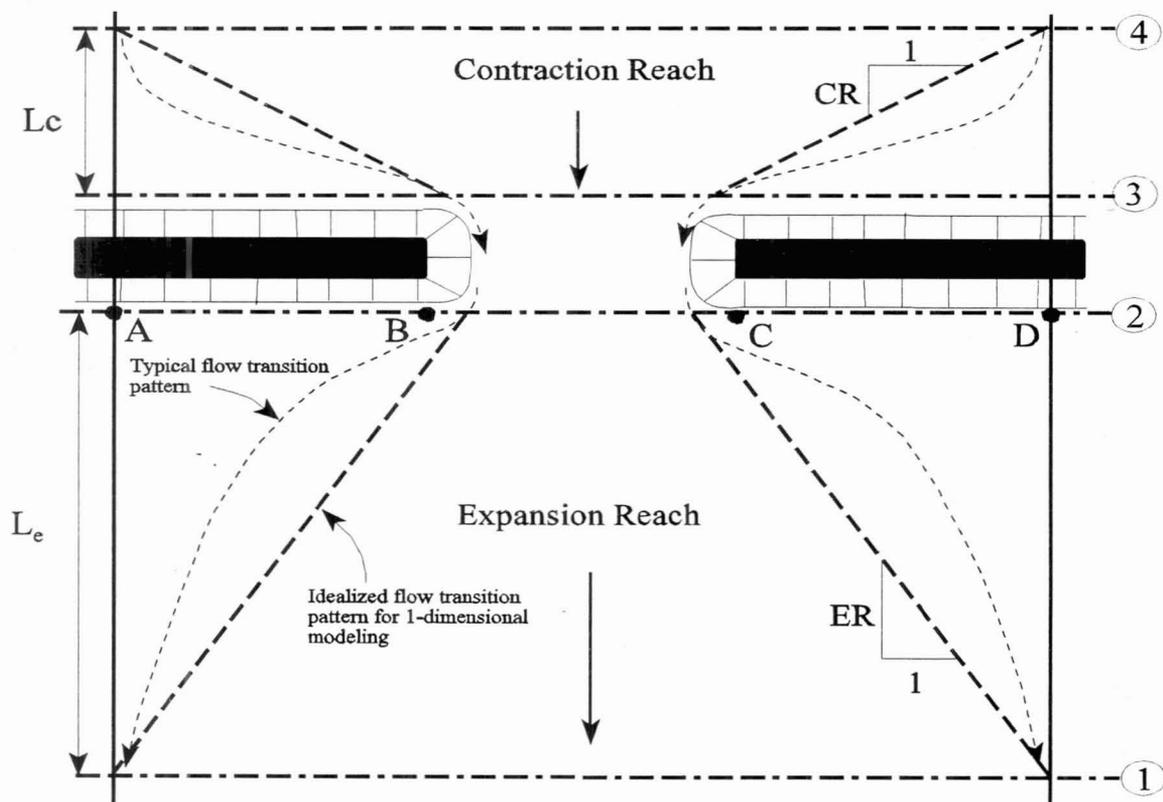


Figure B-1 Typical Cross Section Layout for Bridge Modeling

The data used in this study consisted of 3 actual bridge sites and 76 idealized bridge sites. The field data had certain hydraulic characteristics in common. All had wide, heavily vegetated overbanks, with Manning's  $n$  values from 0.07 to 0.24, and slopes between 2.5 feet/mile and 8.0 feet/mile. To extend the scope and general applicability of the study, it was decided to create a large number of two-dimensional models (using RMA-2, King, 1994) of idealized floodplain and bridge geometries. Figure 2 shows a typical cross section for the idealized cases. The overall floodplain width was constant at 1000 feet. The main channel  $n$  value was constant at 0.04. The other pertinent parameters were systematically varied as follows:

Bridge opening width, $b$	100, 250, and 500 feet
Discharge, $Q$	5000, 10000, 20000, and 30000 cfs
Overbank Manning coef., $n_{ob}$	0.04, 0.08, and 0.16
Bed slope, $S$	1, 5, and 10 feet/mile

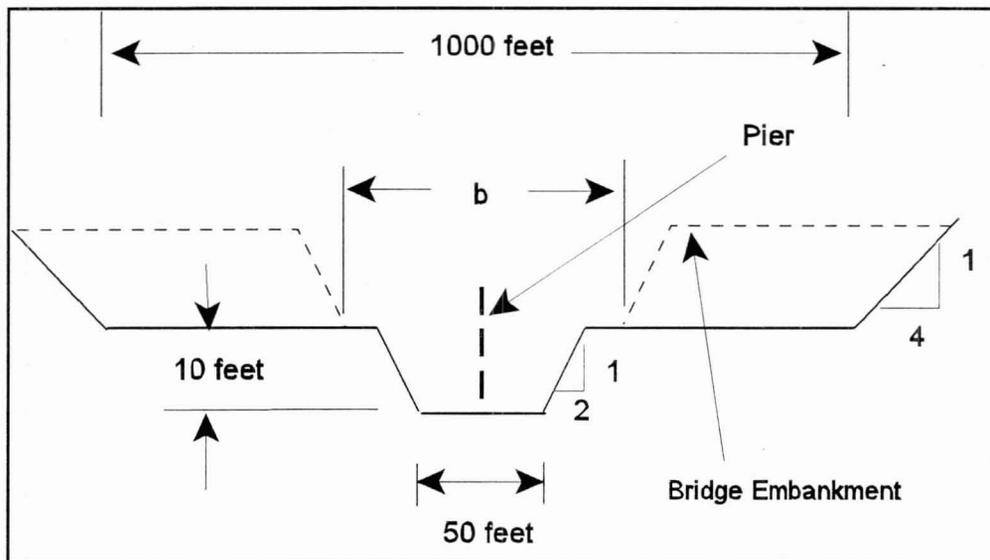


Figure B-2 Idealized Case Cross Section.

In addition to the systematic variation of these parameters, eleven additional cases were created which had vertical abutments rather than spill-through abutments, six cases were developed which had asymmetric rather than symmetric bridge obstructions, and four more cases were studied which were enlarged-scale and reduced-scale versions of four of the standard cases. A total of 97 idealized models were created.

Once the data were collected for all of the idealized models, they were analyzed with the aid of the statistical analysis program STATGRAPHICS (STSC, 1991). The goals of the statistical analysis were to compile summary

statistics and develop regression relationships for the parameters of interest where possible. Table B.1 lists the summary statistics for the four parameters of interest.

**Table B.1**  
Summary Statistics

Variable	$L_e$	$L_c$	$C_e$	$C_c$
Sample size	76	76	76	76
Average	564 feet	386 feet	0.27	0.11
Median	510 feet	360 feet	0.30	0.10
Standard deviation	249 feet	86 feet	0.15	0.06
Minimum	260 feet	275 feet	0.10	0.10
Maximum	1600 feet	655 feet	0.65	0.50
Range	1340 feet	380 feet	0.55	0.40

The regression relationships were required to express  $L_e$ ,  $L_c$ ,  $C_e$ , and  $C_c$  as functions of independent hydraulic variables which could be easily evaluated by the users of a one-dimensional model such as HEC-RAS. Some of the independent variables used in the regression analysis, such as discharge, slope, and roughness, had been set in defining each case. The other variables, such as Froude numbers, discharge distributions, velocities, depths, and conveyances, were evaluated from the HEC-RAS models which had been developed for each case. The raw independent variables were then entered into a spreadsheet. In the spreadsheet other variables were created as ratios and multiples of some of the raw variables.

After the spreadsheet of independent variables was complete, it was saved as an ASCII text file, which was in turn converted into a STATGRAPHICS data file. Only the cases with symmetric openings and spill-through abutments were included in the regression analyses. Those cases which had asymmetric openings or vertical abutments were later compared with the corresponding symmetric, spill-through cases.

## Conclusions From The Study

The research has successfully provided valuable insight with regard to all four parameters of concern. Also, strong relationships between the expansion reach length, the contraction reach length and the expansion coefficient and the independent variables that affect them have emerged from the analysis of the idealized two-dimensional models. The insights gained and relationships determined from this study provide a basis for improved guidance in the bridge-related application of one-dimensional models such as HEC-RAS and HEC-2.

### Expansion Reach Lengths ( $L_e$ on Figure B-1)

Of all of the two-dimensional cases created for this study, which included a wide range of hydraulic and geometric conditions, none of the cases had an expansion ratio (ER on Figure B-1) as great as 4:1. Most of the cases had expansion ratios between 1:1 and 2:1. This indicates that a dogmatic use of the traditional 4:1 rule of thumb for the expansion ratio leads to a consistent over prediction of the energy losses in the expansion reach in most cases. The accompanying over prediction of the water surface elevation at the downstream face of the bridge may be conservative for flood stage prediction studies. For bridge scour studies, however, this overestimation of the tailwater elevation could in some circumstances lead to an underestimation of the scour potential.

The results from the two-dimensional flow models did not always indicate the presence of large-scale flow separations or eddy zones downstream of the bridge. Their presence corresponded with the larger values of  $L_e$ . For many of the cases there was no significant separation evident in the results. In sensitivity tests, the presence or absence of eddy zones was not sensitive to the eddy viscosity coefficient value. Likewise, eddy viscosity settings did not have an appreciable effect on  $L_e$ .

It was found that the ratio of the channel Froude number at Section 2 to that at Section 1 ( $F_{c2}/F_{c1}$ ) correlated strongly with the length of the expansion reach. Regression equations were developed for both the expansion reach length and the expansion ratio. The equations are presented later in this appendix. Both equations are linear and contain terms involving the Froude number ratio and the discharge. The equation for expansion length also includes the average obstruction length in one term. To use these regression equations in the

application of a one-dimensional model will usually require an iterative process since the hydraulic properties at Section 2 will not be known in advance. The effort involved in this process will not be large, however, because the method will usually converge rapidly.

The value of the Froude number ratio reflects important information about the relationship between the constricted flow and the normal flow conditions. It is in effect a measure of the degree of flow constriction since it compares the intensity of flow at the two locations. Since these Froude numbers are for the main channel only, the value of  $F_{c1}$  also happens to reflect to some extent the distribution of flow between the overbanks and main channel.

There was no support from these investigations for the WSPRO concept of the expansion reach length being proportional to or equal to the bridge opening width.

### **Contraction Reach Lengths ( $L_c$ on Figure B-1)**

While the apparent contraction ratios of the five field prototype cases were all below 1:1, the contraction ratios (CR on Figure B-1) for the idealized cases ranged from 0.7:1 to 2.3:1. As with the expansion reach lengths, these values correlated strongly with the same Froude number ratio. A more important independent variable, however, is the decimal fraction of the total discharge conveyed in the overbanks ( $Q_{ob}/Q$ ) at the approach section. A strong regression equation was developed for the contraction length and is presented later in this appendix.

Because the mean and median values of the contraction ratios were both around 1:1, there is some support from this study for the rule of thumb which suggests the use of a 1:1 contraction ratio. There is no support, however, for the concept of the contraction reach length being equal to or proportional to the bridge opening width.

### **Expansion Coefficients**

Regression analysis for this parameter was only marginally successful. The resulting relationship is a function of the ratio of hydraulic depth in the overbank to that in the main channel for undisturbed conditions (evaluated at Section 1). Perhaps more interesting are the summary statistics, which indicate lower values for this coefficient than the traditional standard values for bridges.

### **Contraction Coefficients**

Owing to the nature of this data (69 out of 76 cases had the minimum value of 0.10), a regression analysis was not fruitful. Like the expansion coefficients, the prevailing values are significantly lower than the standard recommended values.

### **Asymmetric Bridge Openings**

For these data the averages of the reach length values for the two corresponding symmetric cases closely approximated the values determined for the asymmetric cases. When the regression equations for  $L_c$ , ER, and  $L_c$  were applied to the asymmetric cases, the predicted values were near the observed values. This indicates that the regression relationships for the transition reach lengths can also be applied to asymmetric cases (that is, most real-world cases).

### **Vertical-Abutment Cases**

For these data there was no major effect on the transition lengths or the coefficients due to the use of vertical rather than spill-through abutments. The exceptions to this statement were three vertical-abutment cases in the narrow-opening class for which square corners were used. The square-cornered abutments were a deliberate attempt to model a very severe situation. Because the RMA-2 program, or any two-dimensional numerical model for that matter, is not well-formulated to handle such drastic boundary conditions, no general conclusions should be drawn from these cases about actual field sites having such a configuration.

## **Recommendations From The Study**

The remainder of this appendix presents recommendations arising from the results documented in RD-42 (HEC,1995). These recommendations are intended to provide the users of one-dimensional water surface profile programs, such as HEC-RAS, with guidance on modeling the flow transitions in bridge hydraulics problems.

In applying these recommendations, the modeler should always consider the range of hydraulic and geometric conditions included in the data. Wherever possible, the transition reach lengths used in the model should be validated by field observations of the site in question, preferably under conditions of high discharge. The evaluation of contraction and expansion coefficients should ideally be substantiated by site-specific calibration data, such as stage-discharge

measurements just upstream of the bridge. The following recommendations are given in recognition of the fact that site-specific field information is often unavailable or very expensive to obtain.

### Expansion Reach Lengths

In some types of studies, a high level of sophistication in the evaluation of the transition reach lengths is not justified. For such studies, and for a starting point in more detailed studies, Table B.1 offers ranges of expansion ratios which can be used for different degrees of constriction, different slopes, and different ratios of overbank roughness to main channel roughness. Once an expansion ratio is selected, the distance to the downstream end of the expansion reach (the distance  $L_e$  on Figure B-1) is found by multiplying the expansion ratio by the average obstruction length (the average of the distances A to B and C to D from Figure B-1). The average obstruction length is half of the total reduction in floodplain width caused by the two bridge approach embankments. In Table B.2,  $b/B$  is the ratio of the bridge opening width to the total floodplain width,  $n_{ob}$  is the Manning  $n$  value for the overbank,  $n_c$  is the  $n$  value for the main channel, and  $S$  is the longitudinal slope. The values in the interior of the table are the ranges of the expansion ratio. For each range, the higher value is typically associated with a higher discharge.

**Table B.2**  
Ranges of Expansion Ratios

		$n_{ob} / n_c = 1$	$n_{ob} / n_c = 2$	$n_{ob} / n_c = 4$
$b/B = 0.10$	$S = 1$ ft/mile	1.4 - 3.6	1.3 - 3.0	1.2 - 2.1
	5 ft/mile	1.0 - 2.5	0.8 - 2.0	0.8 - 2.0
	10 ft/mile	1.0 - 2.2	0.8 - 2.0	0.8 - 2.0
$b/B = 0.25$	1 ft/mile	1.6 - 3.0	1.4 - 2.5	1.2 - 2.0
	5 ft/mile	1.5 - 2.5	1.3 - 2.0	1.3 - 2.0
	10 ft/mile	1.5 - 2.0	1.3 - 2.0	1.3 - 2.0
$b/B = 0.50$	1 ft/mile	1.4 - 2.6	1.3 - 1.9	1.2 - 1.4
	5 ft/mile	1.3 - 2.1	1.2 - 1.6	1.0 - 1.4
	10 ft/mile	1.3 - 2.0	1.2 - 1.5	1.0 - 1.4

The ranges in Table B.2, as well as the ranges of other parameters to be presented later in this appendix, capture the ranges of the idealized model data from this study. Another way of establishing reasonable ranges would be to compute statistical confidence limits (such as 95% confidence limits) for the regression equations. Confidence limits in

multiple linear regression equations have a different value for every combination of values of the independent variables (Haan, 1977). The computation of these limits entails much more work and has a more restricted range of applicability than the corresponding limits for a regression which is based on only one independent variable. The confidence limits were, therefore, not computed in this study.

Extrapolation of expansion ratios for constriction ratios, slopes or roughness ratios outside of the ranges used in this table should be done with care. The expansion ratio should not exceed 4:1, nor should it be less than 0.5:1 unless there is site-specific field information to substantiate such values. The ratio of overbank roughness to main-channel roughness provides information about the relative conveyances of the overbank and main channel. The user should note that in the data used to develop these recommendations, all cases had a main-channel  $n$  value of 0.04. For significantly higher or lower main-channel  $n$  values, the  $n$  value ratios will have a different meaning with respect to overbank roughness. It is impossible to determine from the data of this study whether this would introduce significant error in the use of these recommendations.

When modeling situations which are similar to those used in the regression analysis (floodplain widths near 1000 feet; bridge openings between 100 and 500 feet wide; flows ranging from 5000 to 30000 cfs; and slopes between one and ten feet per mile) the regression equation for the expansion reach length can be used with confidence. The equation developed for the expansion reach length is as follows:

$$L_e = -298 + 257 \left( \frac{F_{c2}}{F_{c1}} \right) + 0.918 (\bar{L}_{obs}) + 0.00479 (Q) \quad (B-1)$$

where:  $L_e$  = length of the expansion reach, in feet  
 $F_{c2}$  = main channel Froude number at Section 2  
 $F_{c1}$  = main channel Froude number at Section 1  
 $\bar{L}_{obs}$  = average length of obstruction caused by the two bridge approaches, in feet, and  
 $Q$  = total discharge, cfs

When the width of the floodplain and the discharge are smaller than those of the regression data (1000 ft wide floodplain and 5000 cfs discharge), the expansion ratio can be estimated by Equation B-2. The computed value should be checked against ranges in Table B-1. Equation B-2 is:

$$ER = \frac{L_e}{L_{obs}} = 0.421 + 0.485 \left( \frac{F_{c2}}{F_{c1}} \right) + 1.80 \times 10^{-5} (Q) \quad (B-2)$$

When the scale of the floodplain is significantly larger than that of the data, particularly when the discharge is much higher than 30,000 cfs, Equations B-1 and B-2 will overestimate the expansion reach length. Equation B-3 should be used in such cases, but again the resulting value should be checked against the ranges given in Table B.1:

$$ER = \frac{L_e}{L_{obs}} = 0.489 + 0.608 \left( \frac{F_{c2}}{F_{c1}} \right) \quad (B-3)$$

The depth at Section 2 is dependent upon the expansion reach length, and the Froude number at the same section is a function of the depth. This means that an iterative process is required to use the three equations above, as well as the equations presented later in this chapter for contraction reach lengths and expansion coefficients. It is recommended that the user start with an expansion ratio from Table B.1, locate Section 1 according to that expansion ratio, set the main channel and overbank reach lengths as appropriate, and limit the effective flow area at Section 2 to the approximate bridge opening width. The program should then be run and the main channel Froude numbers at Sections 2 and 1 read from the model output. Use these Froude number values to determine a new expansion length from the appropriate equation, move Section 1 as appropriate and recompute. Unless the geometry is changing rapidly in the vicinity of Section 1, no more than two iterations after the initial run should be required.

When the expansion ratio is large, say greater than 3:1, the resulting reach length may be so long as to require intermediate cross sections which reflect the changing width of the effective flow area. These intermediate sections are necessary to reduce the reach lengths when they would otherwise be too long for the linear approximation of energy loss that is incorporated in the standard step method. These interpolated sections are easy to create in the HEC-RAS program, because it has a graphical cross section interpolation feature. The importance of interpolated sections in a given reach can be tested by

first inserting one interpolated section and seeing the effect on the results. If the effect is significant, the subreaches should be subdivided into smaller units until the effect of further subdivision is inconsequential.

### Contraction Reach Lengths

Ranges of contraction ratios (CR) for different conditions are presented in Table B.3. These values should be used as starting values and for studies which do not justify a sophisticated evaluation of the contraction reach length. Note that this table does not differentiate the ranges on the basis of the degree of constriction. For each range the higher values are typically associated with higher discharges and the lower values with lower discharges.

**Table B.3**  
Ranges of Contraction Ratios (CR)

	$n_{ob} / n_c = 1$	$n_{ob} / n_c = 2$	$n_{ob} / n_c = 4$
S = 1 ft/mile	1.0 - 2.3	0.8 - 1.7	0.7 - 1.3
5 ft/mile	1.0 - 1.9	0.8 - 1.5	0.7 - 1.2
10 ft/mile	1.0 - 1.9	0.8 - 1.4	0.7 - 1.2

When the conditions are within or near those of the data, the contraction reach length regression equation (Equation B-4) may be used with confidence:

$$L_c = 263 + 38.8 \left( \frac{F_{c2}}{F_{c1}} \right) + 257 \left( \frac{Q_{ob}}{Q} \right)^2 - 58.7 \left( \frac{n_{ob}}{n_c} \right)^{0.5} + 0.161 (\bar{L}_{obs}) \quad (B-4)$$

- where:  $\bar{L}_{obs}$  = average length of obstruction as described earlier in this chapter, in feet  
 $Q_{ob}$  = the discharge conveyed by the two overbanks, in cfs, at the approach section (Section 4)  
 $n_{ob}$  = the Manning  $n$  value for the overbanks at Section 4, and  
 $n_c$  = the Manning  $n$  value for the main channel at Section 4

In cases where the floodplain scale and discharge are significantly larger or smaller than those that were used in developing the regression formulae, Equation B-4 should not be used. The recommended approach for estimating the contraction ratio at this time is to compute a value from Equation B-5 and check it against the values in Table B.3:

$$CR = 1.4 - 0.333\left(\frac{F_{c2}}{F_{c1}}\right) + 1.86\left(\frac{Q_{ob}}{Q}\right)^2 - 0.19\left(\frac{n_{ob}}{n_c}\right)^{0.5} \quad (B-5)$$

As with the expansion reach lengths, the modeler must use Equations B-4 and B-5 and the values from Table B.2 with extreme caution when the prototype is outside of the range of data used in this study. The contraction ratio should not exceed 2.5:1 nor should it be less than 0.3:1.

### Expansion Coefficients

The analysis of the data with regard to the expansion coefficients did not yield a regression equation which fit the data well. Equation B-6 was the best equation obtained for predicting the value of this coefficient:

$$C_e = -0.09 + 0.570\left(\frac{D_{ob}}{D_c}\right) + 0.075\left(\frac{F_{c2}}{F_{c1}}\right) \quad (B-6)$$

where:  $D_{ob}$  = hydraulic depth (flow area divided by top width) for the overbank at the fully-expanded flow section (Section 1), in feet, and  
 $D_c$  = hydraulic depth for the main channel at the fully-expanded flow section, in feet

It is recommended that the modeler use Equation B-6 to find an initial value, then perform a sensitivity analysis using values of the coefficient that are 0.2 higher and 0.2 lower than the value from Equation B-6. The plus or minus 0.2 range defines the 95% confidence band for Equation B-6 as a predictor within the domain of the regression data. If the difference in results between the two ends of this range is substantial, then the conservative value should be used. The expansion coefficient should not be higher than 0.80.

### Contraction Coefficients

The data of this study did not lend itself to regression of the contraction coefficient values. For nearly all of the cases the value that was determined was 0.1, which was considered to be the minimum acceptable value. The following table presents recommended ranges of the contraction coefficient for various degrees of constriction, for use in the absence of calibration information.

**Table B.4**  
Contraction Coefficient Values

Degree of Constriction	Recommended Contraction Coefficient
$0.0 < b/B < 0.25$	0.3 - 0.5
$0.25 < b/B < 0.50$	0.1 - 0.3
$0.50 < b/B < 1.0$	0.1

The preceding recommendations represent a substantial improvement over the guidance information that was previously available on the evaluation of transition reach lengths and coefficients. They are based on data which, like all data, have a limited scope of direct application. Certain situations, such as highly skewed bridge crossings and bridges at locations of sharp curvature in the floodplain were not addressed by this study. Even so, these recommendations may be applicable to such situations if proper care is taken and good engineering judgement is employed.

## APPENDIX C

# Computational Differences Between HEC-RAS and HEC-2

HEC-RAS is a completely new software product. None of the computational routines in the HEC-2 program were used in the HEC-RAS software. When HEC-RAS was being developed, a significant effort was spent on improving the computational capabilities over those in the HEC-2 program. Because of this, there are computational differences between the two programs. This appendix describes all of the major areas in which computational differences can occur.

## Cross Section Conveyance Calculations

Both HEC-RAS and HEC-2 utilize the Standard Step method for balancing the energy equation to compute a water surface for a cross section. A key element in the solution of the energy equation is the calculation of conveyance. The conveyance is used to determine friction losses between cross sections, the flow distribution at a cross section, and the velocity weighing coefficient alpha. The approach used in HEC-2 is to calculate conveyance between every coordinate point in the cross section overbanks (Figure 1). The conveyance is then summed to get the total left overbank and right overbank values. HEC-2 does not subdivide the main channel for conveyance calculations. This method of computing overbank conveyance can lead to different amounts of total conveyance when additional points are added to the cross section, without actually changing the geometry. The HEC-RAS program supports this method for calculating conveyance, but the default method is to make conveyance calculations only at n-value break points (Figure 2).

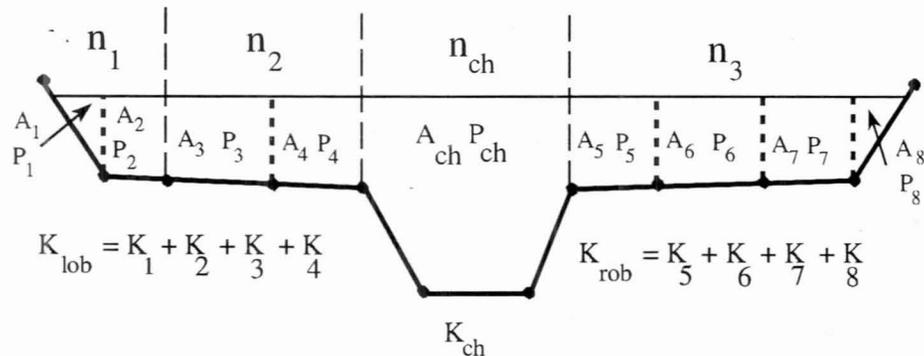


Figure 1. HEC-2 Conveyance Subdivision

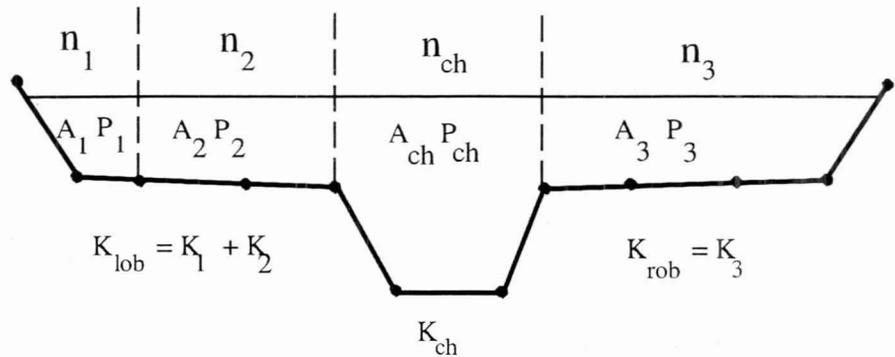


Figure 2. HEC-RAS Default Conveyance Subdivision Method

### Testing Using HEC-2 Conveyance Calculation Approach

Comparisons of HEC-RAS results with those from HEC-2 were performed using 97 data sets from the HEC profile accuracy study (HEC, 1986). Water surface profiles were computed for 10% and 1% chance floods using HEC-2 and HEC-RAS, both programs using the HEC-2 approach for computing overbank conveyance. Table 1 shows the percentage, of approximately 2000 cross sections, within  $\pm 0.02$  feet ( $\pm 6$  mm). For the 10% chance flood, 53 cross sections had difference greater than  $\pm 0.02$  feet (6 mm). For those sections, 62.2% were caused by differences in computation of critical depth and 34% resulted from propagation of the difference upstream. For the 1% chance flood, 88 sections had elevation differences over  $\pm 0.02$  feet (6 mm), of which 60.2% resulted from critical depth and 36.4% from the upstream propagation of downstream differences. HEC-RAS uses 0.01 feet (3 mm) for the critical depth error criterion, while HEC-2 uses 2.5% of the depth of flow.

Table 1.  
Computed Water Surface Elevation Difference (HEC-RAS - HEC-2)

Difference (feet)	-0.02	-0.01	0.0	0.01	0.02	Total
10% Chance Flood	0.8%	11.2%	73.1%	11.2%	0.6%	96.9%
1% Chance Flood	2.0%	11.6%	70.1%	10.8%	1.3%	95.8%

## Testing Using HEC-RAS and HEC-2 Approach

The two methods for computing conveyance will produce different answers whenever portions of the overbanks have ground sections with significant vertical slopes. In general, the HEC-RAS default approach will provide a lower total conveyance for the same elevation and, therefore, a higher computed water surface elevation. In order to test the significance of the two ways of computing conveyance, comparisons were performed using the same 97 data sets. Water surface profiles were computed for the 1% chance event using the two methods for computing conveyance in HEC-RAS. The results confirmed that the HEC-RAS default approach will generally produce a higher computed water surface elevation. Out of the 2048 cross section locations, 47.5% had computed water surface elevations within 0.10 feet (30.5 mm), 71% within 0.20 feet (61 mm), 94.4% within 0.40 feet (122 mm), 99.4% within 1.0 feet (305 mm), and one cross section had a difference of 2.75 feet (0.84 m). Because the differences tend to be in the same direction, some effects can be attributed to propagation.

The results from these comparisons do not show which method is more accurate, they only show differences. In general, it is felt that the HEC-RAS default method is more commensurate with the Manning equation and the concept of separate flow elements. The default method in HEC-RAS is also more consistent, in that the computed conveyance is based on the geometry, and not on how many points are used in the cross section. Further research, with observed water surface profiles, will be needed to make any final conclusions about the accuracy of the two methods.

## Critical Depth Calculations

During the water surface profile calculations, each of the two programs may need to calculate critical depth at a cross section if any of the following conditions occur:

- (1) The supercritical flow regime has been specified by the user.
- (2) The calculation of critical depth has been requested by the user.
- (3) The current cross section is an external boundary cross section and critical depth must be determined to ensure the user-entered boundary condition is in the correct flow regime.
- (4) The Froude number check for a subcritical profile indicates that critical depth needs to be determined to verify the flow regime of the computed water surface elevation.

- (5) The program could not balance the energy equation within the specified tolerance before reaching the maximum number of iterations.

The HEC-RAS program has two methods for calculating critical depth: a "parabolic" method and a "secant" method. The HEC-2 program has one method, which is very similar to the HEC-RAS "parabolic" method. The parabolic method is computationally faster, but it is only able to locate a single minimum energy. For most cross sections there will only be one minimum on the total energy curve; therefore, the parabolic method has been set as the default method for HEC-RAS (the default method can be changed from the user interface). If the parabolic method is tried and it does not converge, then the HEC-RAS program will automatically try the secant method. The HEC-RAS version of the parabolic method calculates critical depth to a numerical accuracy of 0.01 feet, while HEC-2's version of the parabolic method calculates critical depth to a numerical accuracy of 2.5 percent of the flow depth. This, in its self, can lead to small differences in the calculation of critical depth between the two programs.

In certain situations it is possible to have more than one minimum on the total energy curve. Multiple minimums are often associated with cross sections that have breaks in the total energy curve. These breaks can occur due to very wide and flat overbanks, as well as cross sections with levees and ineffective flow areas. When the parabolic method is used on a cross section that has multiple minimums on the total energy curve, the method will converge on the first minimum that it locates. This approach can lead to incorrect estimates of critical depth, in that the returned value for critical depth may be the top of a levee or an ineffective flow elevation. When this occurs in the HEC-RAS program, the software automatically switches to the secant method. The HEC-RAS secant method is capable of finding up to three minimums on the energy versus depth curve. Whenever more than one minimum energy is found, the program selects the lowest valid minimum energy (a minimum energy at the top of a levee or ineffective flow elevation is not considered a valid critical depth solution).

Given that HEC-RAS has the capability to find multiple critical depths, and detect possible invalid answers, the final critical depth solutions between HEC-2 and HEC-RAS could be quite different. In general the critical depth answer from the HEC-RAS program will always be more accurate than HEC-2.

## Bridge Hydraulic Computations

A vast amount of effort has been spent on the development of the new bridge routines used in the HEC-RAS software. The bridge routines in HEC-RAS allow the modeler to analyze a bridge by several different methods with the same bridge geometry. The model utilizes four user defined cross sections in the computations of energy losses due to the structure. Cross sections are

automatically formulated inside the bridge on an as need basis by combining the bridge geometry with the two cross sections that bound the structure. The HEC-2 program requires the user to use one of two possible methods, the special bridge routine or the normal bridge routine. The data requirements for the two methods are different, and therefore the user must decide aprior which method to use.

Differences between the HEC-2 and HEC-RAS bridge routines will be addressed by discussing the two HEC-2 bridge methodologies separately.

## **HEC-2 Special Bridge Methodology**

The largest computational differences will be found when comparing the HEC-2 special bridge routines to the equivalent HEC-RAS bridge methodologies. The following is a list of what is different between the two programs:

1. The HEC-2 special bridge routines use a trapezoidal approximation for low flow calculations (Yarnell equation and class B flow check with the momentum equation). The HEC-RAS program uses the actual bridge opening geometry for all of the low flow methodologies.
2. Also for low flow, the HEC-2 program uses a single pier (of equivalent width to the sum total width of all piers) placed in the middle of the trapezoid. In the HEC-RAS software, all of the piers are defined separately, and the hydraulic computations are performed by evaluating the water surface and impact on each pier individually. While this is more data for the user to enter, the results are much more physically based.
3. For pressure flow calculations, HEC-2 requires the net flow area of the bridge opening. The HEC-RAS software calculates the area of the bridge opening from the bridge and cross section geometry. Because of the potential error involved in calculating the bridge opening area by hand, differences between the programs may occur for pressure flow calculations.
4. The HEC-RAS software has two equations that can be used for pressure flow. The first equation is for a fully submerged condition (i.e. when both the upstream side and downstream side of the bridge is submerged). The fully submerged equation is also used in HEC-2. A second equation is available in HEC-RAS, which is automatically applied when only the upstream side of the bridge is submerged. This equation computes pressure flow as if the bridge opening were acting as a sluice gate. The HEC-2 program only has the fully submerged pressure flow equation. Therefore, when only the upstream side of

the bridge is submerged, the two programs will compute different answers for pressure flow because they will be using different equations.

5. When using the HEC-2 special bridge routines, it is not necessary for the user to specify low chord information in the bridge table (BT data). The bridge table information is only used for weir flow in HEC-2. When HEC-2 special bridge data is imported into HEC-RAS, the user must enter the low chord information in order to define the bridge opening. This is due to the fact that the trapezoidal approximation used in HEC-2 is not used in HEC-RAS, and therefore the opening must be completely defined.
6. When entering bridge table (BT records) information in the HEC-2 special bridge method, the user had to enter stations that followed along the ground in the left overbank, then across the bridge deck/road embankment; and then along the ground of the right overbank. This was necessary in order for the left and right overbank area to be used in the weir flow calculations. In HEC-RAS this is not necessary. The bridge deck/roadway information only needs to reflect the additional blocked out area that is not part of the ground. HEC-RAS will automatically merge the the ground information and the high chord data of the bridge deck/roadway.

### **HEC-2 Normal Bridge Methodology**

In general, when importing HEC-2 normal bridge data into HEC-RAS there should not be any problems. The program automatically selects the energy based methods for low flow and high flow conditions, which is equivalent to the normal bridge method. The following is a list of possible differences that can occur.

1. In HEC-2 pier information is either entered as part of the bridge table (BT data) or the ground information (GR data). If the user stays with the energy based methods in HEC-RAS the results should be about the same. If the user wishes to use either the Momentum or Yarnell methods for low flow, they must first delete the pier information from the BT or GR data, and then re-enter it as separate pier information in HEC-RAS. If this is not done, HEC-RAS will not know about the pier information, and will therefore incorrectly calculate the losses with either the Momentum or Yarnell methods.
2. The HEC-2 Normal bridge method utilizes six cross sections. HEC-RAS uses only four cross sections in the vicinity of the bridge. The two cross sections inside the bridge are automatically formulated from the cross sections outside the bridge and the bridge geometry. In general, it is common for HEC-2 users to repeat cross sections through the bridge opening (i.e. the cross sections used inside the

bridge were a repeat of the downstream section). If however, the HEC-2 user entered completely different cross sections inside the bridge than outside, the HEC-RAS software will add two additional cross sections just outside of the bridge, in order to get the correct geometry inside of the bridge. This however gives the HEC-RAS data set two more cross sections than the original HEC-2 data set. The two cross sections are placed at zero distance from the bridge, but could still cause some additional losses due to contraction and expansion of flow. The user may want to make some adjustments to the data when this happens.

3. In HEC-2 the stationing of the bridge table (BT Records) had to match stations on the ground (GR data). This is not required in HEC-RAS. The stationing of the data that makes up a bridge (ground, deck/roadway, piers, and abutments) does not have to match in any way, HEC-RAS will interpolate any points that it needs.

## Culvert Hydraulic Computations

The culvert routines in HEC-RAS and HEC-2 were adapted from the Federal Highway Administrations Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts publication, HDS No. 5 (FHWA, 1985). The following is a list of the differences between the two programs.

1. HEC-2 can only perform culvert calculations for box and circular culvert shapes. HEC-RAS can handle the following shapes: box; circular pipe; semi-circle; arch; pipe arch, vertical ellipse; horizontal ellipse; low profile arch; and high profile arch.
2. HEC-RAS also has the ability to mix the culvert shapes, sizes, and all other parameters at any single culvert crossing. In HEC-2 the user is limited to the same shape and size barrels.

## Floodway Encroachment Computations

The floodway encroachment capabilities in HEC-RAS were adapted from those found in HEC-2. For the most part, encroachment methods 1-3 in HEC-RAS are the same as methods 1-3 in HEC-2. The following is a list of the differences between the two programs.

1. HEC-RAS has an additional capability of allowing the user to specify a left and right encroachment offset. While in general the encroachments can go all the way up to the main channel bank stations, the offset establishes an additional buffer zone around the

main channel bank stations for limiting the encroachments. The offset is applicable to methods 2-5 in HEC-RAS.

2. The logic of method 4 in HEC-RAS is the same as method 4 in HEC-2. The only difference is that the HEC-RAS method 4 will locate the final encroachment to an accuracy of 0.01 feet, while the HEC-2 method 4 uses a parabolic interpolation method between the existing cross section points. Since conveyance is non-linear with respect to the horizontal stationing, the interpolation in HEC-2 does not always find the encroachment station as accurately as HEC-RAS.
3. Method 5 in HEC-RAS is a combination of HEC-2's methods 5 and 6. The HEC-RAS method five can be used to optimize for a change in water surface (HEC-2 method 5); a change in energy (HEC-2 method 6); or both parameters at the same time (new feature).
4. At bridges and culverts, the default in HEC-RAS is to perform the encroachment, while in HEC-2 the default was not to perform the encroachment. Both programs have the ability to turn encroachments at bridges and culverts on or off.
5. At bridges where the energy based modeling approach is being used (similar to HEC-2's normal bridge method), HEC-RAS will calculate the encroachment for each of the cross sections through the bridge individually. HEC-2 will take the encroachments calculated at the downstream side of the bridge and fix those encroachment stations the whole way through the bridge.
6. In HEC-2, if the user specifies a fixed set of encroachments on the X3 record, this would override anything on the ET record. In HEC-RAS, when the data is imported the X3 record encroachment is converted into a blocked obstruction. Therefore any additional encroachment information found on the ET record will be used in addition to the blocked obstruction.

## **New Computational Features in HEC-RAS**

The following is a list of new computational features found in HEC-RAS that are not available in HEC-2.

1. HEC-RAS can perform subcritical, supercritical, or mixed flow regime calculations all in a single execution of the program. The cross section order does not have to be reversed (as in HEC-2), the user simply presses a single button to select the computational flow regime. When in a mixed flow regime mode, HEC-RAS can also locate hydraulic jumps.

2. HEC-RAS has the ability to perform multiple bridge and/or culvert openings at the same road crossing.
3. At bridges, the user has the ability to use a momentum based solution for class A, B, and C low flow. In HEC-2 the momentum equation was used for class B and C flow, and requires the trapezoidal approximation. The HEC-RAS momentum solution also takes into account friction and weight forces that HEC-2 does not.
4. HEC-RAS can model single reaches, dendritic stream systems, or fully looped network systems. HEC-2 can only do single reaches and a limited number of tributaries (up two three stream orders).
5. At stream junctions, HEC-RAS has the ability to perform the calculations with either an energy based method or a momentum based method. HEC-2 only has the energy based method.
6. HEC-RAS has the following new cross section properties not found in HEC-2: blocked ineffective flow areas; normal ineffective flow areas can be located at any station (in HEC-2 they are limited to the main channel bank stations); blocked obstructions; and specification of levees.
7. In HEC-RAS the user can enter up to 500 points in a cross section. HEC-2 has a limit of 100.
8. HEC-RAS has the ability to perform geometric cross section interpolation. HEC-2 interpolation is based on a ratio of the current cross section and a linear elevation adjustment.
9. HEC-RAS has an improved flow distribution calculation routine. The new routine can subdivide the main channel as well as the overbanks, and the user has control over how many subdivisions are used. The HEC-2 flow distribution option is limited to the overbank areas and breaks at existing coordinate points.

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

## APPENDIX D

# Computation of the WSPRO Discharge Coefficient and Effective Flow Length

This appendix documents how the effective flow length and discharge coefficient are computed for the WSPRO bridge hydraulics methodology in HEC-RAS. The effective flow length is used in the computation of friction losses from the cross section just upstream of the bridge (section 3) to the approach cross section (section 4). The coefficient of discharge is used in the expansion loss equation from sections 1 to 2. The information in this appendix was extracted directly from the Federal Highway Administrations Research Report entitled: "Bridge Waterways Analysis Model" (FHWA, 1986).

## Effective Flow Length

Since friction losses are directly proportional to flow length, it becomes imperative to obtain the best possible estimate of flow length, especially for those cases where the friction loss is a significant component of the energy balance between two sections. For minor degrees of constriction, a straight line distance between cross sections is usually adequate. However, for more significant constrictions, this straight-line distance is representative of only that portion of the flow that is generally in direct line with the opening. Flow further away from the opening must flow not only downstream, but also across the valley to get to the opening, thus traveling much farther than the straight-line distance.

Schneider et al. (USGS, 1977) tabulated average streamline lengths for various approach section locations and various degrees of constriction. These results are not directly applicable in this model because they are derived for symmetric constrictions in channel reaches having uniform, homogeneous flow conveyance characteristics. Even if the exact-solution algorithms were developed for non-symmetric, nonhomogeneous conditions, the computer resource requirements for an exact solution are too great to warrant inclusion in the model. Therefore, a simplified computational technique was developed and incorporated into the model to compute average streamline length.

Schneider et al. defined the optimum location of the approach section as

$$L_{opt} = \frac{b}{\pi (1-m')} \phi \quad (D-1)$$

where  $L_{opt}$  is the distance, in ft, between the approach section and the upstream face of the bridge opening,  $b$  is the bridge-opening width, and  $m'$  is the geometric contraction ratio computed by

$$m' = 1 - \frac{b}{B} \quad (D-2)$$

where  $B$  is the top width, in ft, of the approach section flow area. The  $\Phi$  term in equation D-1 is computed by

$$\phi = \frac{1}{2} \ln \left[ \left( \sqrt{\frac{\delta}{\epsilon^2} + 8} - \frac{3}{\epsilon} - \epsilon \right) \left( -\sqrt{8 + 8\epsilon^2} - 3\epsilon - \frac{1}{\epsilon} \right) \right] - \ln \left( \epsilon - \frac{1}{\epsilon} \right) \quad (D-3)$$

where  $\epsilon$  is computed by

$$\epsilon = 1 + \delta + \sqrt{\delta^2 + 2\delta} \quad (D-4)$$

with  $\delta$  computed as

$$\delta = \frac{2}{\tan^2 \left[ \left( 1 - \left( \frac{b}{2B} \right) \right) \pi \right]} \quad (D-5)$$

$L_{opt}$  is located in a zone of nearly one-dimensional flow, thus satisfying the basic requirements of the one-dimensional energy equation.

The simplified computational technique varies depending upon the relative magnitudes of  $L_{opt}$  and  $b$ . To introduce the technique, discussion is limited to the ideal situation of a symmetric constriction with uniform, homogeneous conveyance. For such conditions only one-half of the valley cross-section is required. This one-half section is divided into ten equal conveyance stream tubes between edge of water and the centerline at both the  $L_{opt}$  location and the upstream face of the bridge. Equal-conveyance stream tubes are equivalent to equal-flow stream tubes for one-dimensional flow. Figure D.1 illustrates a case with a small geometric contraction ratio.  $L_{opt}$  is less than  $b$  for lesser degrees of constriction. Since  $L_{opt}$  is located in a zone of nearly one-dimensional flow, the streamlines are essentially parallel between the approach section and the  $L_{opt}$  location. Between  $L_{opt}$  and the bridge opening the corresponding flow division points are connected with straight lines. The effective flow length used by the model is the average length of the ten equal-flow stream tubes computed by:

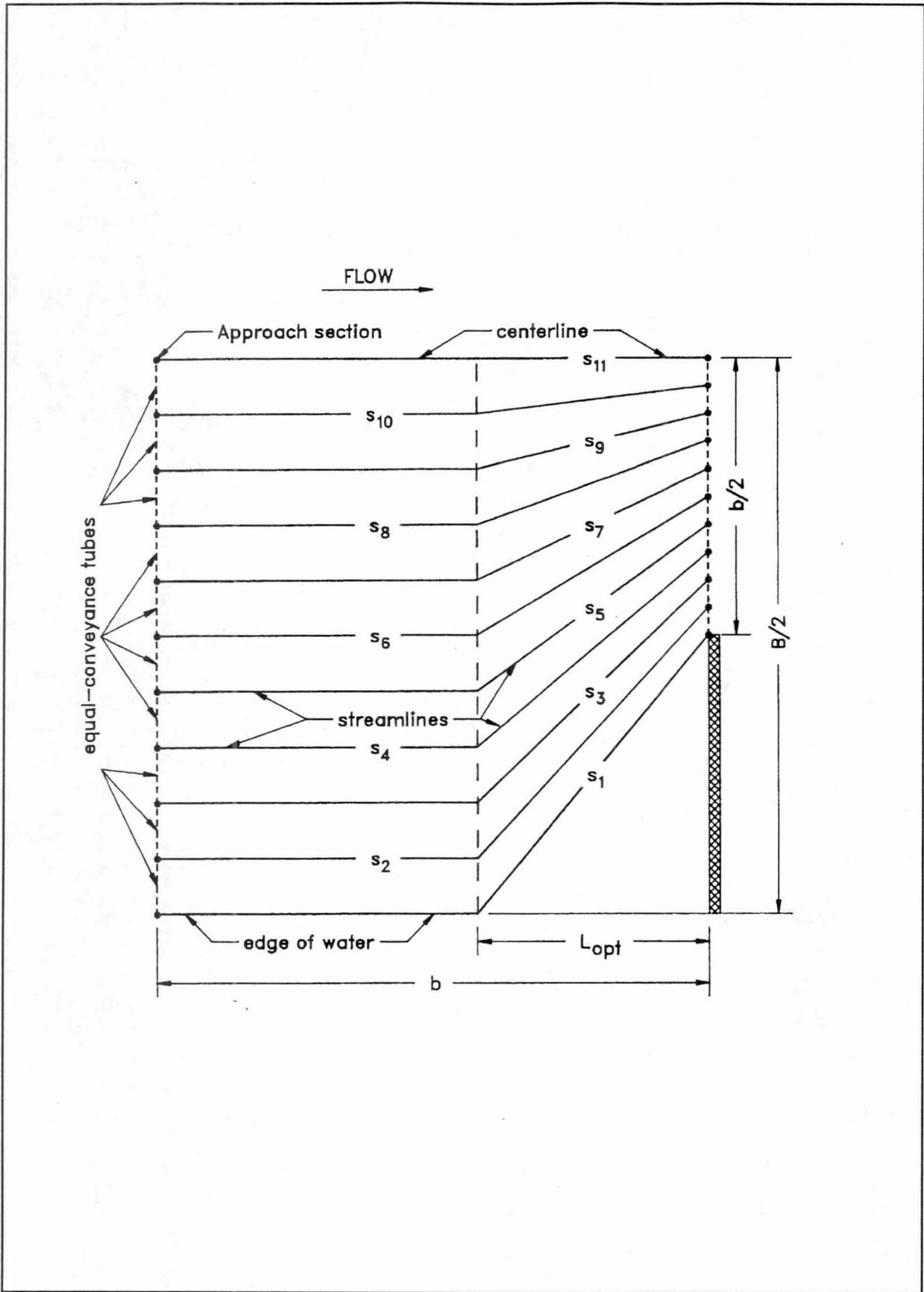


Figure D.1. Definition sketch of assumed streamlines for relatively low degree of contraction.

$$L_{av} = \frac{1}{10} \left[ \sum_{i=2}^{10} s_i + \frac{(s_I + s_{II})}{2} \right] \quad (D-5)$$

where  $i$  indicates the streamline number and  $s$  is the individual streamline length. Although the straight-line pattern is a gross simplification of the actual curvilinear streamlines, the computed  $L_{av}$  values are less than 2 percent smaller than the exact solution for small geometric contraction ratios.

Figure D.2 illustrates a relatively high degree of geometric contraction. Simply connecting the flow division points of the  $L_{opt}$  and bridge sections does not result in representative lengths for those streamlines furthest away from the opening.

Therefore, a parabola is computed by the equation

$$y^2 = 2b \left( x + \frac{b}{2} \right) \quad (D-6)$$

This parabola has its focus at the edge of water and its axis in the plane of the upstream face of the bridge. Positive  $x$  and  $y$  distances are measured from the edge of water towards the stream centerline and upstream from the plane of the bridge, respectively. For portions of the section where  $L_{opt}$  is upstream from this parabola, the parallel streamlines are projected to the parabola and then a straight line connects this projected point with the corresponding flow division point in the bridge opening. Flow division points of the  $L_{opt}$  section at or downstream from the parabola are connected directly to their corresponding flow division point for the bridge opening. Only the distances between the approach and the cross section just upstream of the bridge opening are used to compute  $L_{av}$  with equation D-5. This process generally produces results that are within 5 percent of the exact solution. For very severe constrictions (i.e.,  $m' = 0.95$ ), the differences are closer to 10 percent.

Nonuniform conveyance distribution in the approach reach is represented by defining the stream tubes on a conveyance basis. The model determines the horizontal stationing of 19 interior flow division points that subdivide both the  $L_{opt}$  and bridge sections into 20 tubes of equal conveyance. Asymmetric constrictions with nonuniform conveyances are analyzed by treating each half of the reach on either side of the conveyance midpoints separately, then averaging the results.  $L_{av}$  for each side provides the conveyance-weighted average streamline length. Figure D.3 illustrates a typical asymmetric, nonuniform conveyance situation.

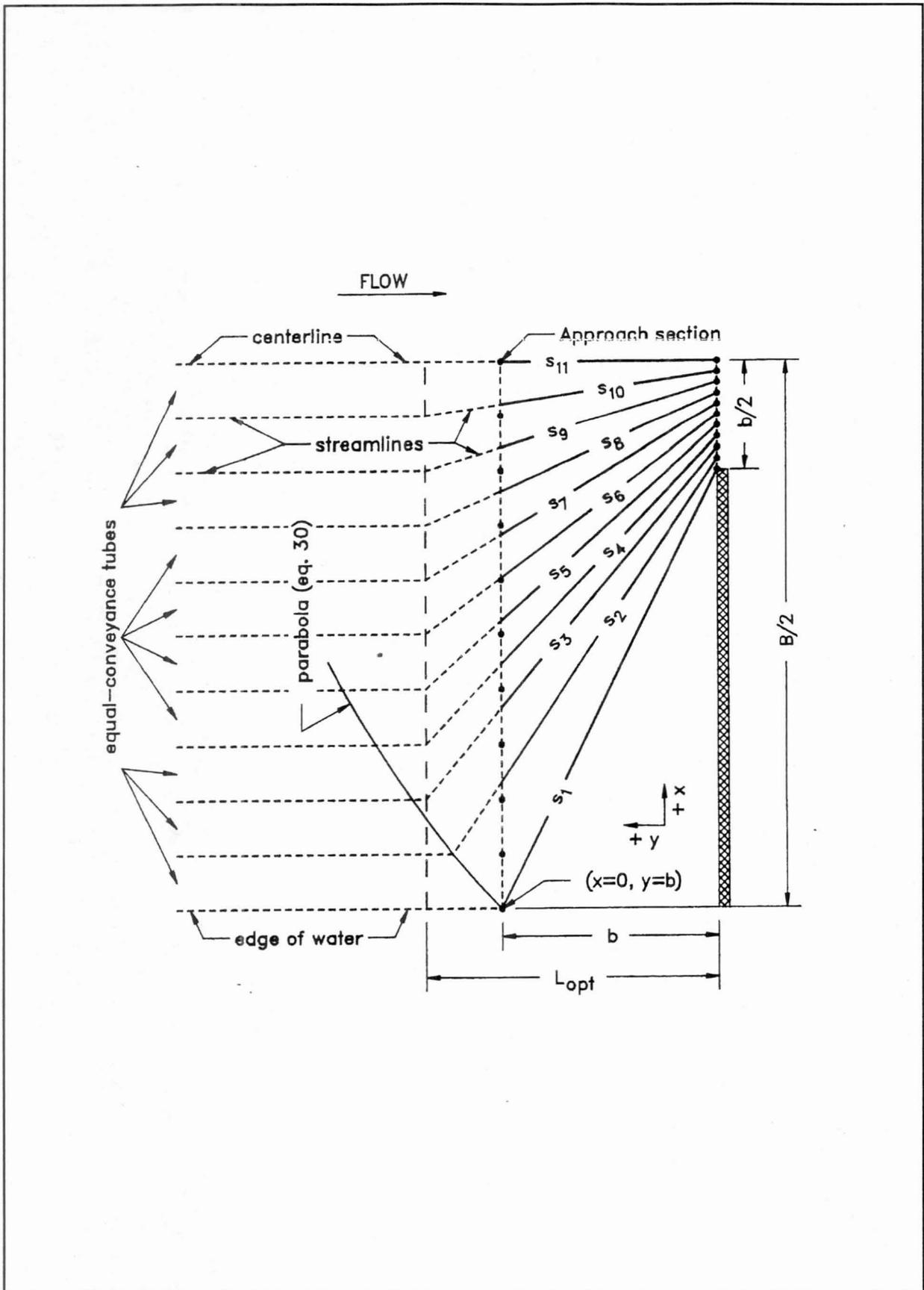


Figure D.2. Definition sketch of assumed streamlines for relatively high degrees of contraction

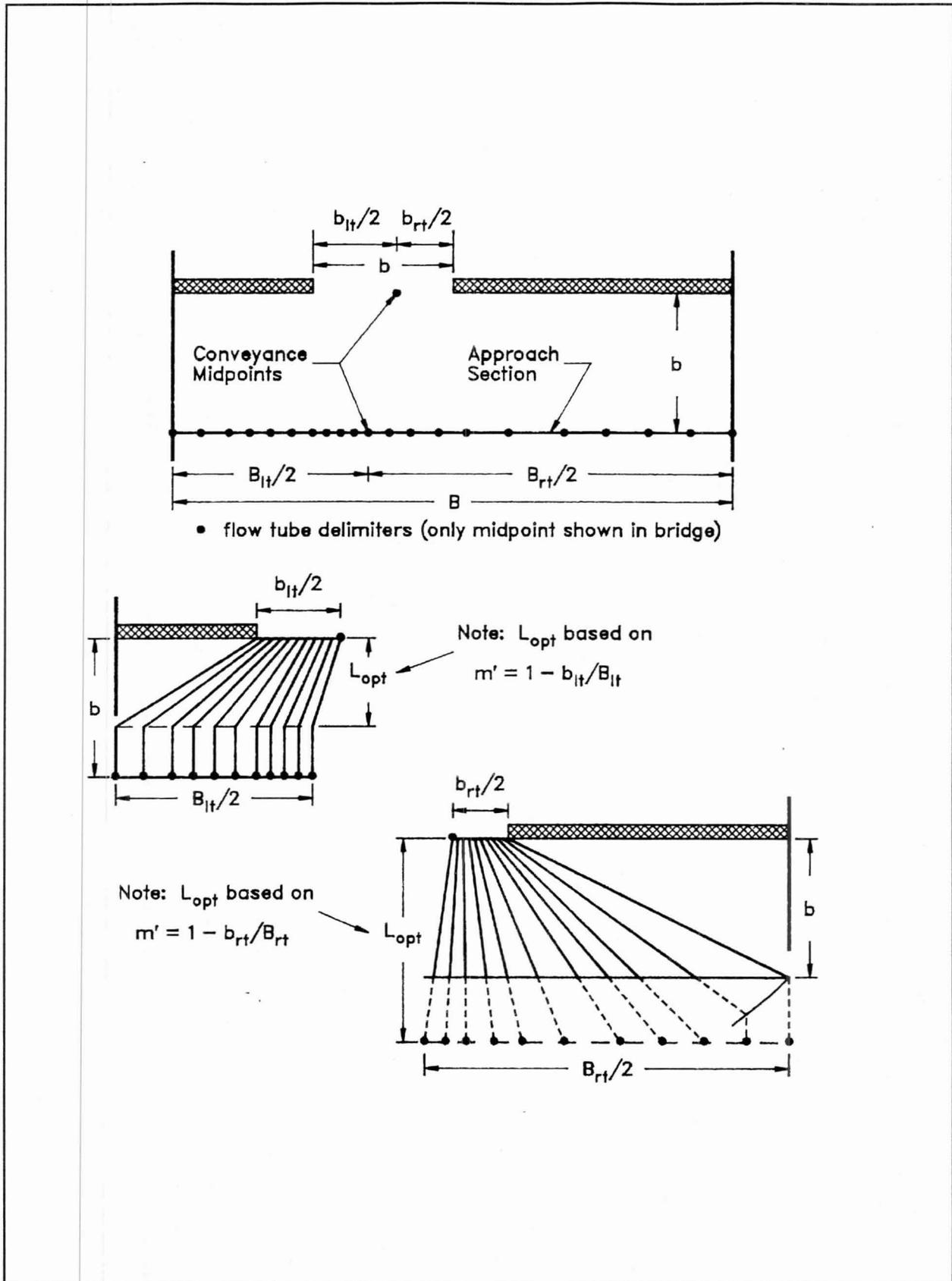


Figure D.3. Assumed flow pattern for a nonsymmetric constriction with nonhomogenous roughness distribution.

## Coefficient of Discharge

The coefficient of discharge, as defined by Matthai and used in this model, is a function of bridge geometry and flow characteristics. Matthai's report presents detailed instructions for computing the coefficient of discharge for the four most common types of bridge openings. It is not practical to reproduce that entire report herein, but the following paragraphs summarize the procedures as adapted to this model. All of the key figures from Matthai's report, the tabular values and equations used to determine the coefficient of discharge, and a discussion of the minor modifications made to Matthai's procedures are presented in this appendix. Bridge openings are classified as one of four different types depending upon characteristics of embankment and abutment geometry. Regardless of opening type, the first step is to determine a base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , which is a function of (1) a channel contraction ratio and (2) a ratio of flow length through the bridge,  $L$ , to the bridge-opening width,  $b$ . The channel contraction ratio is

$$m = 1 - \frac{K_q}{K_1} \quad (D-7)$$

where  $K_q$  is the conveyance of a portion of the approach section (based on projecting the bridge opening width up to the approach section) and  $K_1$  is the total conveyance of the approach section. The definition of the  $L$  and  $b$  terms for the length ratio depends upon the opening type. The definition sketches below define these terms for each opening type. The final coefficient of discharge,  $C$ , is computed by multiplying  $C'$  by a series of adjustment factors to account for variations in geometry and flow from the base conditions used to derive  $C'$ . The number of parameters for which adjustment factors are required depends partially upon the opening type. Following is a summary description of the opening types and the adjustment factors that are unique to each:

- Type 1 openings have vertical embankments and vertical abutments with or without wingwalls. The discharge coefficient is adjusted for the Froude number ( $k_F$ ) and also for wingwall width ( $k_w$ ) if wingwalls are present or for entrance rounding ( $k_r$ ) if there are no wingwalls.
- Type 2 openings have sloping embankments and vertical abutments and do not have wingwalls. The discharge coefficient is adjusted on the basis of the average depth of flow at the abutments ( $k_y$ ).
- Type 3 openings have sloping embankments with spillthrough abutments. The discharge coefficient is adjusted on the basis of entrance geometry ( $k_x$ ).
- Type 4 openings have sloping embankments, vertical abutments, and wingwalls. The discharge coefficient is adjusted depending upon the wingwall angle ( $k_\theta$ ).

In addition to the above adjustment factors, which are dependent upon opening type, there are adjustment factors for piers or piles ( $k_j$ ) and spur dikes ( $k_a$ ,  $k_b$ ,  $k_d$ ) that may be applied to all opening types. The relationships used to compute all of the above adjustment factors are shown below.

Figures D.4 through D.7 are definition sketches of the four types of openings for which Matthai defined the coefficient of discharge. Figures D.8 through D.18 are the relationships defining the base coefficient of discharge and the factors used to adjust for nonstandard conditions. Except for type 1 openings, different curves are required for different embankment slopes. Most of these relationships are incorporated into HEC-RAS in the form of digitized values. The digitized values are shown in tabular form at the end of this appendix. Table D.1 cross-references the figures and tables pertaining to the base coefficient of discharge. Table D.2 cross-references those figures and tables pertaining to the various adjustment factors.

Generally each of the relationships are incorporated into HEC-RAS in the form of three arrays. Two one-dimensional arrays contain values of the two independent variables (the abscissa of the relationship and the family of curves), and a two-dimensional array contains the corresponding values of the dependent variable. Exceptions to this form of representation are discussed in the following paragraphs.

The type 1 opening Froude number adjustment (fig. D.8(b)) is adequately expressed in equation form as

$$k_F = 0.9 + 0.2F \quad (\text{for } 0.0 \leq F \leq 0.5) \quad (\text{D-8})$$

and

$$k_F = 0.82 + 0.36F \quad (\text{for } F > 0.5) \quad (\text{D-9})$$

where  $F$  is the Froude number with an arbitrary upper limit of  $F = 1.2$  for the adjustment. The average depth adjustment for a type 3 opening with 2 to 1 embankment slope is determined by the following equations:

$$k_y = 1.00 + 0.3y \quad (\text{for } 0.0 \leq y \leq 0.20) \quad (\text{D-10})$$

and

$$k_y = 1.02 \pm 0.2\bar{y} \quad (\text{for } > 0.2) \quad (\text{D-11})$$

where  $\bar{y} = \frac{y_a + y_b}{2b}$  with  $\bar{y} = 0.30$  as an upper limit.

The type 4 opening wing wall adjustment factor,  $k_{\theta}$ , is computed using slopes of the family of curves (figs. D.15 and D.16). The equation for specified m-values is

$$k_{\theta} = 1.0 + (WW - 30) Sk_{\theta} \quad (D-12)$$

where WW is the wing wall angle and  $Sk_{\theta}$  is the appropriate slope from tables D.16 or D.18.  $k_{\theta}$  is obtained by interpolation for intermediate m-values.

Certain adjustments presented by Matthai were not incorporated into the WSPRO bridge methodology. The skew adjustment was omitted because WSPRO always computes the flow area normal to the flow for skewed bridge openings. An adjustment for submerged flow was also omitted because the FHWA methodology is used to compute pressure flow when girders are significantly submerged. The Froude number adjustment for type 4 openings with 2 to 1 embankment slope was intentionally omitted for reasons of consistency. There is no similar adjustment for type 4 openings with 1 to 1 embankment slopes, and the adjustment is rather minor. Matthai also applied an adjustment for eccentricity which is a measure of unequal conveyances on left and right overbanks of the approach section. This factor was not included in WSPRO on the bases that (1) it is a very minor adjustment, and (2) the effective flow length accounts for conveyance distribution.

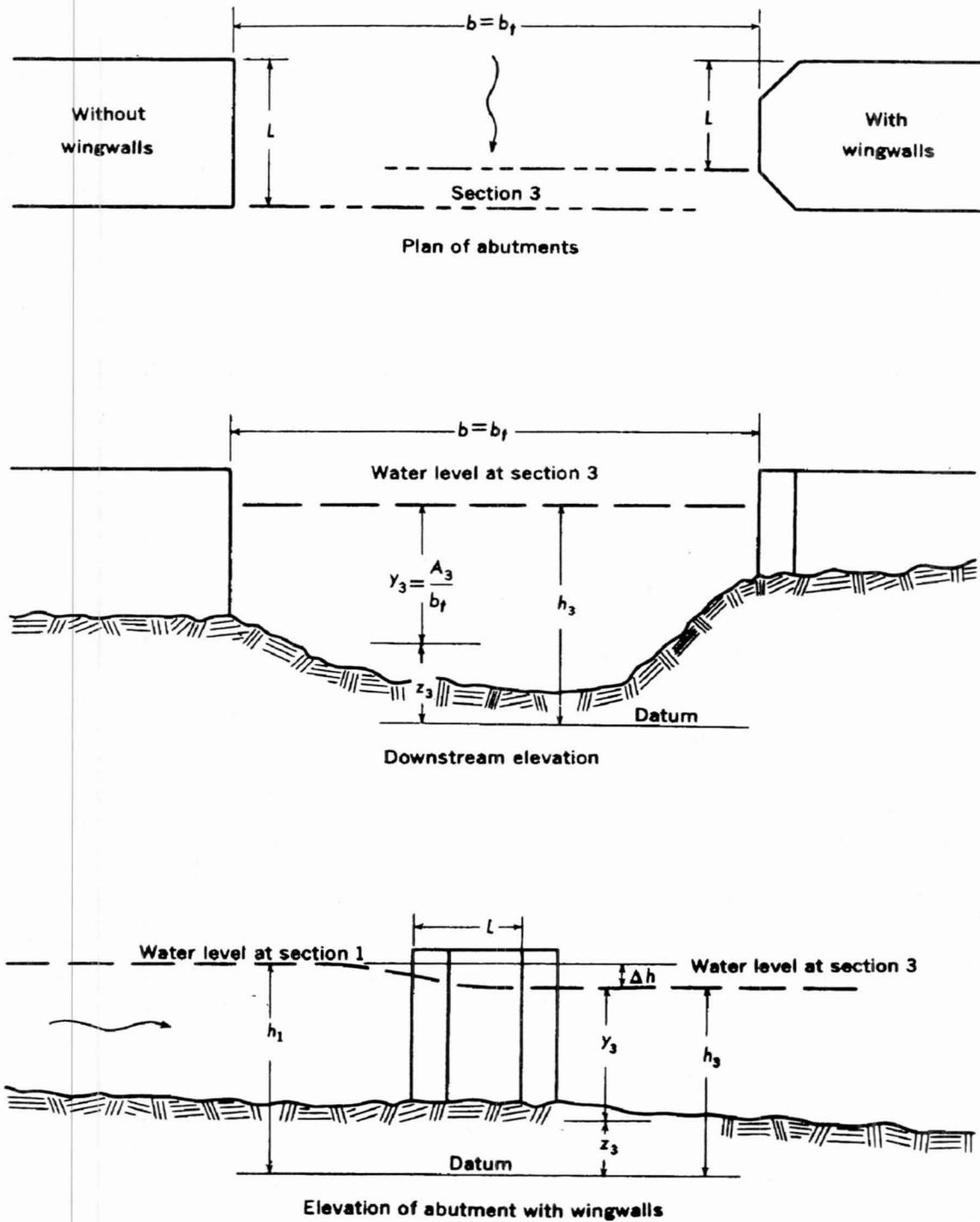


Figure D.4. Definition sketch of type 1 opening, vertical embankments and vertical abutments, with or without wing walls (after Matthai).

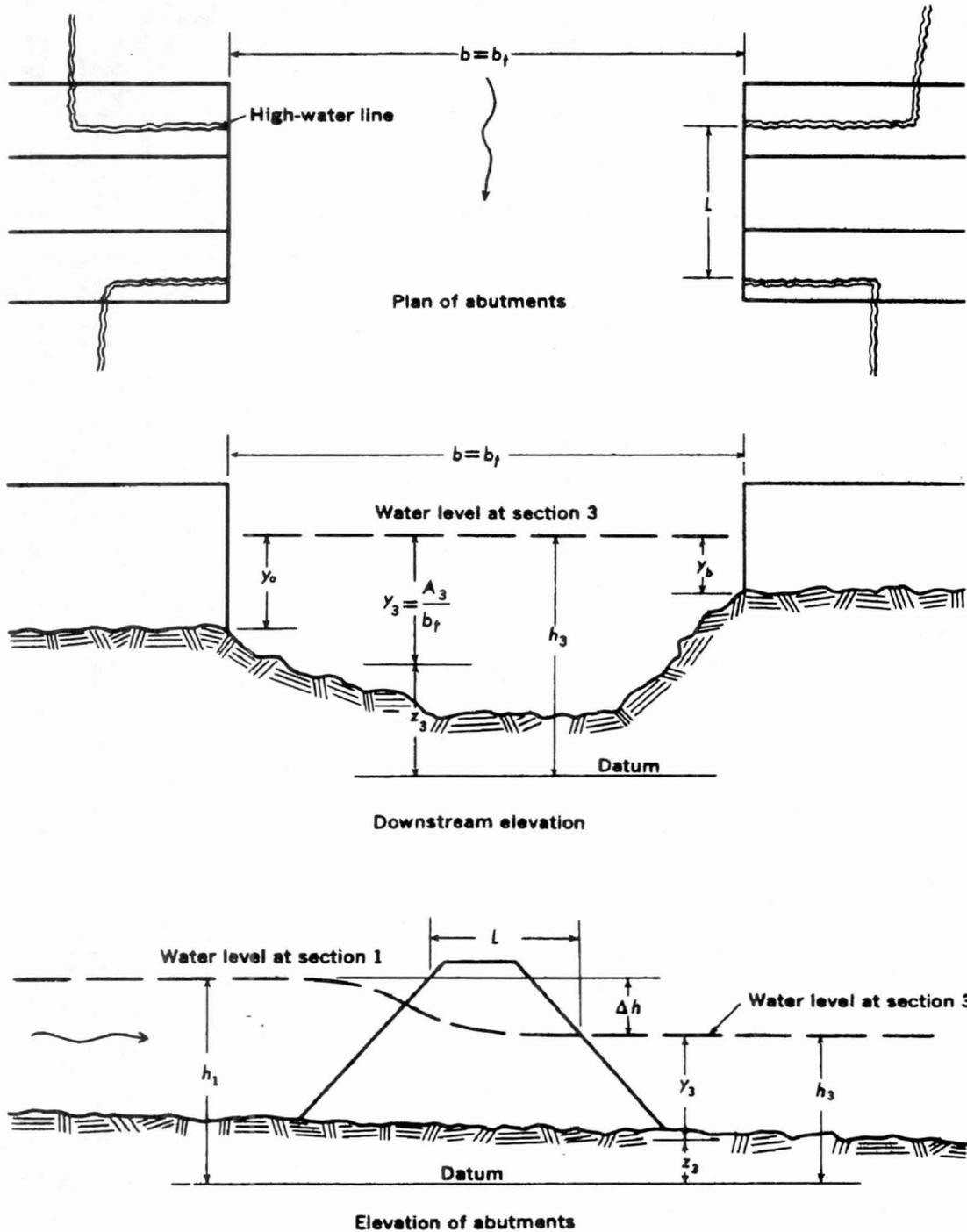


Figure D.5. Definition sketch of type 2 opening, sloping embankments without wing walls (after Matthai).

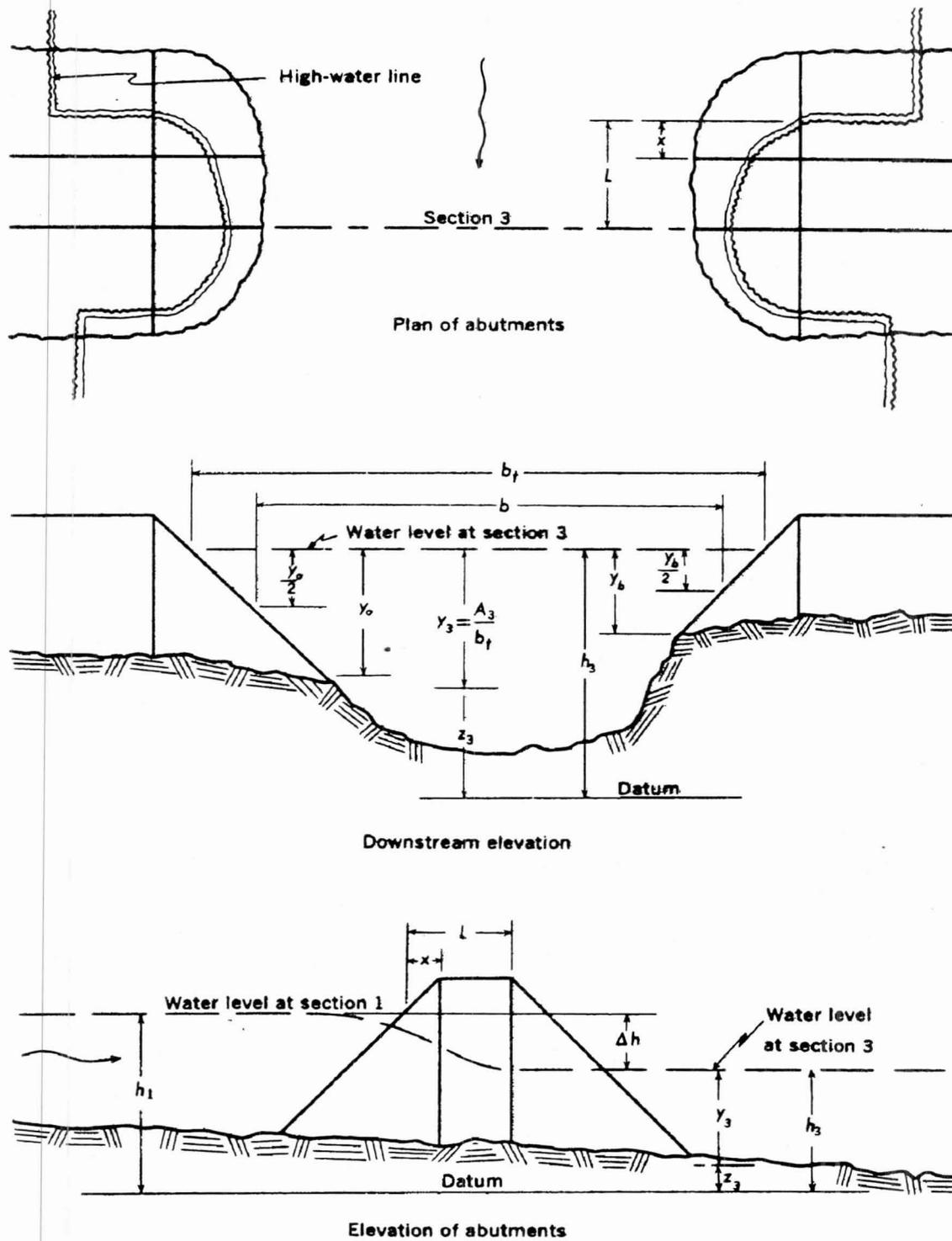


Figure D.6. Definition sketch of type 3 opening, sloping embankments and sloping abutments (spill through) (after Matthai).

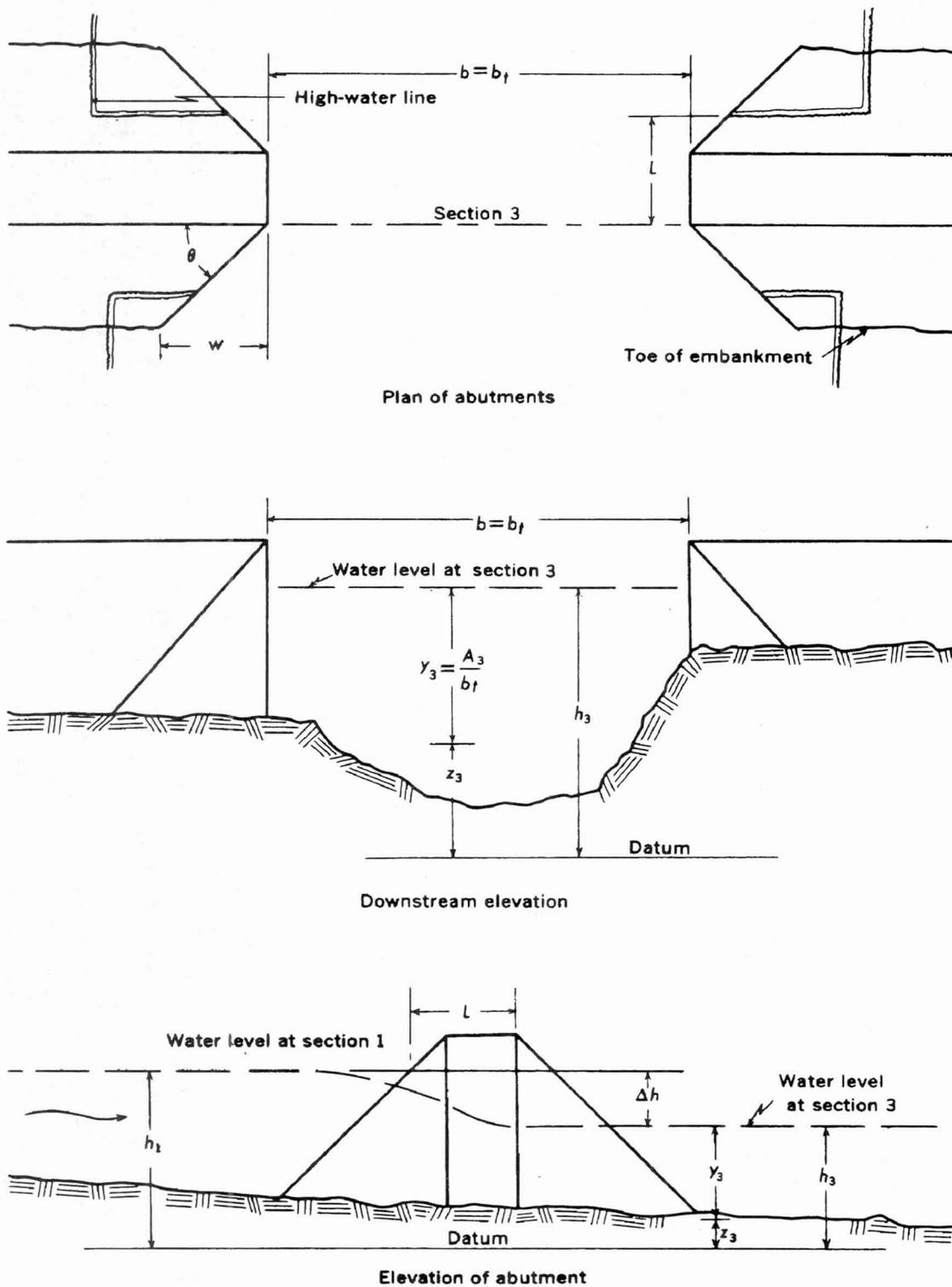


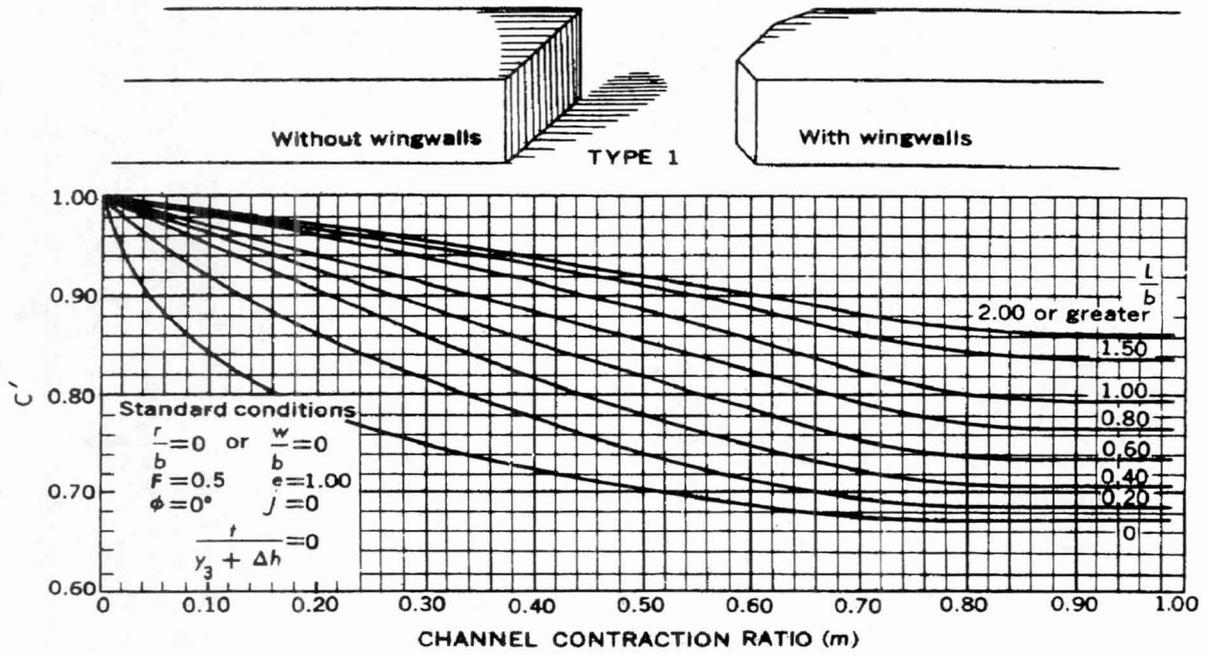
Figure D.7. Definition sketch of type 4 opening, sloping embankments and vertical abutments with wing walls (after Matthai).

**Table D.1** Cross-reference of Figures and Tables pertaining to the base coefficient of discharge.

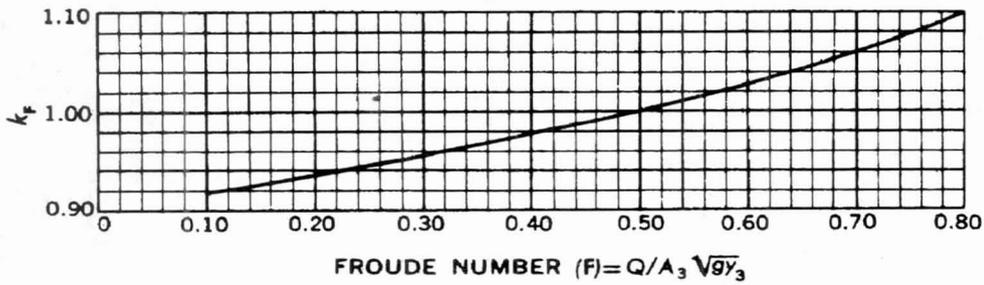
Type Opening	Embankment Slope	Figure No.	Table No.
1		D-8	D-3
2	1 to 1 2 to 1	D-10 D-11	D-6 D-8
3	1 to 1 1 ½ to 1 2 to 1	D-12 D-13 D-14	D-10 D-12 D-14
4	1 to 1 2 to 1	D-15 D-16	D-15 D-17

**Table D.2** Cross-reference of Figures and Tables pertaining to adjustment factors

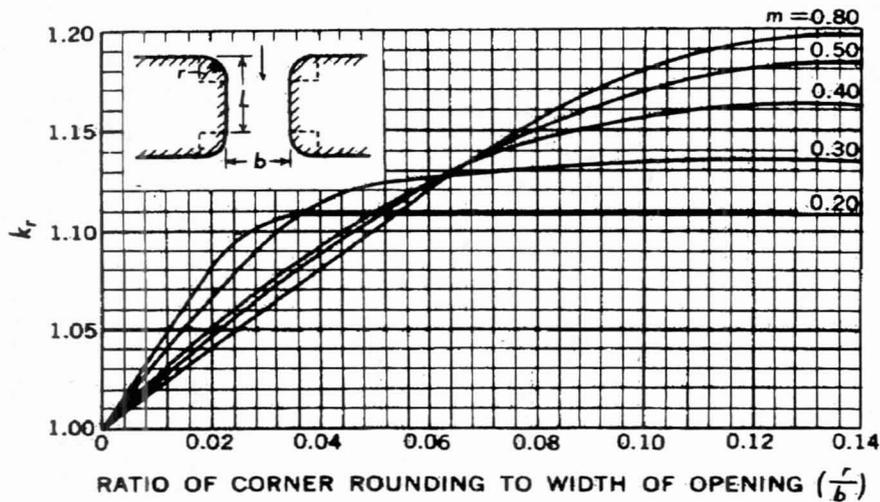
Type Opening	Embankment Slope	Adjustment Factor For:	Figure No.	Table No.
1		Entrance Rounding Wingwalls Froude Number	D-8 D-9 Eqn.	D-4 D-5 Eqn.
2	1 to 1 2 to 1	Average Depth “	D-10 D-11	D-7 D-9
3	1 to 1 1 ½ to 1 2 to 1	Entrance Geometry “ “	D-12 D-13 Eqn.	D-11 D-13 Eqn.
4	1 to 1 2 to 1	Wingwalls “	D-15 D-16	D-16 D-18
All		Piers or Piles Spur Dikes	D-17 D-18	D-19, D-20 D-21



a) Base coefficient of discharge.

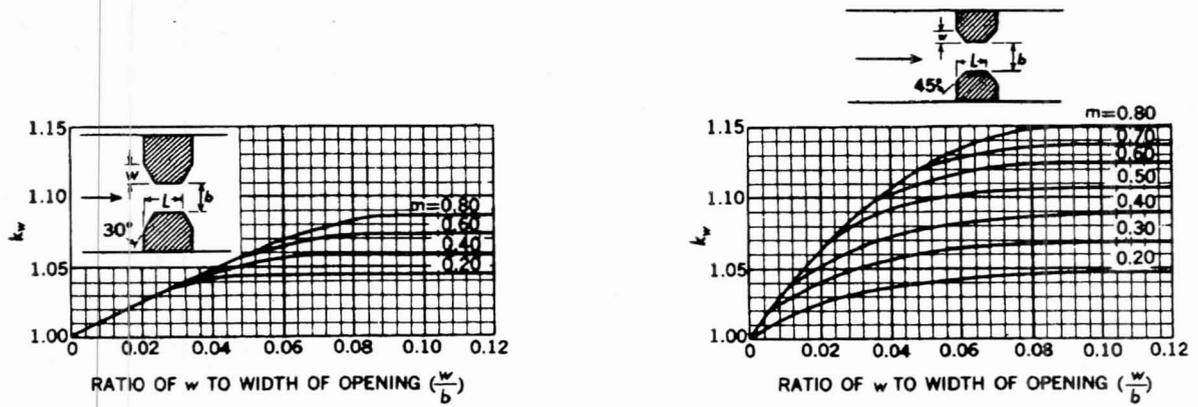


b) Froude number adjustment factor.



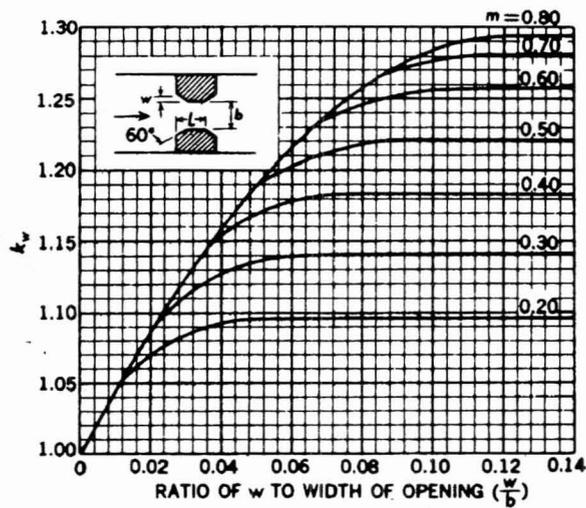
c) Corner rounding adjustment factor.

Figure D.8. Coefficients for type 1 openings (after Matthai).



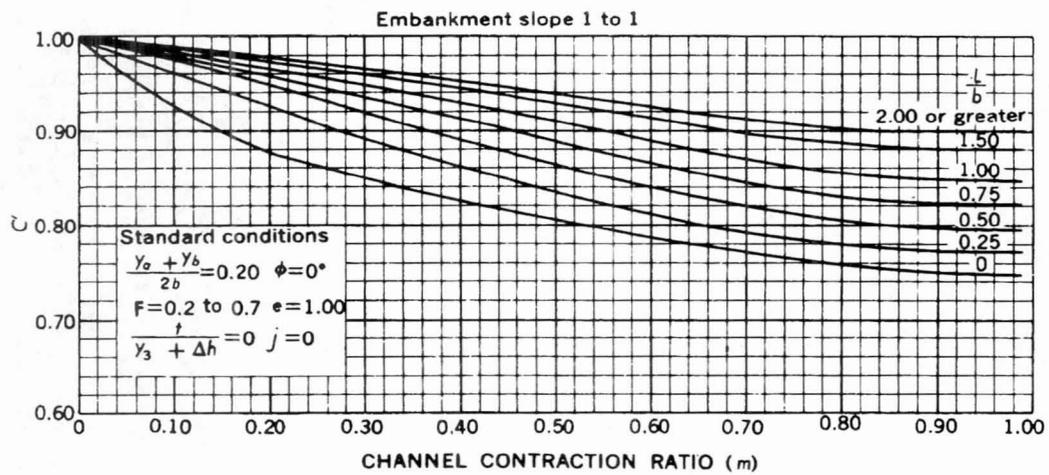
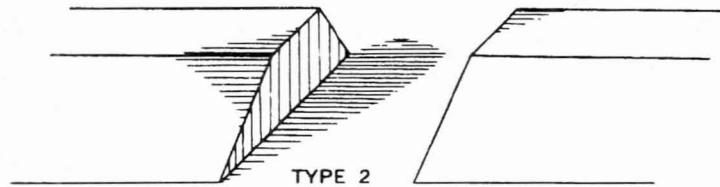
a) 30° wingwalls.

b) 45° wingwalls.

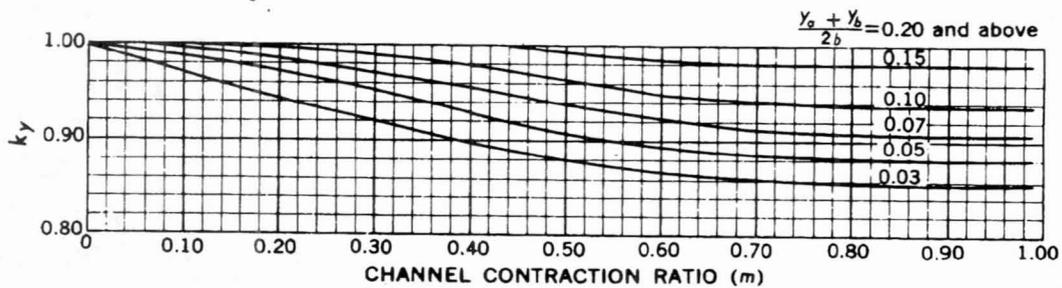


c) 60° wingwalls.

Figure D.9. Wingwall adjustment factors for type 1 openings (after Matthai).

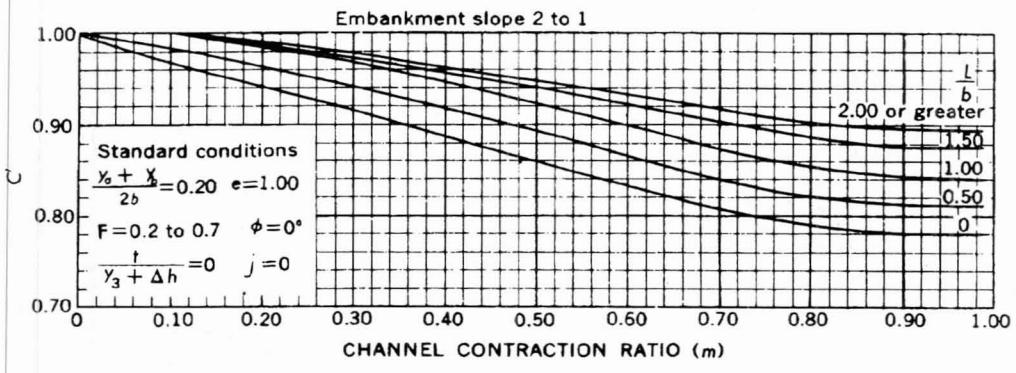
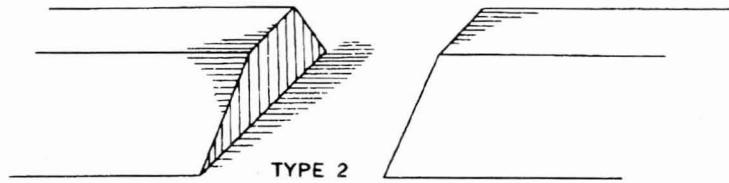


a) Base coefficient of discharge.

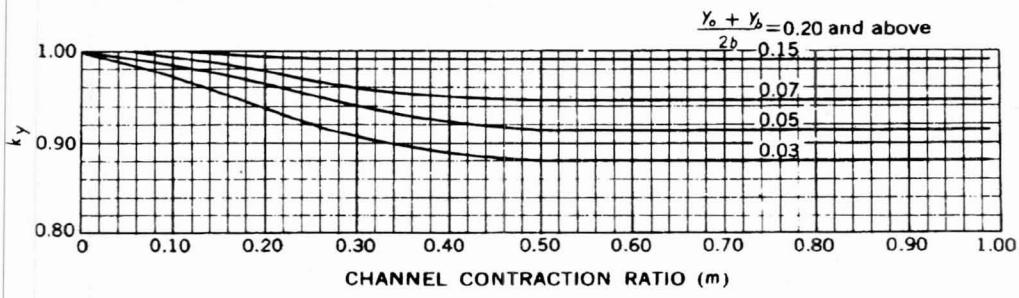


b) Average depth adjustment factor.

Figure D.10. Coefficients for type 2 openings, embankment slope 1 to 1 (after Matthai).

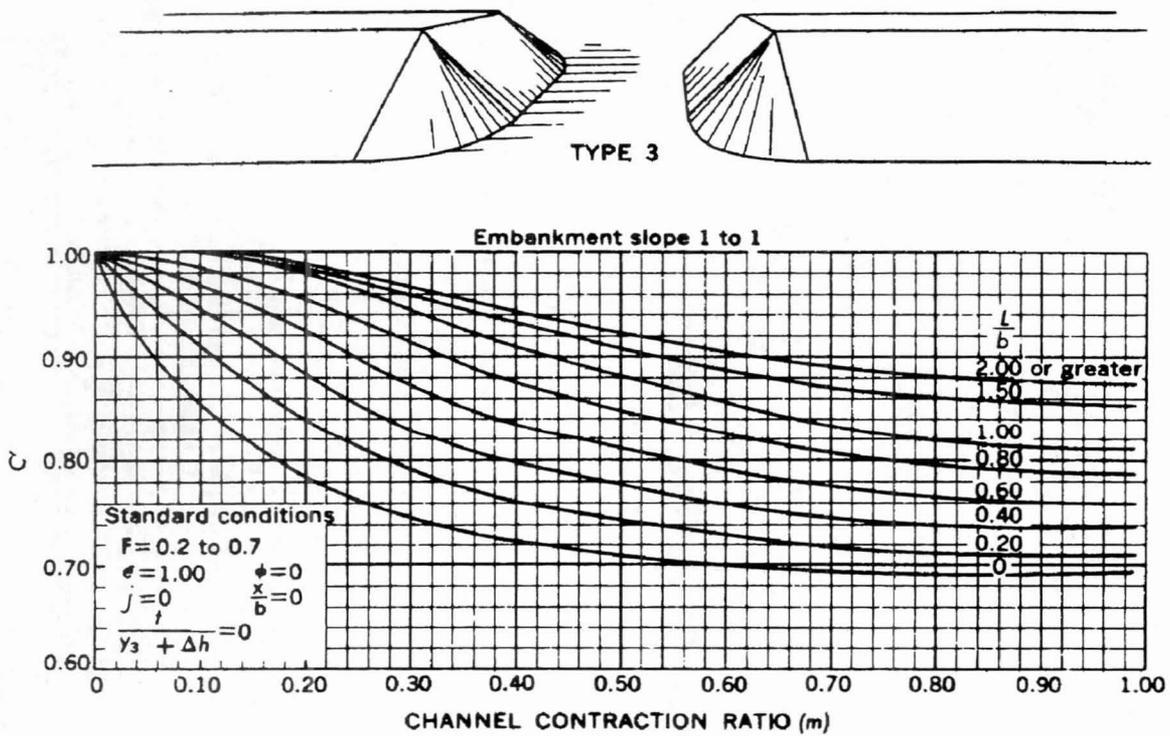


a) Base coefficient of discharge.

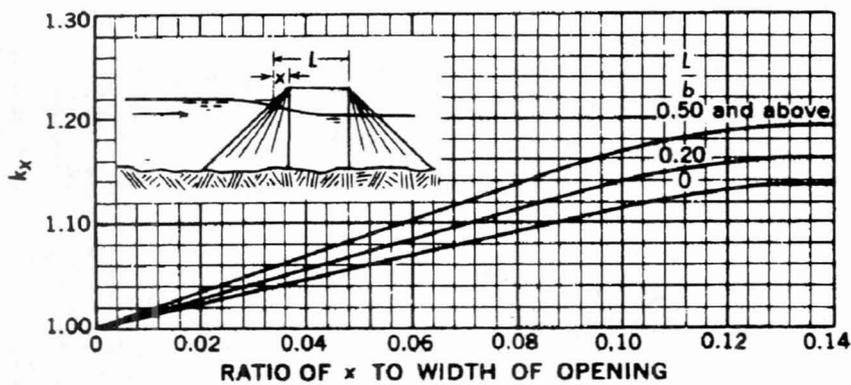


b) Average depth adjustment factor.

Figure D.11. Coefficients for type 2 openings, embankment slope 2 to 1 (after Matthai).

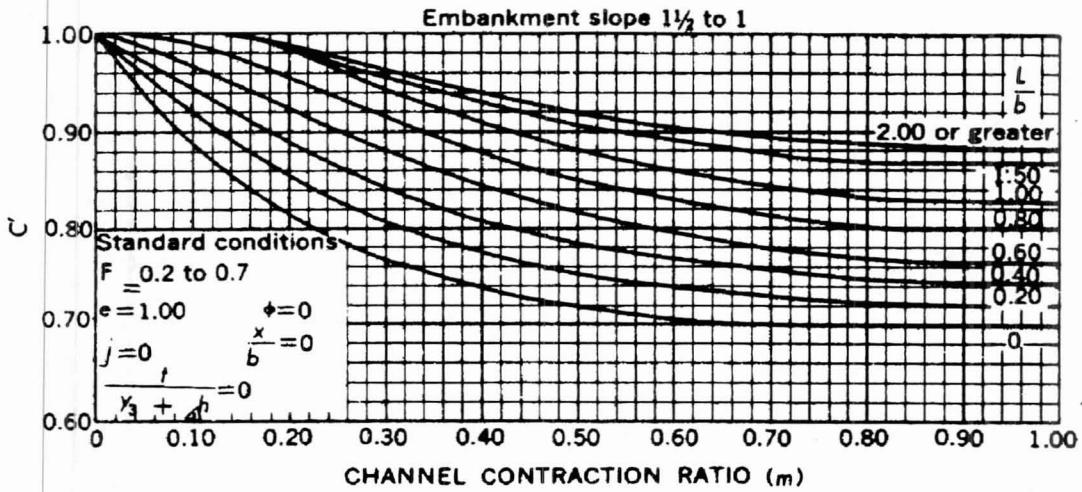
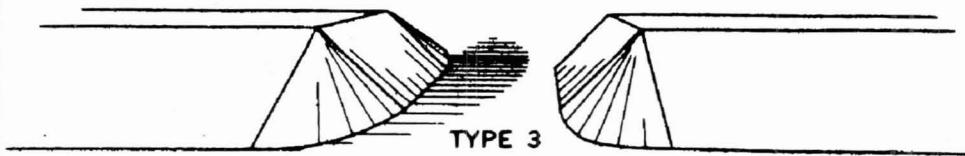


a) Base coefficient of discharge.

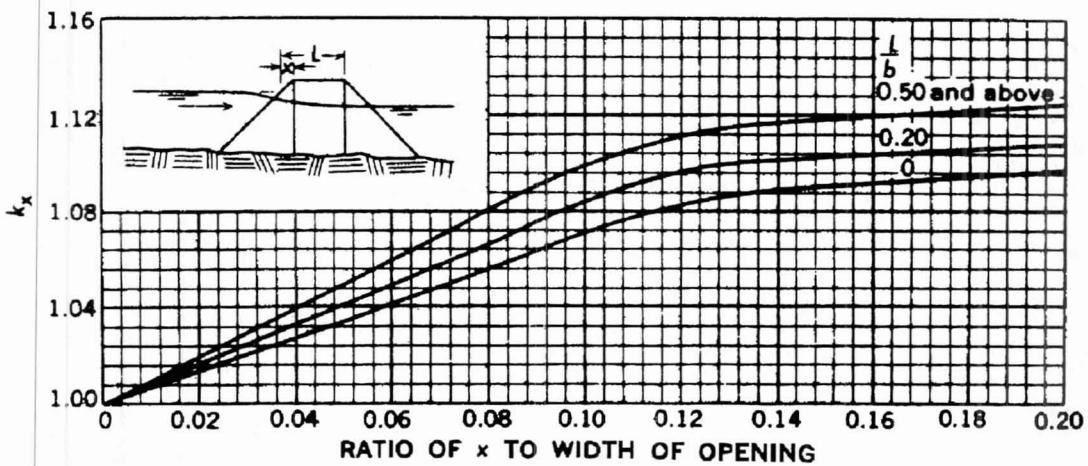


b) Unwetted abutment adjustment factor.

Figure D.12. Coefficients for type 3 openings, embankment slope 1 to 1 (after Matthai).

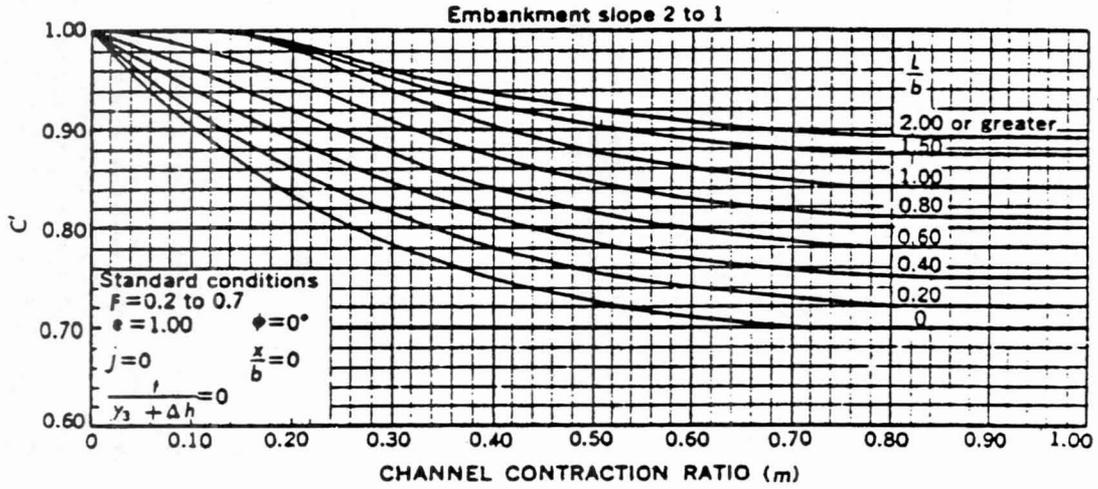
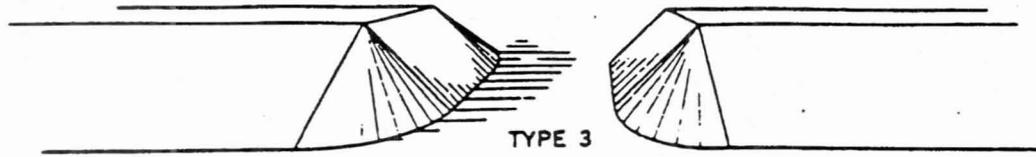


a) Base coefficient of discharge.

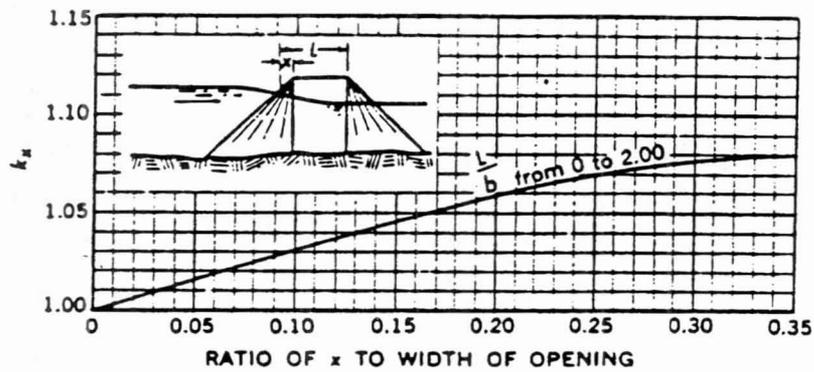


b) Unwetted abutment adjustment factor.

Figure D.13. Coefficients for type 3 openings, embankment slope 1 1/2 to 1 (after Matthai).

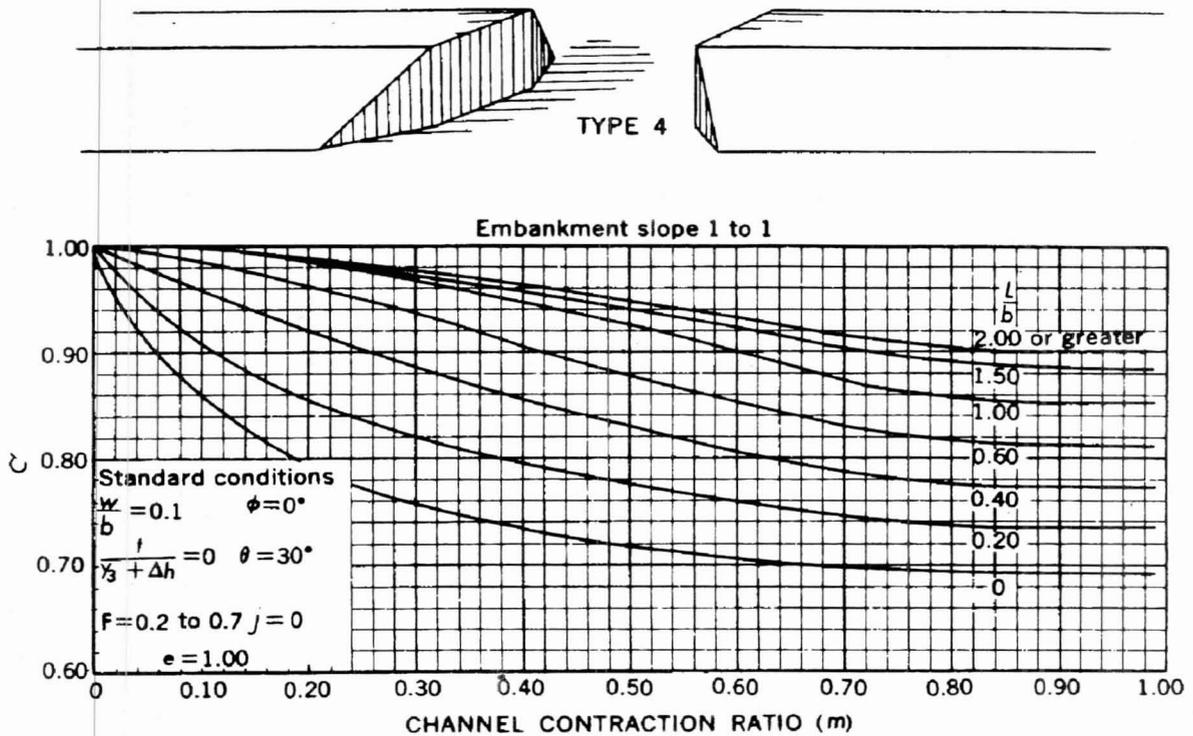


a) Base coefficient of discharge.

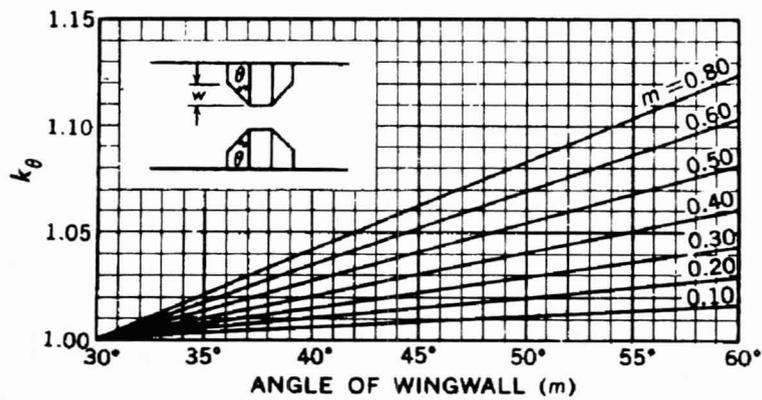


b) Unwetted abutment adjustment factor.

Figure D.14 Coefficients for type 3 openings, embankment slope 2 to 1 (after Matthai)

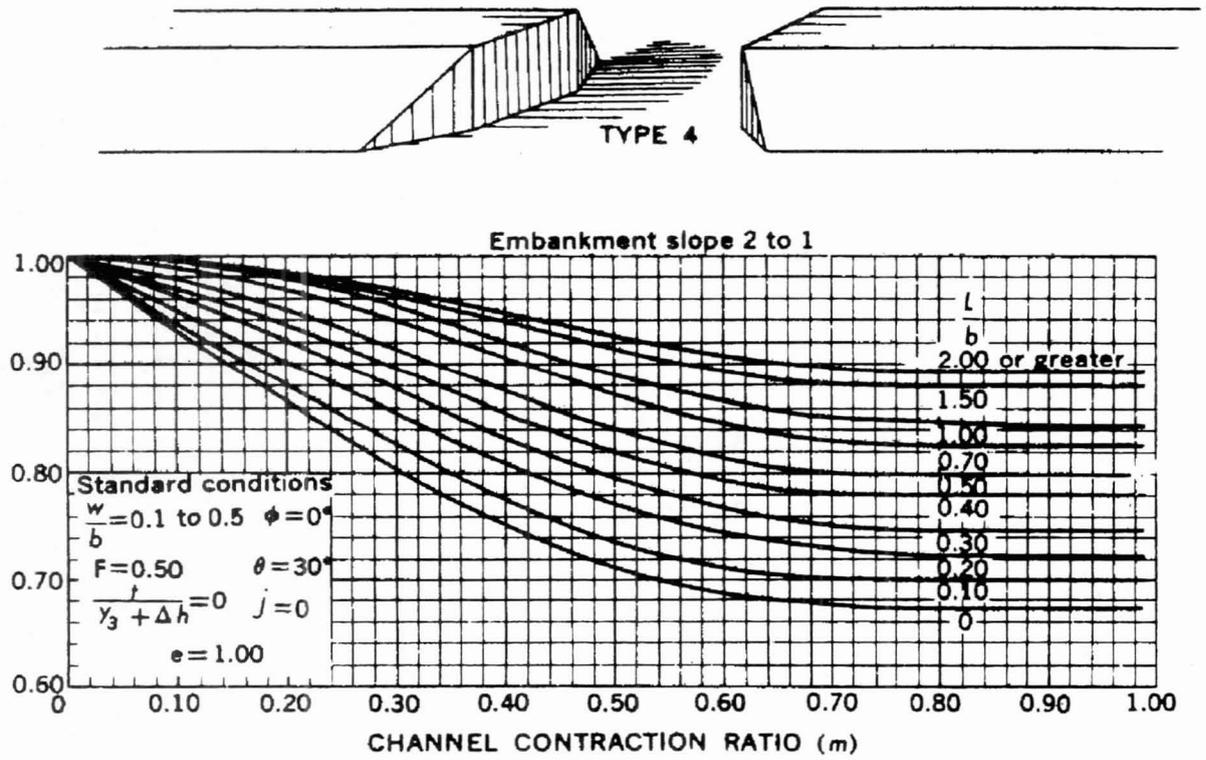


a) Base coefficient of discharge.

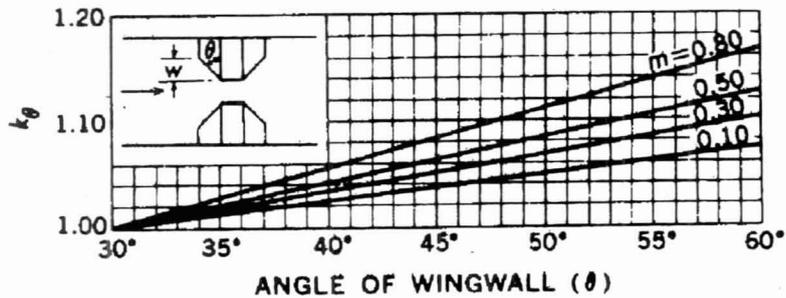


b) Wingwall adjustment factor.

Figure D.15. Coefficients for type 4 openings, embankment slope 1 to 1 (after Matthai).

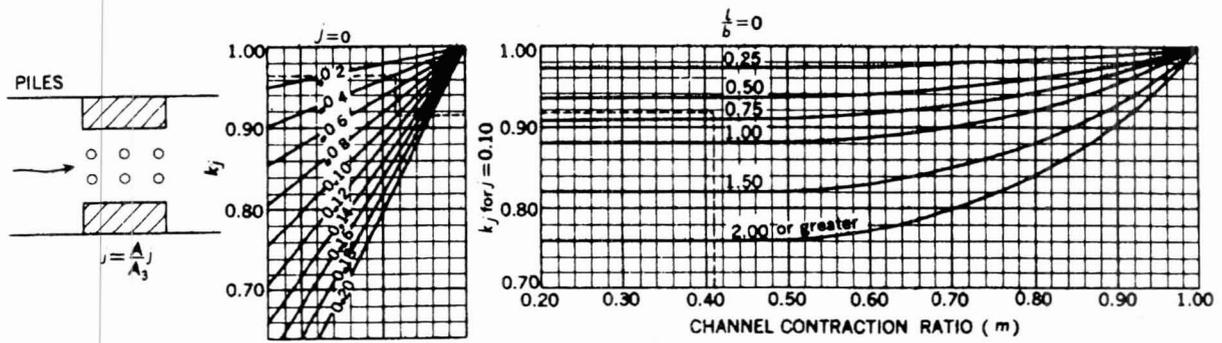


a) Base coefficient of discharge.

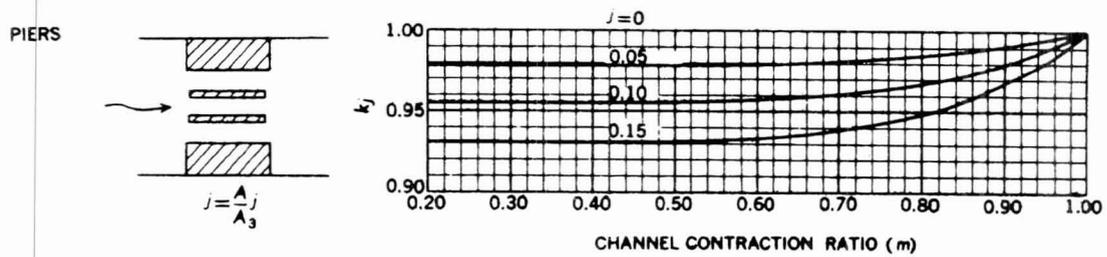


b) Wingwall adjustment factor.

Figure D.16. Coefficients for type 4 openings, embankment slope 2 to 1 (after Matthai).



a) Adjustment factor for piles.



b) Adjustment factor for piers.

Figure D.17. Adjustment factors for piers or piles, all opening types (after Matthai).

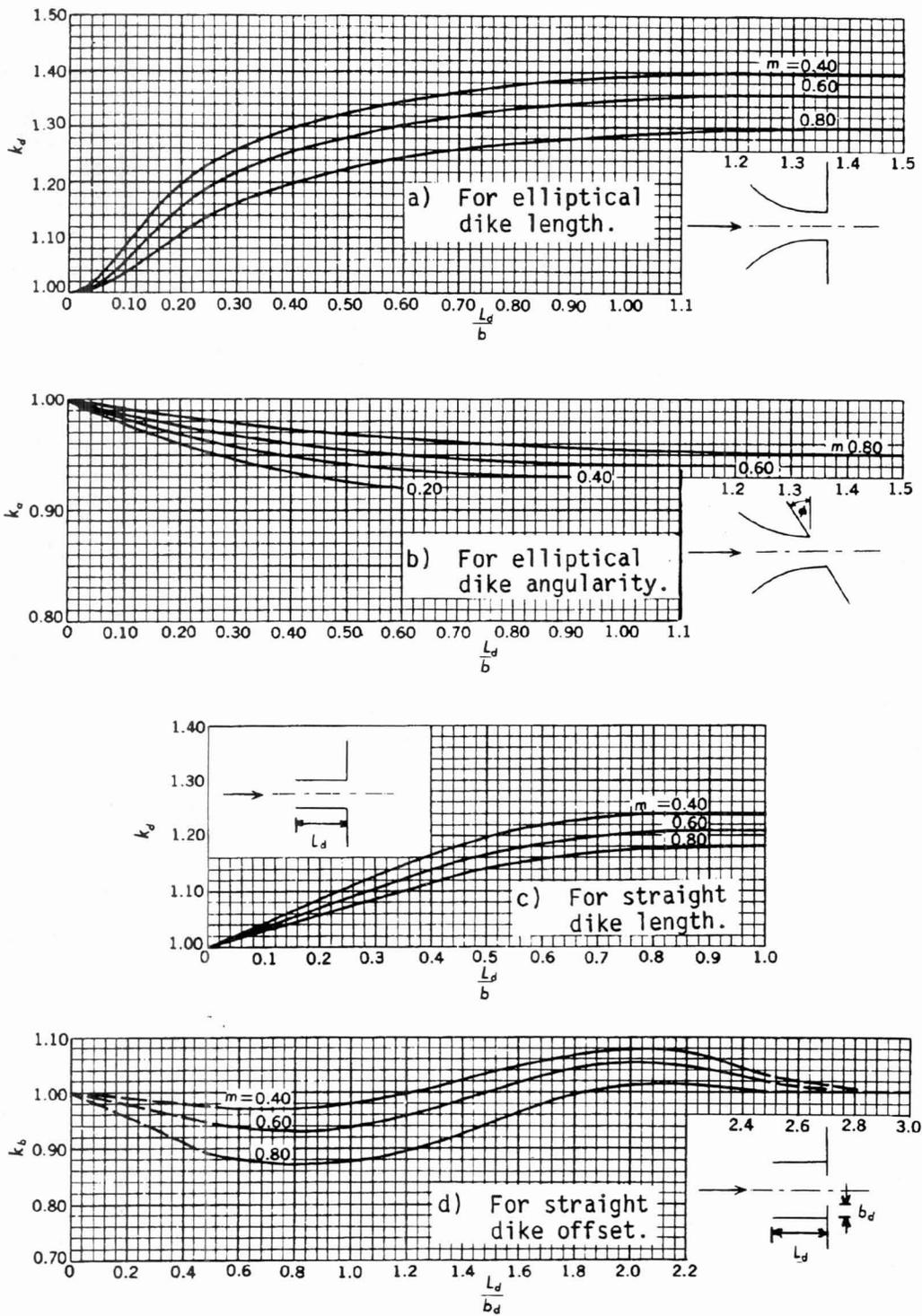


Figure D.18. Adjustment factors for spur dikes, all opening types (after Matthai)

**Table D.3** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 1 opening, with or without wing walls (see fig. D-8).

		m					
		0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0
L/b	0.0	1.00	0.83	0.745	0.70	0.67	0.67
	0.2	1.00	0.92	0.81	0.74	0.685	0.685
	0.4	1.00	0.95	0.86	0.755	0.71	0.71
	0.6	1.00	0.965	0.89	0.82	0.735	0.735
	0.8	1.00	0.97	0.91	0.855	0.77	0.765
	1.0	1.00	0.98	0.935	0.885	0.80	0.795
	1.5	1.00	0.985	0.95	0.91	0.845	0.835
	2.0	1.00	0.99	0.955	0.92	0.87	0.86

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.4** Variation of adjustment factor,  $k_r$ , for type 1 opening with entrance rounding (see fig. D-8).

		r/b						
		0.01	0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.10	0.14
m	0.1	1.06	1.07	1.07	1.07	1.07	1.07	1.07
	0.2	1.04	1.08	1.11	1.11	1.11	1.11	1.11
	0.4	1.03	1.05	1.09	1.12	1.14	1.15	1.16
	0.6	1.02	1.04	1.08	1.12	1.15	1.17	1.18
	0.8	1.02	1.04	1.08	1.12	1.16	1.18	1.20
	1.0	1.02	1.04	1.08	1.12	1.16	1.18	1.22

r/b is the ratio of entrance rounding to bridge-opening width.

m is the channel contraction ratio.

**Table D.5** Variation of adjustment factor,  $k_0$ , for type 1 opening with wing walls (fig. D-9).

$w/b$

		0.01	0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.10	0.14
m	0.1	1.01	1.02	1.02	1.02	1.02	1.02	1.02
	0.2	1.01	1.025	1.04	1.04	1.04	1.04	1.04
	0.4	1.01	1.025	1.04	1.06	1.06	1.06	1.06
	0.6	1.01	1.025	1.05	1.06	1.07	1.07	1.07
	0.8	1.01	1.025	1.05	1.07	1.08	1.09	1.09
	1.0	1.01	1.025	1.05	1.07	1.08	1.09	1.10

(a) 30° wing walls

		0.01	0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.10	0.14
m	0.1	1.00	1.01	1.01	1.02	1.02	1.02	1.02
	0.2	1.01	1.02	1.04	1.04	1.05	1.05	1.05
	0.4	1.03	1.05	1.07	1.08	1.09	1.09	1.09
	0.6	1.03	1.06	1.10	1.11	1.12	1.12	1.12
	0.8	1.03	1.06	1.11	1.13	1.15	1.15	1.15
	1.0	1.03	1.06	1.11	1.13	1.15	1.16	1.17

(b) 45° wing walls

		0.01	0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.10	0.14
m	0.1	1.02	1.04	1.05	1.05	1.05	1.05	1.05
	0.2	1.04	1.07	1.09	1.10	1.10	1.10	1.10
	0.4	1.04	1.09	1.15	1.18	1.18	1.18	1.18
	0.6	1.04	1.09	1.15	1.21	1.24	1.25	1.26
	0.8	1.04	1.09	1.15	1.22	1.26	1.28	1.29
	1.0	1.04	1.09	1.15	1.22	1.26	1.28	1.32

(c) 60° wingwalls

$w/b$  is the ratio of wing wall width to bridge-opening width.

$m$  is the channel contraction ratio.

**Table D.6** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 2 opening, embankment slope 1 to 1 (see fig D-10).

	m						
	0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0	
L/b	0.0	1.00	0.92	0.845	0.805	0.755	0.745
	0.2	1.00	0.955	0.88	0.83	0.775	0.765
	0.4	1.00	0.97	0.91	0.85	0.795	0.79
	0.6	1.00	0.975	0.925	0.87	0.81	0.805
	0.8	1.00	0.98	0.94	0.895	0.835	0.825
	1.0	1.00	0.985	0.95	0.91	0.855	0.845
	1.5	1.00	0.988	0.96	0.93	0.885	0.88
	2.0	1.00	0.99	0.965	0.94	0.905	0.90

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.7** Variation of adjustment factor,  $k_y$ , for type 2 opening, embankment slope 1 to 1 (see fig. D-10).

	m					
	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.7	1.0	
$y_a + y_b$	0.03	1.00	0.94	0.895	0.86	0.86
	0.05	1.00	0.97	0.93	0.88	0.88
	0.07	1.00	0.985	0.955	0.91	0.91
	0.10	1.00	0.995	0.98	0.94	0.94
2b	0.15	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.98	0.98

m is the channel contraction ratio.

$(y_a + y_b)/2b$  is the ratio of average depth at the abutments to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.8** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 2 opening, embankment slope 2 to 1 (see fig. D-11).

	m					
	0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0
0.0	1.00	0.965	0.915	0.86	0.79	0.78
0.2	1.00	0.97	0.925	0.87	0.80	0.79
0.4	1.00	0.98	0.935	0.89	0.81	0.80
L/b 0.6	1.00	0.99	0.95	0.90	0.83	0.82
0.8	1.00	0.995	0.96	0.91	0.845	0.83
1.0	1.00	1.00	0.97	0.925	0.855	0.84
1.5	1.00	1.00	0.975	0.94	0.89	0.875
2.0	1.00	1.00	0.98	0.95	0.905	0.895

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.9** Variation of adjustment factor,  $k_s$ , for type 2 opening, embankment slope 2 to 1 (see fig. D-11).

	m				
	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.7	1.0
$\frac{Y_a + Y_b}{2b}$ 0.03	1.00	0.935	0.89	0.88	0.88
0.05	1.00	0.965	0.925	0.91	0.91
0.07	1.00	0.975	0.95	0.945	0.945
0.10	1.00	0.985	0.97	0.97	0.97
0.15	1.00	0.99	0.99	0.99	0.99

m is the channel contraction ratio.

$(y_a + y_b)/2b$  is the ratio of average depth at the abutments to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.10** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 3 opening, embankment slope 1 to 1 (see fig. D-12).

		m					
		0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0
L/b	0.0	1.00	0.85	0.74	0.71	0.69	0.69
	0.2	1.00	0.91	0.79	0.745	0.71	0.71
	0.4	1.00	0.945	0.83	0.775	0.74	0.735
	0.6	1.00	0.97	0.87	0.81	0.765	0.76
	0.8	1.00	0.985	0.91	0.85	0.795	0.79
	1.0	1.00	0.995	0.945	0.88	0.82	0.81
	1.5	1.00	1.00	0.96	0.91	0.86	0.85
	2.0	1.00	1.00	0.97	0.925	0.88	0.875

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.11** Variation of adjustment factor,  $k_x$ , for type 3 opening, embankment slope 1 to 1 (see fig.D-12).

		x/b					
		0.00	0.08	0.12	0.16	0.20	0.25
L/b	0.0	1.00	1.09	1.13	1.14	1.14	1.14
	0.2	1.00	1.11	1.155	1.16	1.16	1.16
	0.5	1.00	1.135	1.19	1.20	1.20	1.20

x/b is the ratio of "unwetted" abutment length to bridge-opening width.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.12** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 3 opening, embankment slope 1 1/2 to 1 (see fig. D-13).

	m					
	0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0
0.0	1.00	0.885	0.76	0.715	0.70	0.70
0.2	1.00	0.92	0.80	0.75	0.725	0.72
0.4	1.00	0.945	0.84	0.78	0.75	0.745
L/b 0.6	1.00	0.97	0.88	0.815	0.77	0.765
0.8	1.00	0.99	0.915	0.85	0.805	0.80
1.0	1.00	1.00	0.945	0.88	0.83	0.825
1.5	1.00	1.00	0.955	0.905	0.87	0.87
2.0	1.00	1.00	0.965	0.92	0.885	0.885

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.13** Variation of adjustment factor,  $k_x$ , for type 3 opening, embankment slope 1 1/2 to 1 (see. fig. D-13).

	x/b					
	0.00	0.08	0.12	0.16	0.20	0.25
0.0	1.00	1.055	1.085	1.09	1.095	1.10
L/b 0.2	1.00	1.065	1.10	1.105	1.11	1.115
0.5	1.00	1.08	1.11	1.12	1.125	1.13

x/b is the ratio of "unwetted" abutment length to bridge-opening width.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.14** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 3 opening, embankment slope 2 to 1 (see fig. D-14).

		m					
		0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0
L/b	0.0	1.00	0.90	0.78	0.72	0.70	0.70
	0.2	1.00	0.92	0.81	0.755	0.72	0.72
	0.4	1.00	0.94	0.845	0.785	0.75	0.75
	0.6	1.00	0.96	0.875	0.81	0.78	0.78
	0.8	1.00	0.985	0.91	0.845	0.81	0.81
	1.0	1.00	1.00	0.94	0.87	0.845	0.84
	1.5	1.00	1.00	0.95	0.905	0.875	0.87
	2.0	1.00	1.00	0.96	0.92	0.895	0.89

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.15** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 4 opening, embankment slope 1 to 1 (see fig. D-15).

		m					
		0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0
L/b	0.0	0.99	0.85	0.755	0.715	0.695	0.69
	0.2	1.00	0.90	0.815	0.775	0.735	0.73
	0.4	1.00	0.955	0.885	0.83	0.775	0.77
	0.6	1.00	0.985	0.935	0.875	0.815	0.81
	0.8	1.00	0.99	0.955	0.91	0.84	0.835
	1.0	1.00	1.00	0.965	0.925	0.855	0.85
	1.5	1.00	1.00	0.97	0.94	0.89	0.885
	2.0	1.00	1.00	0.975	0.95	0.905	0.90

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.16** Slopes of family of curves for determining adjustment factor,  $k_\theta$ , for wing wall angle for type 4 openings, embankment slope 1 to 1 (see fig. D-15).

m	$Sk_\theta$
0.1	0.00057
0.2	0.001
0.4	0.002
0.6	0.00343
0.8	0.00413
1.0	0.00483

**Table D.17** Base coefficient of discharge,  $C'$ , for type 4 opening, embankment slope 2 to 1 (see fig. D-16).

	m					
	0.0	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.0
0.0	1.00	0.93	0.80	0.705	0.67	0.67
0.2	1.00	0.95	0.855	0.765	0.725	0.725
0.4	1.00	0.97	0.895	0.815	0.78	0.78
L/b 0.6	1.00	0.985	0.925	0.845	0.805	0.805
0.8	1.00	0.99	0.94	0.87	0.825	0.825
1.0	1.00	0.995	0.95	0.89	0.85	0.85
1.5	1.00	0.995	0.965	0.91	0.88	0.88
2.0	1.00	1.00	0.97	0.925	0.89	0.89

m is the channel contraction ratio.

L/b is the ratio of flow length to bridge-opening width.

**Table D.18** Slopes of family of curves for determining adjustment factor,  $k_\theta$ , for wing wall angle for type 4 openings, embankment slope 2 to 1 (see fig. D-16).

m	$Sk_\theta$
0.1	0.00243
0.2	0.00283
0.4	0.00373
0.6	0.00467
0.8	0.00557
1.0	0.00667

**Table D.19** Adjustment factor,  $k_j$ , for piers (see fig. D-17).

		m				
		0.40	0.60	0.80	0.90	1.00
j	0.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
	0.05	0.978	0.979	0.985	0.991	1.00
	0.10	0.955	0.957	0.967	0.98	1.00
	0.15	0.93	0.933	0.948	0.968	1.00
	0.20	0.903	0.907	0.928	0.956	1.00

**Table D.20** Adjustment factor,  $k_j$ , for piles (see fig. 17).

		m				
		0.40	0.60	0.80	0.90	1.00
L/b	0.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
	0.25	0.973	0.976	0.984	0.99	1.00
	0.50	0.933	0.94	0.96	0.976	1.00
	1.00	0.88	0.888	0.92	0.953	1.00
	2.00	0.76	0.772	0.84	0.905	1.00

(a)  $k_j$  for piles when  $j = 0.10$

		j					
		0.00	0.04	0.08	0.12	0.16	0.20
$k_j$ for j=.1	.76	1.00	0.902	0.81	0.71	0.615	0.52
	.80	1.00	0.92	0.841	0.761	0.684	0.605
	.90	1.00	0.961	0.921	0.88	0.842	0.802
	1.0	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00

(b)  $k_j$  for piles when  $j \neq 0.10$

**Table D.21** Adjustment factors for spur dikes (see fig. D-18.).

		$L_{d/b}$					
		0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	1.0	1.5
m	0.2	1.00	1.23	1.32	1.37	1.41	1.42
	0.4	1.00	1.20	1.30	1.35	1.39	1.40
	0.6	1.00	1.16	1.25	1.30	1.35	1.36
	0.8	1.00	1.11	1.20	1.25	1.29	1.30

(a)  $K_d$  for elliptical dike length

		$L_{d/b}$					
		0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	1.0	1.5
m	0.2	1.00	0.96	0.935	0.92	0.91	0.905
	0.4	1.00	0.968	0.95	0.935	0.93	0.925
	0.6	1.00	0.976	0.96	0.95	0.94	0.935
	0.8	1.00	0.984	0.973	0.965	0.955	0.95

(b)  $K_a$  for elliptical dike angularity

		$L_{d/b}$					
		0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	1.0	1.5
m	0.2	1.00	1.09	1.18	1.25	1.27	1.27
	0.4	1.00	1.08	1.16	1.22	1.24	1.24
	0.6	1.00	1.07	1.14	1.18	1.21	1.21
	0.8	1.00	1.06	1.12	1.16	1.18	1.18

(c)  $K_d$  for straight dike length

		$L_{d/b,d}$					
		0.0	0.5	1.0	1.5	2.0	2.8
m	0.2	1.00	0.99	1.00	1.06	1.10	1.00
	0.4	1.00	0.97	0.98	1.04	1.08	1.00
	0.6	1.00	0.94	0.94	1.00	1.05	1.00
	0.8	1.00	0.89	0.88	0.945	1.01	1.00

(d)  $K_b$  for straight dike offset